

# A Blessing Hitherto Unknown

## Book III

### Entering Into The Rest of The Lord

THE MATRIX

As a Third Level Allegory

Max B. Skousen

## PREFACE

This book is the third in a four part series describing a journey in my own search to enter into the rest of the Lord. That search ended successfully in 1987, not many months after President Ezra Taft Benson challenged us to glean from the pages of the *Book of Mormon* the great truths which would enable us —

**to abide by its precepts, that God will pour out upon each child of Zion and the Church *A BLESSING HITHERTO UNKNOWN* — and we will plead to the Lord that He will begin to lift the condemnation, the scourge and judgment.** (Ensign, May, 1986)

It is my firmly held belief that President Benson was referring to a very significant blessing that the *Book of Mormon* calls “*entering into the rest of the Lord*.” My first book, ***Book I, Looking Beyond the Mark***, dealt with my own discoveries about how I had been looking beyond the mark, as it is so easy to do. I had believed that the *fullness of the gospel* could be found on the Tree of Knowledge of Good and Evil, but, instead, what I found is that one can only find the *preparatory gospel* on that forbidden Tree.

My second book, ***Book II, Finding the Mark***, follows the trail of my own gradual awakening as to how we are to *grow the Tree of Life in our hearts*. This is the message taught in Alma 32, wherein we eventually are to partake of its precious fruit which will fill us with nothing less than the pure love of Christ. Because of this blessing, Alma promised that we would spiritually *hunger and thirst no more*, i.e., we would be at rest.

### REMEMBERING AND DOING THE NEW COVENANT

The Lord has said that we cannot come out from under the condemnation until we repent of our *vanity and unbelief* and are remembering the Father’s new covenant, not only to say but to do as it is written. In Book II, we considered how God has clearly defined what that *new covenant* is and how it is designed to replace our vanity and unbelief with meekness, lowliness of heart and a more abiding faith. The new covenant is the Father’s promise that He can and will BESTOW upon us the very same love possessed by Him and His son, Jesus Christ. As John testified, the bestowal of that pure love, which is Christ’s greatest gift, permanently *casts out all fear*. As the *Book of Mormon* also explains, this is what “*entering the rest of the Lord*” is about

### IF YOU HAVE NOT ALREADY READ BOOKS I AND II —

The *Blessing Hitherto Unknown* series is progressive and each is designed to be built upon the previous one. It is my hope that you have already read the first two before taking on this third volume. However, because so many people have seen the Matrix movie and are anxious to better understand its allegorical message, you may be one of those who has yet to read these previous books. So after finishing Book III, I encourage you to go back and read Book I and II, and then re-read this book again. You will find your understanding will have expanded greatly. In fact, even what I am saying in this Preface may start making a lot more sense than it does to you at this first reading. Just don’t worry about it now. As this book gets into the Matrix, we will take only one step at a time.

At any rate, re-reading these books is recommended to all of us. I personally re-read them every few months myself. Each time, the power of our scriptures reaches ever deeper into my heart, mind and soul. Since these books are not new revelations or doctrines, but are merely highlighting and clarifying what the Lord has already given the saints, they can greatly enhance our scriptural study.

### THESE BOOKS ARE ONLY FOR THE SPIRITUALLY HUNGRY

Those of you who have enjoyed the previous books may have discovered that there are those in the Church who are not at all pleased with the way I have emphasized these deeper meanings of the scriptures. But this is to be expected for the Lord helps everyone see in the scriptures what is appropriate for them.

We are told by Peter that no prophecy is of any private interpretation, and that the scriptures are only to be understood as we are moved upon by the Holy Ghost. Many appreciative readers have testified that the Spirit has witnessed to the truth of these deeper teachings. Those who disagree feel

that the Spirit is telling them otherwise, and, as we see *God's hand in all things*, we can understand why the Lord will also inspire many good members of the Church to resist these deeper levels of the gospel at this time.

### BOOK III, ENTERING THE REST OF THE LORD

Have you ever heard a sermon at General Conference or read an article in the Ensign on the subject of *entering into the rest of the Lord from this time henceforth until we rest with Him in heaven?* Probably not. Why is that so?

I believe there is a good reason. The work of the Church at this time is to teach and administer the *preparatory gospel*, and, generally speaking, the Lord has made it clear that the fullness of His *rest* is not available on that level of the gospel. Why? Because, as discussed in Book I, the preparatory gospel is on the Tree of Knowledge, and there is no genuine rest on that tree because it is not designed to remove fear from our lives. It is of little value, therefore, to concentrate on a principle, no matter how significant, that is not available while we are busy comparing "what is" with what "ought to be," which is what the preparatory gospel is designed to teach us to do.

I published Book I in 1993, Book II in 1997 and now Book III in 2001. In both of the first two books, I often referred to how we can enter into the Lord's rest. But this book, Book III, was to deal specifically with those scriptures which describe the process, using particularly the Seventh Chapter of Moroni.

#### THE SIGNIFICANCE OF MORONI 7

Of all the chapters in the scriptures, none has been more inspiring to me than this one chapter in the *Book of Mormon*. This chapter is a single talk by Moroni's father, Mormon. After the death of Mormon, his son included this talk as one of the concluding chapters in his father's book. That sermon, from beginning to end, reveals many little-understood principles critical to the fullness of the gospel in contrast to the "does" and "don'ts" of the works-orientated preparatory gospel. The Seventh Chapter starts out with Mormon inviting his listeners to enter immediately into a heavenly state which would last the remainder of their lives. He called it "*entering into the rest of the Lord from this time henceforth.*" Here are his words:

**Wherefore, I would speak unto you  
that are of the Church,  
that are the *peaceable followers of Christ,*  
and that have obtained *a sufficient hope*  
by which YE CAN ENTER  
INTO **THE REST OF THE LORD,**  
**FROM THIS TIME HENCEFORTH**  
**UNTIL YE SHALL REST WITH HIM IN HEAVEN.****

(Moroni 7:3)

#### A VERY DIFFERENT DEFINITION OF "GOOD"

Mormon went on to explain in the next verses that "good" is only that which flows from the pure love of Christ, for all else is contaminated with impure intent, which is the result of our partaking of the forbidden but essential Tree of Knowledge of Good and Evil. Thus, what mankind calls "good" he declared is actually "evil." By his defining good in this way, he states that because of the Fall, NO "GOOD" THING could come to the natural man. Then Mormon emphasizes that through our faith, hope and experience in the *at-one-ment of Christ*, we could actually and literally, while in mortal life, RECEIVE EVERY "GOOD" THING. As the chapter ends he gave an explanation of how this takes place. It is by our being *bestowed* nothing less than *the pure love of Christ, which casts out fear*, because it is the same quality of love that the Father and Christ possess. These are the words Mormon used to close his sermon:

**CHARITY**  
**is the PURE LOVE OF CHRIST,**  
**and it endureth forever;**  
**and whoso is found possessed of it**  
**at the last day,**  
**it shall be well with him.**

**Wherefore, my beloved brethren,**  
**pray unto the Father**  
**with all the energy of heart**  
**that ye may be filled with this love,**  
**WHICH HE HATH BESTOWED**  
**UPON ALL WHO ARE**  
**TRUE FOLLOWERS**  
**OF HIS SON, JESUS CHRIST.**

(Moroni 7:43, 47-48)

**HOW DOES THE FATHER  
 BESTOW THE PURE LOVE OF CHRIST?**

Notice that the gift of this quality of love, also called the fellowship of the mystery of Christ, is “*bestowed*.” In Book II, we defined this perfect love as having “*the mind of Christ*,” or in other words, seeing the world the way He sees it. This capacity is the result of having the veil of darkness removed for a bit so that we truly experience that we, as eternal, spiritual beings, are perfect manifestations of the infinite and eternal Spirit of Christ. In other words, the light of which we are made which shines in darkness suddenly becomes comprehended, like it is noonday.

What we may briefly experience is that as He is in all things and all things are made not only by Him, but OF HIM, *so are we!* I call this spiritual experience “cosmic consciousness” because it is like suddenly “comprehending all things” as we are promised. I used the Prophet Joseph’s declaration that if we could gaze into heaven even five minutes, we would know more than we would by reading and comprehending all the sacred books written since the days of Adam. This would not be just a vision *about* heaven, for that would have to be self-limiting, but it would be *the experience of “knowing” that we are HEAVEN.*

### TRYING TO WRITE A BOOK ON THE REST

Since, like so many, I have had my own personal experiences, I wanted to use Moroni 7 as the basic text for this book. However, after writing many chapters, I began to realize that what I was writing was not what I wanted because it was too conceptual rather than experiential, keeping the readers too much in their minds instead of their hearts. Besides, the more I wrote, the more I realized that I was repeating much of what I had already covered in the first two books. So I kept trying to find a new and more effective way to involve the reader in a process truly preparatory to entering the rest.

### THE ALLEGORY OF THE MATRIX MOVIE

I kept looking and experimenting for over three years. Since the Savior, in His ministry, resorted almost exclusively to parables, I kept trying out different ideas of using stories. Then, as I became more familiar with the movie, The Matrix, I decided that this incredible production would provide, allegorically, the step by step, experiential approach that I was looking for. In the year that I have worked on The Matrix, I have been amazed and often overwhelmed at the many insights that can be represented through one scene after another. Many principles that I have been taught along the forty years of my own searching would come to my mind. In contrast, if I had written a regular book with all of these ideas, it would appear to be a complex mass of obstacles to remember and/or to overcome. But now, after you have read this book, it is my hope that you will choose to watch the movie over and over with ever increasing appreciation for the process you are being taken through by the Spirit.

**AWAKENING IS AN EXPERIENCE, NOT JUST AN IDEA**

Well, that is my purpose! My intention has been to assist you in the task of discovering and removing those barriers you may have to becoming sufficiently awake in Christ that He will bless you to the degree that all fear will leave your life. However, my challenge is that although I can help you in part, I do not know how to help you go all the way. The reason is that your life is so unique that what might work for me or some one else still might not work for you. I am sure the Spirit will show you your own unique processes as you go along.

Yes, this book can and will help, but that gift, that state of being, is totally in the hands of Christ and your “personal” Heavenly Father. It is not in your hands and it is not in mine. That, simply put, is where we start. There is no way you can become smart enough, good enough, obedient enough, humble enough, prayerful enough or anything else you might think you are missing to receive the gift of His rest, to bring you home while still in this life. In fact, *that is the good news! It is not up to you.* Yet, amazingly enough, as is the case with Neo in the movie, truly realizing this simple fact that it is not up to you is the most difficult part of the journey.

Christ described it as *giving up your life for His sake*. So what we are doing in this book is uncovering, exploring, dissecting, searching out and kicking out one hunk after another of your life which you have not been willing to *lose* up until now. That journey could and will be painful, at times, but also joyous, since it is the process of becoming more and more like a little child.

### THE FIRST STEP

Perhaps the first step to entering into the Lord’s rest is to realize, intellectually, that *you are already in it!* You have always been in it. There is no existence outside of His rest. Our problem has been that we have been failing to truly believe it, let alone, experience it. This blindness is called “*walking in darkness at noonday.*” It is also called “*the light shineth in the darkness and the darkness comprehendeth it not.*” However, there is light at the end of the tunnel. There is the possibility of a full breakthrough.

This breakthrough is what the great prophet Lehi finally experienced, evidently just before his death. It was then that he turned to his two oldest sons, Laman and Lemuel, and pleaded for them to just **WAKE UP!** That is all they needed to do and everything about their lives would be transformed. Here are his words:

**O that ye would awake. Awake from a deep sleep, yea, even from the sleep of hell, and shake off the awful chains by which ye are bound, which are the chains which bind [practically all] the children of men, that they are carried away captive down to the eternal gulf of misery and woe.**

**Awake! and arise from the dust, and hear the words of a trembling parent, whose limbs ye must soon lay down in the cold and silent grave...** (2 Nephi 1:13-14)

### LEHI DESCRIBED WHAT HAD AWAKENED HIM

To understand what Lehi was really saying to his older sons, we should read his next words because they reveal where he was really coming from. This statement is a declaration of total liberation, sanctification and justification. In other words, Lehi testified that he had finally and consciously entered into the *rest of the Lord!*

**But behold, the Lord hath redeemed my soul from hell; I HAVE BEHELD HIS GLORY, AND I AM ENCIRCLED ABOUT ETERNALLY IN THE ARMS OF HIS LOVE.** (2 Nephi 1:15)

We can easily overlook the significance of these words which describe what Lehi said he learned by having *beheld His glory*. In fact, “entering into the *rest of the Lord*” is defined as, simply, “waking up to *the fullness of His glory.*” (D&C 84:24) So in that experience of beholding His glory, Lehi entered the rest of the Lord from that time henceforth. In doing so, he may have discovered many things, but he explained the one truth which was, to him, of greatest significance. In that glory, he personally experienced that *he was, had been and always would be* “encircled about” by the infinite and loving arms of Christ. Since “eternally” means without beginning or ending, he had finally discovered that there *never had been a time, even in his darkest despair, that he had not been held totally and completely in the loving, protective and participative arms and care of the Savior.* Apart from that KNOWING, there might be some resting, but no real REST without it.

### WAKING UP IS HARDER IF WE DON’T BELIEVE WE ARE ASLEEP

Let's read again what Lehi was inviting Laman and Lemuel to do. "**O that ye would awake...from a deep sleep, yea, even from the sleep of hell, and shake off the awful chains by which ye are bound.**"

As we all know, the words fell on deaf ears. Why? Mostly, I believe, because Laman and Lemuel did not believe they were asleep. Neither did they believe they were bound by any awful chains of hell. In fact, they were sure that of all the group, they were probably the most awake of the lot. Even the great prophet Nephi was not fully awake at this time, for as we learn several chapters later, he confessed to his miserable state of not being worthy enough. As Nephi cried, "**O wretched man that I am!**" It would not be until Nephi was a much older man that he would testify to the same liberation that his father had received, and we might add, his younger brother, Jacob, had already received as a young boy even before this time.

So this is the paradox. We may not be waking up because we don't know we are asleep. What we are spiritually asleep to is that we are already in His rest and just don't know it. We are already "**encircled about eternally in the arms of His love.**" We are already in "**the fullness of His glory.**"

So what does it mean to "**enter INTO His rest?**" In a way, it is very similar to the process we experience every morning when we move from our sleeping state to the waking state. In fact, in our sleep, we may have been having a dream that seemed very real. But suddenly, "we come to ourselves." We become conscious of who we are, that we are a person awakening to the reality of another day. Now, how is that similar to a spiritual awakening? Being spiritually asleep and spiritually awake is also like waking up from a dream, to the reality of who and what we are. The transition can be gradual or instantaneous. As in both cases of waking up, our view of the world we were experiencing before and the one we are experiencing now, although similar, is radically transformed. The spiritual awakening is to discover, experientially, that we are *not separate* from the *fullness of His glory* like we thought we were.

## WHY MOST PEOPLE WOULD RATHER STAY ASLEEP

Believe it or not, most people do not want to be spiritually awake. Why would that be? There are many reasons, but ultimately, it is because they are unwilling to give up what they hold most dearly in their lives, for if they did, the shift could be confusing and disorientating. Simply put, waking up to the real light of day means that they would discover that everything is exactly "*as planned*" and is "*right on schedule*," including the way they feel about things. What is frightening about this is that this new way of seeing the world starts to destroy some of their most cherished justifications for their self righteousness.

Here are a few examples:

- ▶ Their excusing themselves for being judgmental when they think things are not right.
- ▶ Their claiming they have the right to blame themselves or others when things go wrong.
- ▶ Their having a sense of being a victim of anything or anyone
- ▶ Their having a conviction that they know what ought to be and what not ought to be.
- ▶ Their being "humbly" proud of the ownership of their skills, careers and possessions, including their families,
- ▶ Their savoring the feelings of personal achievement.
- ▶ Their comparing themselves as better or worse than others.
- ▶ Their believing that they possess the one and only truth.
- ▶ Their having or seeking a clear sense of direction and purpose.

## HOW CAN WE GIVE ALL OF THAT UP?

Surely, they might say, "*You have got to be kidding! After all, these are some of the most important qualities of a righteous and successful life. After all, are not these the things we are taught to cherish in the gospel?*"

To answer that question, let's remember, Christ said, "**He that findeth his life shall lose it, but he that LOSETH HIS LIFE FOR MY SAKE, shall find it.**" Yes, these are virtues taught in the milk of the preparatory gospel, but that is the forbidden Tree of Knowledge of Good and Evil. As we are taught in the temple, during the Garden of Eden story, we cannot have both trees at the same time.

Remember what Christ said to Nicodemus, that everyone who is born of the Spirit *becomes like the wind.* Well, is it not true that most of us would rather be like the strong, sturdy trees, with roots

solidly planted into the ground and branches reaching toward the heavens, even though they may be tossed to and fro by *the wind* from time to time?

### DO YOU WANT THE BLUE OR RED PILL

Like Neo, each us has a choice whether to go back to sleep or to take the trip. It is your choice. Perhaps you would rather not bother with trying to enter into the rest. If not, you might have good reasons. You may say, “Are not these the elements in my life that makes my life worth living?”

Yes, but not really. As Lehi had finally discovered, probably much to his surprise, these “prized possessions” are the chains of hell. But why? Because, believe it or not, these are the things which rob us of the *love, joy and peace in Christ* because they all contain the *fear of loss*. They are as trinkets of the natural man compared to Christ’s true pearl of great price. The scriptures continually assure us that there is something so much more wonderful that can replace these self righteous remnants of the natural man, and that is what the Lord’s rest is all about.

However, such a shift does sound like an impossible task, even if one is willing to do so. But this “putting off the natural man” and “entering the rest” *is not something we do*. As the angel told king Benjamin, this is what happens when one yields, surrenders to the Spirit and thus, eventually becomes transformed more and more like a little child. In other words, one becomes that way by the very nature of being revealed *the fullness of His glory*. It is not something we achieve, but it is something we begin to notice we are experiencing—that is if we choose to. *Choose to do what?* Choose to accept the meaning of the experience of the *fullness of His glory*, thus re-experiencing what it means to be like a little child. That condition can and never will be forced upon us. But if we are willing, it can be given to us.

### THIS IS A BOOK OF DISCOVERY, NOT SELF IMPROVEMENT

So what does it take to become willing? That process is what we are dealing with in our allegorical study of the Matrix. You will not be told what to do or how to change. Instead, you will be shown, from many different angles, what being in the rest IS NOT. In this way you will be able to see what you may still be doing, thinking, feeling and holding onto which keeps you from experiencing the gift of being like a little child. So this is not a self-help book by which you are supposed to become better and better. This is merely a book about seeing the obstacles to awakening that we are still holding close to our heart. **But**, and this is a significant “but,” these obstacles are *not to be overcome! They are only to be understood!* Awakening is something that just happens when we experience a new way of seeing, not something we achieve by effort and struggle.

Entering the rest is like having someone open the door of a safe in which we are imprisoned. The safe’s door is the door to our heart, and the combination to that lock is unique to each of us, and no one else. Although the handle is on the inside, the tumblers are on the outside where Christ and the Father stand, ready to enter when we stand aside and stop trying to work the lock from the inside when we don’t have the combination. When we do this, He will begin to show us our weaknesses — those things which give us our pride and the unbelief in which we doubt He can do it all for us if we step aside. If you want to contact me, be my guest.

**Max B. Skousen**  
**(Oct. 28, 1921 - Nov. 16, 2002)**

**For more information, visit:**  
**[www.maxskousen.org](http://www.maxskousen.org)**

# THE MATRIX

## The Movie

An Allegory of Spiritual Integration

## PART I

## BACKGROUND

Understanding the Matrix  
and seeing God's hand in all things,  
both in the infinite and the finite,  
as above, so below,  
as in the infinite Self, so in the finite self.

### Chapter I

#### INTRODUCTION

Let me start with an important suggestion. Please don't read this book until after you have first seen the movie at least once! All of this information can easily get in the way of your deeper experience of seeing the movie without needing or even trying to figure it out.

This movie is about awakening, and awakening is not so much about *understanding* what it means to be awake, it is *experiencing what it means to be awake*. The Matrix is designed to be a doorway to that experience, but in doing so, it is also a window to understanding. Understanding is only the booby prize if it gets in the way of the experience. Therefore, I encourage you to wait to read this book until after you have obtained a video and watched the movie.

As for myself, when I first saw the movie, *The Matrix*, it was in a theater with full screen and wrap around sound. I was displeased, even exhausted, by the prolonged sessions of violence and sheer ugliness of the monster machines. So, even though I knew it was a powerful allegory, I did not want to go back and see it again. It seemed to me that the movie makers over-did the violence and I was sorry for that.

For months afterwards, however, I often heard others testify to the great messages the movie contains. I also received E-mails from friends who had read my article on *Pleasantville*, on my Web Site and were asking me to write about the *Matrix* because they felt it was even more revealing esoterically. Then, one day, I received the following Email:

Dear Max,

Oct. 3, 1999.

I have long followed your writings and have found them a wonderful source of truth. I read your view on Pleasantville and wondered if you have seen the *Matrix*. This movie is taking the cyber-world by storm. Many who had given up on a Savior are suddenly electrified. I doubt many card-carrying LDS (which I am) have seen this movie as it is rated R-no sex, a form of violence, swearing. I believe this movie is a call. I'd be interested in your thoughts. Sincerely, Pam

The part of Pam's E-mail that got my attention was her statement that many in the cyber-world "**who had given up on a Savior are suddenly electrified.**" In my answer, I thanked her for the nudge and promised that I would take another look. A few days later, I was in my local video store and there was a copy of *The Matrix* on the shelf. I was surprised that it was already out on video, so that became our choice for the evening viewing. I enjoyed it much more this second time. After obtaining my own copy and viewing it a number of times, many messages began to come through. Even the violence of the battles and the ugliness of the monster machines took on fascinating perspectives.

### WHAT IS THE CYBER-WORLD?

In Pam's Email, she wrote: "**This movie is taking the cyber-world by storm.**" So what is the cyber-world?" The dictionary defines cybernetics as the theoretical study of *control processes* in electronic, mechanical, and biological systems, especially, the mathematical analysis of the flow of information in such systems. The word cybernate is "*to control automatically by computer.*" So those who are totally immersed in the inner workings of computers will often find that their view of the world is deeply affected. They discover the similarities between the incredible manipulations inside the computer to the manipulations of the world in which they live.

Along with all the other expansion of knowledge about what is real, these breakthroughs of science have also produced incredible advances in communication, starting with digital animation, the Internet, satellites and global position.

Over this century, our exploding knowledge of what is really *real* has undergone an almost incomprehensible revolution of its own, from Relativity, Lasers, Holographic Photography, Bio-engineering, and probably most of all, Quantum Physics. Thus, our expanding sciences have found that the universe is so much more complex than we had thought over the last few centuries, from the dualistic nature of light, to the immateriality of the inner workings of the atom. Solids turn out to be 99.999% space, with incredible relative distances. The universe is an illusion, not that it isn't real, but because it is totally different than it appears to be. From these mind-blowing discoveries, what we assumed were the most absolutes — time and space — now are seen as constructed continuums that only appear to be taking place. The older generation watched these things develop, but many of the younger generation have never known anything different. Using the old adage, you have to be like a little child to see the world in this totally new light.

Along with this expansion of awareness, many of the old stereotypes of religion have taken a beating. Many Eastern concepts, which used to be ridiculed in the West, are beginning to make a lot more sense to Western minds. The religions of the West—Judaism, Christianity and Muslim—have all been *dualistic*, separating the Creator from His creation. The Eastern Religions—Hinduism and Buddhism—are *monistic*, seeing creation and the Creator as One. More and more, both concepts are

seen as parallel explanations of the universe, rather than contradictory. Yet harmonizing these two opposing points of view can be difficult and disorienting. That is why a new generation of cyber-space people can have a difficult time appreciating the need for an atonement performed by a Savior. We will see how this movie can be helpful in harmonizing the two different paradigms of the East and the West.

### **THE MOVIE WILL HAVE DIFFERENT MEANINGS TO DIFFERENT PEOPLE**

I have written this book, mainly, for those LDS people who have or will have read my first two books in my four part series, *A Blessing Hitherto Unknown*. In *Book II, Finding the Mark, How to Grow the Tree of Life in Your Heart*, I describe how there are actually four levels in the gospel of Jesus Christ. In the description of the movie *Pleasantville*, I show how the movie can be seen as including all four levels, and how we can follow the progress in Pleasantville from one level of awareness to another, as follows:

**First Level: Materialistic Level**—a young man is held captive by using an old TV series of the Fifties, Pleasantville, to escape into what he believes is an ideal world.

**Message:** This is symbolic of how we hold our religious beliefs as an ideal that is not like our real life but, hopefully, will be given to us in the next.

**Second Level: Spiritual Level**—his shock of becoming what he thought was ideal when he and his sister are put in and try to fix the black and white, simplistic and unrealistic Pleasantville.

**Message:** When we are suddenly faced with the contradictions between our ideals and what is real, we try to use our spiritual insight to fix things, and in doing so, mess everything up.

**Third Level: Integrative Level**—their beginning to see the illusions of their conclusions about needing to fix the false ideal and enjoy it the way it is.

**Message:** This is beginning to go beyond resistance to gratefully yielding to the wonders of what God has created, just the way it is and the way it is not.

**Fourth Level: Perfect Love Level**—seeing the oneness of all things, just the way they are, thus everyone in Pleasantville, including them, become full Technicolor, and return home a new man.

**Message:** This is when we see the simple beauty of not needing to know what ought to be and what is going to happen, called being in the rest of the Lord.

This is the way I saw this delightful movie. In turn, the Matrix is much more complex. Different groups will usually understand the Matrix on only one of these four levels, depending upon the level of awareness they are on. In the same way, I am not writing for average, loyal and contented Latter-day Saints because they live in a world of safety and comfort of their orthodox convictions. As far as I am concerned, they are doing fine just where they are. But since there are many members who are seeking for more spiritual answers, I have attempted to serve these spiritual seekers in the books I have written. This book is particularly addressed to them.

My purpose in this study is to assist such seekers see The Matrix as a gospel parable on a very deep level of universal, inner Christianity, called liberation in Christ, which the scriptures refer to this state as “*entering the rest of the Lord*.” Seen in this way, the movie describes the process of growing in a type of faith and surrender which can produce true spiritual transformation, called the state of Zion, which describes our having a totally pure heart, one that is filled with the pure love of Christ. To me, this movie describes the way in which we are invited to experience the personal Second Coming of Christ in our hearts as an inner process of awakening, purification and sanctification.

### **THE CREATORS OF THE MOVIE**

The making of the Matrix is the result of thirty years of preparation by two brothers, Andy and Larry Wachowski, from the Polish community in Chicago. They had worked on movies, comics and other visual outlets, but this idea of making a message movie on this subject had put them through many rewrites of storyboards and a script. For years they visited studio after studio in an attempt to get the movie made. Each time they were told that the movie was too complex and that the public would not get it. It was finally made in Australia, but the street names are all from the Chicago area.

Neo, played by Keanu Reeves, was asked what it was like having the two brothers as directors. He answered, “**They are the most beautiful, decent people I've ever met. I think that the film is**

**like nothing I've ever seen before. It is a new take. It's a new way of telling stories...It's dense with ideas and you can look at it from different angles. As Larry Wachowski would say, 'The pain of knowledge, the pain that it brings.' Once you go through that, your life can open up and you can experience love. It's about love."**

When Carrie-Anne Moss, who played Trinity, heard Reeves response, she reminded him, "You called them *weird* earlier!"

The brothers had told Keanue Reeves that he was the first one to actually understand the script. He explains, "When I first met the brothers, they showed me a book, which was drawings and kind of a graphic novel. I was already familiar with some of their comic book material and films that had influenced their work. This book had storyboards and the color schemes and certain action sequences that they call 'bullet time.' And when I saw all that, and the script itself, I was like, "Wow!" They were just aching and ready to make this film."

Carrie-Anne Moss adds her experience. "To be honest, it took me twice reading it to fully get it. And I liked that so much because it had so many layers of meaning in the film. My first initial feeling when I read the film was that Trinity, my character, represented *faith*. And that, to me, was what I, in my heart and my soul as an artist, completely clung to. I understood her at that level. I'm talking about the very beginning stages when I was just auditioning for it, the six or seven times I auditioned to get the part. When I thought of Trinity, I just kept thinking about faith. The words 'faith' and 'believe' just kept sort of coming to me."

## SUMMARY

Down through the ages, many of the greatest teachers have taught their students about the "incomprehensible" mysteries of enlightenment by telling stories. There is no question but what that is why the Wachowski brothers masterfully created this film, along with the two sequels they are now filming. Neo, who represents a student being taken through a process of transformation, experiences symbolically many of the steps of deliverance. The infinite universe is aligned to serve him in that process, just as it serves each of us.

# Chapter II

## WHAT IS THE MATRIX?

Our first step is to understand what is meant in the movie by the Matrix. The dictionary defines a "matrix" as the surrounding structure within which something is formed. It can be a physical pattern, like a mold for a statue, or intellectual scaffolding, like a belief system. The womb, itself, is a matrix. In fact, the Greek root for matrix is "mart," meaning mother.

But the dictionary also mentions that in computer science, "matrix" has a special meaning of-built in process control. There it is defined as "**the network of intersections between input leads and output leads in a computer, functioning as an encoder or decoder.**"

### IS THE UNIVERSE LIKE A GIANT COMPUTER?

Since the computer age, scientists are getting a much more profound understanding of how our incredible human minds work like an awesome computer. So this movie introduces us to the possibility that, individually and collectively, we are hard-wired into a matrix that keeps us functioning more like robots, programmed by our inherited DNA and various cultural and environmental biases. Whereas we think we are creatures of self-will and free choice, the movie deals with the possibility that we are more like stimulus-reaction machines, functioning as programmed in a great construction that we believe is the Real World but is really a Man-Made World. In other words, we are held tightly controlled by a Matrix of programmed software. In such a case, we would all be on autopilot, *called fate*, merely completing the predestined preprogrammed plan of the *Matrix*.

To most people raised in the West, especially with our Judaic-Christian upbringing, such ideas of predestination are preposterous, even frightening. Where would God be in all of this? Where is free agency? *Where is sin and righteousness, leading to the judgment day?* As Morpheus asked Neo,

**“Do you believe in fate?”** Neo said that he did not. When asked why he did not believe in fate, Neo answered, **“Because I don’t like the idea that I am not in control of my life.”** Morpheus added, **“I know exactly what you feel.”**

### HOW MORPHEUS DEFINED THE MATRIX

After Neo responded to the question about fate, Morpheus described the universality of the Matrix:

**“Let me tell you why you are here. You are here because you know something. What you know you can’t explain, but you feel it. You have felt it your entire life, that there is something wrong with the world. You don’t know what it is, but it is there, like a splinter in your mind, driving you mad. It is this feeling that has brought you to me. Do you know what I am talking about?”**

Neo responded, *“The Matrix?”*

**“Do you want to know what it is? The Matrix is everywhere. It is all around us, even now, in this very room. You can see it when you look out your window, or when you turn on your television. You can feel it when you go to work, when you go to church, when you pay your taxes. It is the world that has been pulled over your eyes to blind you from the truth.”**

Neo asked, *“What truth?”*

**“That you are a slave, Neo. Like everyone else, you were born into bondage, born into a prison that you cannot smell, or taste or touch. A prison for your mind. Unfortunately, no one can be told what the Matrix is. You have to see it for yourself.”**

### HOW AGENT SMITH DEFINED THE MATRIX

When Agent Smith captured his long-time enemy, Morpheus, he could not resist the temptation to brag about the incredible marvel of the Matrix. As the gloating agent stands at the window, overlooking the great city, he says to his captive:

**Have you ever stood and stared at it. Marveled at its beauty, genius. Billions of people just living out their lives, oblivious...I believe that as a species, human beings find their reality through misery and suffering. You know that the first Matrix was designed to be a perfect world, where none suffered and where everyone would be happy. But that was a disaster. No one would accept the program and entire crops were lost. Some believed that we lacked the programming language to describe your perfect world.**

The perfect world was a dream the cerebrum was trying to wake up from. Which is why the Matrix was redesigned to provide the peak of your civilization. I say, your civilization, because as soon as we started doing the thinking for you, it became our civilization, which is of course what this is really all about. Evolution! Evolution, like the dinosaur. Look out that window. You have had your time. The future is our world. Morpheus, the future is our time.

So the Matrix is the complex software used by each of our minds to live in an imagined world of our own making. Because we are born into this world, we believe it is real, the one and only world. This is a world of opposites, danger and safety, scarcity and abundance, humiliation and pride, sickness and health, living and dying, security and vulnerability. We think the way we see the world is what it really is—the Real World—but it is the Man-Made World that is anti-Zion. So consequently, in our collective unconsciousness, the Real World, Zion, appears to be either an illusion or we have to develop faith that it is not.

In the movie, the Matrix is made out to be a vicious villain, a terrible enemy that must be destroyed at all costs. But that is only the obvious drama of the story. There is a much deeper message, which is that the Matrix is, in and of itself, not our enemy. Once we discover this, it no longer needs to enslave us. Rather, the Matrix is here to give us a “civilization” in which we can grow and develop in what we believe to be freedom and increase our capacity through its challenges. We are enslaved only when we accept the illusion as if it were the Real World, rather than our own Man-Made World.

### THE MATRIX, THE MAN-MADE WORLD

A critical part of Neo's preparation was to better understand the complete universality of the Matrix. As Morpheus said: "**The Matrix is everywhere. It is all around us, even now, in this very room** [in the apartment building where he first met Morpheus]. **You can see it when you look out your window, or when you turn on your television. You can feel it when you go to work, when you go to church, when you pay your taxes. It is the world that has been pulled over your eyes to blind you from the truth.**"

What is the meaning of the Matrix, which is the Man-Made World? Jesus said, "Ye are IN the world but not OF the world." He was speaking of the Man-Made World, which is the world created by man's thinking. Man thinks in images, comparisons, associations, and beliefs. All of these are very useful when properly understood and used only in the Man-Made World. Let us look briefly at the major concepts in the Matrix, which hold us in bondage.

- 1. Standards**
- 2. Ideas**
- 3. Ideals**
- 4. Machines**

## **1. STANDARDS**

Man likes to make things definite and precise. He makes a standard for an inch, a foot, a yard and a mile so that everyone can use the same measurement. He wants a standard spelling and meaning for the sounds he uses to identify his concept of things. He makes rules and laws so that everyone will know what is required. All man-made things can be measured by a standard of evaluation. For example, a board is too short, too long, or just right for a certain place. A man's skill is sufficient for a job or it is not. But, in that world, when we fail to meet a standard, we are not only unfit and inadequate, but also *wrong* at best and *evil* at worst.

## **2. IDEAS**

Man forms images in his mind, which are his ideas or concepts about things. Words are really ideas. If we say, "man," we are describing an idea. We believe we know what man is, but all we know are a few things about him, and these are colored by our comparisons, associations and beliefs. Yet man thinks with words and forms images based upon these incomplete ideas. This is his distorted consciousness of the world in which he lives. So although he touches, sees, hears, smells and tastes, he translates this information into images, concepts and explanations of things. Therefore, the world that he is conscious of really is more man-made than real. In other words, his thoughts about the world do not define the Real World because the distorted lenses through which he perceives the environment around him color his ideas. As it is written, "Now we see through a glass darkly."

## **3. IDEALS**

Because of his ideals of good and evil, man compares everything to an ideal. He continually compares "what is" with "what ought to be," "might be" or "should be." But what is ideal today, such as style of automobiles, clothes, homes, etc., will not be ideal tomorrow, so he is in a constant state of struggle towards the ever-illusory ideal. So we are made to feel we are right or wrong, good or bad, in or out, insider or outsider, qualified or unqualified, pretty or ugly, healthy or unhealthy, old or new, etc., all in accordance as to whether we are or are not in possession of the ideal.

## **4. MACHINES**

A machine is anything man rearranges in order to provide a function he considers to be of value. A machine may be as simple as a pin and as complex as a city the size of New York. Man builds machines by using his standards, ideas and ideals. These machines multiply his natural capacities and give him some feeling of omnipotence, creating the illusion that he is gaining dominion over the Real World, when in reality, like the computer, he is merely enslaved by the machines of the Man-Made World.

## **THE ILLUSION OF THE MAN-MADE WORLD**

Let's remember that, ultimately and collectively, the Matrix is not done to us, it is done by us. We take our homemade world very seriously, believing it is absolutely real, even very sacred. Our relative status, security, reputation, and importance in this Man-Made World are as vital to us as food and shelter, if not more so. To us it is very real. Until we awaken, we are willing to give our life for

that world and do so in many different ways. We not only believe we are in this world, but we really believe we are OF it. Even in the gospel, which obliquely asks us to wake up, this misconception of believing we are actually of the world is destructive, especially for those holding the priesthood, **whose “hearts are so much set upon the things of this [man-made] world and they aspire to the honors of men.”**

John, the Beloved, declared: **“Love not the world, neither the things that are in the world. If any man love the world, the love of the Father is not in him. For all that is in the world, the lust of the flesh, and the lust of the eyes, and the pride of life, is not of the Father [the Real World], but is of the [Man-Made] World.”** (I John 2:15-16)

Through our life-long conditioning to accept the Man-Made World as real, we have no choice but to be obsessed with the world, including that part we love and respect and that part we hate and despise. We can be freed from this bondage only when we understand the subtle, hypnotic power of the Man-Made World. As we gain this liberating understanding, we can begin to see the myriads of illusions which have enabled our lives to be ruled by the power of suggestion. What does it mean to be ruled by the power of suggestion?

### THE MATRIX APPEARS REAL BY THE POWER OF SUGGESTION

Suggestion is anything by which a person forms an image of a desirable or painful condition in the future, thereby causing an anxiousness to gain or escape something later. Suggestions regarding future conditions make things seem important, since one's happiness is dependent upon them. Whenever we make anything important, we will be anxious, and anxiety prevents peace of mind, which is the kingdom of heaven. These fear-based motives color our desires and actions with self-centered intent, which makes them impure. In other words, we are forever unconsciously justifying, manipulating, conniving, rationalizing, blaming and complaining.

All hypnosis is done by suggestion. No one can ever be hypnotized unless he is subject to suggestion, which means that he has a need and compulsion to gain pleasure or escape pain. Since these are often hidden, subconscious motives, the conscious mind keeps busy finding justification for doing what one has an inner urge to do. The rationalizations may be very noble, fascinating, exciting or logical, but they are really only excuses.

### MOST SUGGESTION WORKS ON THE SUBCONSCIOUS LEVEL

Since individuals are unconscious of the impact of a suggestion on their subconscious, they are convinced that their choices are conscious and freely made by reason and intellect. But it is seldom the case.

For example, Professor Hart at Duke University put a student under hypnosis during a class session. Before waking him, he gave him a posthypnotic suggestion, telling the student that after being awakened, the professor would cough from time to time. But on the third cough, the student was to walk over to the window and pull the shade down. Half an hour later, when the teacher gave his third cough, the student quickly got up, walked to the window and lowered the shade, completely unconscious of his real motive. When he was asked what was his reason, he instantly replied, “The sun hurt my eyes.” He became very indignant when challenged further.

We almost always “think” we know why we are doing the things we do, but very seldom do we really know. Man's most lauded virtues of loyalty, patriotism, ambition, team spirit, family pride and what he usually calls love are often the results of hypnotic suggestion held deeply in the subconscious mind. In this way we are more on “automatic pilot” than we could ever imagine.

### THE FOUR GREAT PROFESSIONS IN THE MATRIX

What makes the Matrix work is that we are all trying to exercise at least a little control over others through suggestion. So collectively and individually, we all help keep the whole world in the darkness of hypnotic unconsciousness. As Morpheus explained to Neo, **“You are here because you know something. What you know you can't explain, but you feel it. You have felt it your entire life, that there is something wrong with the world. You don't know what it is, but it is there, like a splinter in your mind, driving you mad.”**

To better understand the nature of this control that totally involves our everyday world, let's take four examples that we might call the four great professions. However, as we do, remember we are

not seeing them as bad or evil, but merely as what makes the Man-Made World go round.

- 1. Healing Practitioners**
- 2. Theologians**
- 3. Business Promoters**
- 4. Politicians and Intellectuals**

## **1. THE HEALING PRACTITIONERS**

This ancient profession has given mankind the suggestion that they must be normal, for if they are not normal, they will be abnormal. They tell us how we are a victim of germs, malnutrition, stress and aging. Man is "attacked" by the flu, his heart, TB, and arthritis. He is a helpless victim of indigestion, bad back, hardening of the arteries, gout, etc. Therefore man spends billions of dollars being saved from the functions of his own body by the dedicated practitioners of the healing profession. We acknowledge that they are sincere, but they are also victims of their own suggestions as well. They are usually dealing with the result or symptom rather than the source of the disorder.

When we begin to understand that most of our feelings of emergency are false, we discover that we are not victims. Instead, we are creators of our own destruction. Illness is a necessary adaptation of the body to the misuse we give it by having a continual cry or prayer in our hearts, and that inner prayer is one of anxiety—which is from false feelings of emergency. Infinite Intelligence always responds perfectly to that interpretation provided by our conscious or unconscious awareness. So because of constant anxiety, our bodies are continually being mobilized to either fight or run. The "stress juices" become toxic poisons and must be used up, neutralized or stored in the way our particular bodies can adapt. When our tissues become weak and abused, they invite great hordes of microscopic invaders. However, a truly healthy, physical body can handle most any invasion because it is not fouled with toxins and bound with tension.

When a person awakes to see that his body is totally normal for this time and place, he can begin to experience life functions freely. He is able to sense a serene interpretation of bodily function. Then the Father within will do the appropriate thing for the information submitted. The undesired adaptations are soon no longer needed. Then he truly can "run and not be weary, walk and not faint."

Yes, doctors are very necessary because they help ease the pain of our gradual wearing out and dying, but they are helpful only because of our failure to see that we are really not of this world, even though we are in this world. The ordinance of anointing the sick with consecrated oil is to be a reminder to us that oil represents the highest level of truth, and the truth shall make one free from all limitations and restraints.

## **2. THEOLOGIANS**

Naturally religious people, thanks to their diverse preachers of good and bad, live in constant concern that there is a God who is making one bad mark after another on their heavenly record. They try harder and harder in the "acting game" to make amends, giving up both their treasure and peace of mind. They buy these suggestions, of course, because they are trying to gain a reward in heaven and escape the punishment of hell—or perhaps an inferior kingdom. Therefore, even when they are working diligently "for the Lord," their hearts are still "so much set upon the things of this world," because even the heaven and hell they conceive are man-made places created by their imagination and are completely colored by their own judgment of good and evil.

Since each of us starts life by eating from the Tree of Knowledge, there have always been those around who were ready to give us the exact definition about what is good and what is evil. The suggestion they "lay" on us is that if we do something which they say is good, then we are "good" and will be rewarded. But if we do something that is bad, then we are "bad" and will be punished. These processes of identification as good or bad creates constant anxiety and worry—since no one is ever able to do everything that is good and avoid everything that is bad. The theologians quote the great promises of God, but interpret them to be descriptions of the utopian, non-disturbed state. When these rewards do not come to pass, the "scribes and Pharisees" have a ready "out." The promises failed because the people did not keep all of the conditions. If calamities come, as they do from time to time, then all are warned that they must repent or worse things will fall on them. Theologians offer us more and more fruit from the forbidden Tree, the Tree of disappointment, heartbreak and death. Instead of leading man to the Tree of Life, they keep him from it.

**“But woe unto you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! for ye shut up the kingdom of heaven against men: for ye neither go in yourselves, neither suffer ye them that are entering to go in.”** (Matt. 23:13)

### **3. BUSINESS PROMOTERS**

“Everybody,” they tell us, “wants to make a buck.” Making money usually takes selling and the secret of selling is suggestion. Promoters give people the suggestion of what is “pretty.” Being pretty is very important, because if something is not “pretty,” then it is “ugly.” So most everyone buys pretty cars, houses, clothes, cosmetics, appliances, furnishings, and on and on. The business promoters give the suggestion that everything will be rosy when people have MORE of something or other. Just plain utility and reasonable comfort and reliability is not what we struggle and go in debt for. We need to be nice, handsome, young or pretty. Styles, tastes, habits, standards, and even ethics are changed by suggestion. Mass advertising is mass hypnosis—premeditated, calculated, and ingenious. People claim that they buy only what is necessary, the absolute essentials, but who are they kidding. Look at the fancy, gooey, pre-cooked, de-energized, colorful wrapped foods we squander our treasure for—Why? Because we need the nourishment? No! It is because of psychological necessity.

When a person sees the skillfully laid suggestions for “gaining and escaping” which lie behind the big promotions, he can recognize the “designs that do and will exist in the hearts of conspiring men.” He also sees that he has sometimes been one of them. When we discover that we do not need psychological safety, we are then free to enjoy what we will, with no compulsion, no need to be any particular thing to anybody, but a freedom to enjoy what we do within the reality of FULL RESPONSIBILITY. Guilt is actually an attempt to escape responsibility through blame—even a blame of “self.” **“Man shall not live by bread [gratification of the senses] alone, but by every word [the light of truth] that proceedeth out of the mouth of God.”** **“Thou shalt not tempt the Lord thy God.”** **“Get thee hence, Satan, for it is written, Thou shalt worship the Lord thy God, and him only shalt thou serve.”** (Matt. 4:4-10)

### **4. POLITICIANS AND INTELLECTUALS**

Just so we will not pick on the doctors, scribes and business promoters and claim we are not a party to suggestion, let us remember that we all play our part in each category, especially in this category of being politicians. This is the profession that tells everyone what is “in.” It is very important, they stress, to be “in,” because if one is not “in,” then he is certainly “out,” and that is a fate worse than death. The great politicians and intellectuals are great hypnotizers, suggesting that unless one agrees with them, he will be supporting terrible people who will get everyone into terrible trouble. Thus, it is “in” to be conservative or liberal, pro-war or anti-war, pro-choice or pro-life, pro-labor or pro-management, and so forth. Every group, whether a society, company, church, city, state or nation, have their politicians who create dedication, zeal and loyalty through suggestion based upon fear, competition, ambition or self-pity. It seems these days that almost everyone is suddenly finding out that he is a member of a disadvantaged, victimized minority, whether it is a race, religion, nationality or the “Home Owners of Big Valley Against Sewers.”

The war between the “haves” and the “have nots,” whether it be in ideologies or economics, is a form of competition which always leads to violence. Competition is the energy source for great civilizations, but it is also the force that brings about their destruction. When one sees the suggestions which underlie competition, he can step out of the “in” and “out” game, the up-manship contest, and leave “civilization” by entering into a “culture.” Although such a person is still IN the world, he ceases to live as though he was OF it. It only takes one to have a CULTURE. That one could soon be a Christ-man.

### **SUMMARY**

Since our basic programming is to see ourselves as victims, as we first discover that we live in a controlling Matrix, our first reaction is to believe that we are victims of it, enslaved by its automatic controlling suggestions. Our awakening begins when we see that the Matrix, in which we are little more than stimulus-reaction machines, *is of our own making*. Each of us has defined the world through our own eyes, both consciously and unconsciously. Through our rigid standards, interpretations, ideals and arrangements, we are held captive to a world of our own design that we

believe is the only world there is — that is until we see the illusions of our conclusions and begin to experience a reality that goes beyond the fear of loss. It is then that the four great professions of health, church, business and politics lose their appearances of ultimate, one and only truth, and become elements in our lives that can be useful but not enslaving.

## Chapter III

# HOW EACH CHARACTER REPRESENTS DIFFERENT ASPECTS OF OUR INNER SELF

A primary key to seeing this allegory on the Third Level is the recognition that each character is to be understood as representing different aspects of our inner self. We are all like the keyboard on a piano. There are both high and low notes. There are both the selfish and the unselfish, even in extreme degrees, depending upon the level of justification we may find for a particular reaction.

So as we look at the various characters in this story, it will be fascinating to discover that each role can symbolize one or another aspect of our own programmed personalities. Seeing how pernicious the Matrix is can help us understand the trap of being a highly programmed, reactionary natural man, which is what all of us are under the Fall. The natural man—a being programmed to judge between what he perceives as good and evil—is continually resisting what it is in the world that is seen as evil, thus, as we are told, he is an enemy to the creator of all things, even God, and will be forever and ever. Inwardly, even though we would be the last to know, each of us is *the Matrix!* The Matrix is not just out there, *it is also in here!*

### CAST OF CHARACTERS IN THE MOVIE

**Neo, alias Thomas A. Anderson:** (**Neo means new and different.**) He lives a double life. Outwardly, he is a computer specialist but, inwardly, he is a hacker who has been fighting the system, making computer viruses and other deviations to thwart the establishment. He is being watched by Morpheus' crew in the belief that he might be the One who can save the world from the Matrix. Neo represents the potential of our Awareness. Our conscious mind of the left brain shifts from being *subjective* in that our inner-state is controlled by circumstances, to being *objective*, wherein we are in charge of our inner-state

**Trinity:** (**The fullness of the Godhead**) She is the ranking officer in Morpheus' crew and has mixed feelings about Neo being the ONE. She is loyal to Morpheus and is concerned about some of the crew who want to eliminate Neo as a threat to their mission because of Morpheus' obsession with Neo being the One. In our symbolism, Trinity represents the emotions and feelings of our subconscious mind, the right brain. Trinity represents love, but starts out as conditioned love that is loaded with fear. In Greek, it is called phileo. So Trinity goes from representing the fearful love of phileo to the transformed love of agape.

**Morpheus:** (**The lord of dreams**) The leader of this spaceship sent out by the last remaining human city, Zion, is to wage a battle of resistance with the Matrix. Symbolically, he represents the wisdom of the higher self, often called the Holy Ghost, which has been looking for the part of the self which has the capacity to become the true awareness which can destroy the Matrix that enslaves us by keeping us as a stimulus/reaction machine.

**Cypher:** (**Absence of quantity, zero**) He has been one of Morpheus' crew members for nine years and is part of the crew that wants to eliminate Neo because he thinks Morpheus is wrong about Neo being the One. He has become disillusioned and finally makes a deal with the agents of the Matrix to betray Morpheus. Symbolically, he represents that part of the self that wants to trade his access to Morpheus for a peaceful life back in the Matrix.

**Switch:** (**Breaker**) With white, short hair, she is another talented member of the crew and is very close to her buddy, Apoc. She also has some questions about Morpheus' preoccupation with Neo and may be part of the crew that wants to kill him. She is loyal but fearful and hard as nails.

**Apoc:** (**To leave off, from apocope**) He is an important engineer on the crew but is no longer excited about their mission, shown by his complaining about the mush-like food tasting like snot. He is loyal but also wonders what is going on.

**Tank:** (**Reservoir**) He is one of the two members of the crew who was born a natural human being and never had to be freed from the Matrix. He is the chief operator on the spaceship's computer systems. Symbolically, he is that part of our self that did not get incorporated into the natural man, which is an enemy to God. He sits at the spaceship controls when Morpheus and others take their minds into the Matrix.

**Dozer:** (**Pusher**) He is Tank's older brother, another natural, and is intelligent but a quiet bystander most of the time. He is loyal, talented and a key engineer on the ship. He also stays with the ship when the others leave.

**Mouse:** (**To search for something, like the mouse on a computer**) He is a small, young man who has done much of the simulation programming, also is very curious and engaging.

### **THE EIGHTEEN STAGES OF THE STORY OF TRANSFORMATION ON THE THIRD LEVEL**

As we have mentioned, this movie can be seen on the First Level of empowerment on the temporal level, or on the Second Level of empowerment on the spiritual level. However, our purpose in this study is to see the movie as revealing the stages of the Third or Integrative Level in which the old self dies and the new Christ-self is manifest in both the mind and the heart.

Our study will take the eighteen major sequences of the movie and see how they describe some of the steps in the awakening process.

1. Trinity, after watching Neo, has to make her escape.
2. Neo being warned, then is captured and finally bugged.
3. Neo's debugging and choosing to go with Morpheus,
4. Morpheus projects Neo back into the womb experience to break him loose from being a machine.
5. Neo, now in the Real World of the Zion probe spaceship, has his body regenerated.
6. Neo is introduced to the source of their opposition to the Man-Made World, called the Construct.
7. Neo has his mind expanded through programmed simulators.
8. Neo practices the new skills of Kung Fu and jumping.
9. Neo is taught about the Matrix in a simulated Matrix.
10. Neo gets to see what life in the spaceship is like for the crew.
11. Cypher's betrayal.
12. Neo visiting with the Oracle.
13. Morpheus' capture and torture by Agent Smith.
14. Cypher destroys but is miraculously destroyed.
15. Neo and Trinity rescue Morpheus.
16. Neo's death and Trinity's awakening.
17. Neo's awakening and victory over Agent Smith.
18. The unity of Neo and Trinity.

## **Chapter IV**

### **THE ROLE OF MORPHEUS AS THE FUNCTION OF THE HOLY GHOST**

The key facilitator in the story, of course, is the role played by the Zion Captain of the spaceship, Morpheus. On the **First Level**, he would represent the "how to" truths, teachings and principles which enables individuals to become masters of their human potential. On the **Second Level**, Morpheus represents the empowering guidance of the Spirit, which we call the Spirit of Christ, by

which a person can become spiritually empowered.

## MORPHEUS IS OUR GUIDE TO ETERNAL TRUTH

But on the **Third Level**, we can see Morpheus demonstrating the role fulfilled in our transformation by the Holy Ghost. If that seems strange, it is only because we members take the gift of the Holy Ghost so much for granted. So let's ask, in what way does the Holy Ghost fulfill the critical role of awakening us as Morpheus does in awakening Neo?

As Christ said to His disciples at the Last Supper, "**But the Comforter, which is the Holy Ghost, whom the Father will send in my name, he shall teach you all things.**" (Matthew 14:26)

In the function of our awakening, as demonstrated by Morpheus, the Holy Ghost has been looking for the part of the self that has the ultimate capacity to become the true Christ Awareness and can successfully deal with the agents of the Matrix one on one. So how does the Holy Ghost do that inner working in our awakening?

## WHO AND WHAT IS THE HOLY GHOST?

The function and operation of the Holy Ghost is little understood by most members. For example, if He is only a single, personalized spirit being, how does He abide in millions of the faithful at the same time?

Let's also take the question about why He is never given a personal name? Even the name, "Ghost," is strange, even if we add, "Holy" to it. The alternative name is Holy Spirit, which doesn't help much either. Not that any of this is a problem, but some possible answers to the questions might point in the direction of a much better understanding of ourselves.

For the reader to understand the Matrix on the **Third Level**, there are some basic questions about the Godhead that we might consider. First of all, most have assumed that for a child of God to become deity, the individual must have received a Celestialized, resurrected body. However, Christ, who we are told was Jehovah in the preexistence, was a glorified spirit being and came on earth to receive a body just as we have. What would be true of the Jehovah would also be true of the rest of God's family, including the Holy Ghost and each of us. We do not usually concern ourselves much about the personage of the Holy Ghost, but there are some interesting possibilities which deserve some contemplative thought.

## MICHAEL REPRESENTS THE OFFICE OF THE HOLY GHOST

It is no secret that in the temple we are introduced to a trinity of three Gods, Elohim, Jehovah and Michael. Brigham Young, on April 9, 1852, declared:

**The earth was organized by three characters, namely Elohim, Yahovah, and Michael, these three forming a quorum, as in all heavenly bodies, and in organizing element, perfectly represent to the Deity, as Father, Son, and Holy Ghost.** (Journal of Discourses, Vol. 1:50-51)

So Michael, in the pre-existence, functioned as the Holy Ghost! When Michael became Adam, and Adam eventually received the Holy Ghost, what does that mean? You will probably not find the answer in the "milk" of the gospel, only in the "meat." It is there that we discover the paradox of there only being *one Infinite and Eternal God*, yet made of *many God-Beings*.

To the casual thinking of most members of the Church, a God-Being functions as a God through organized kingdoms and delegated priesthood authority, thus not personally omnipresent, omniscient or omnipotent. However, once a person understands the concept that each God-Being is, individually and collectively, the One Infinite and Eternal God, such a being is God because He comprehends and functions in and through the Infinite and Eternal Spirit which is in all things and out of which all things are made. In other words, "they" IS ONE, though made of "many." I covered these thoughts in detail in Chapters XIII and XIV, in *A Blessing Hitherto Unknown, Book II, Finding the Mark*.

## HOW DOES MICHAEL REPRESENT THE HOLY GHOST IN THE GODHEAD?

Now we are ready to go back to Brigham Young's statement about the Godhead:

**The earth was organized by three characters, namely Elohim, Yahovah, and Michael, these three forming a quorum, as in all heavenly bodies, and in organizing element,**

**perfectly represent to the Deity, as Father, Son, and Holy Ghost.** (Journal of Discourses, Vol. 1:50-51)

So what about Michael, the spirit Son of God who helped create the earth and became Adam? He is the third member of the trio who created the earth, so is he the Holy Ghost, or does he, in some way, only represent the Holy Ghost? Let's remember, we believe that Michael was already an infinite, though unembodied God-Being when he was able to help Jehovah create the earth. Then Michael was put to sleep and awoke as Adam in the Garden of Eden. When he became Adam, was all of his glory of his Michael-hood tucked into his mortal body? Evidently not. Notice what we are told about Jesus not receiving His pre-existent glory at first:

**And I, John, bear record that I beheld His glory [before His birth], as the glory of the Only Begotten of the Father, full of grace and truth, even the Spirit of truth, which [afterward] came and dwelt in the flesh, and dwelt among us.**

**And I John, saw that He received *not of the fullness at the first*, but received grace for grace; and he received *not of the fullness at first*, but continued from grace to grace, until *He received a fullness*; and thus he was called the Son of God, because He received *not of the fullness at the first*. (D&C 93:11-14)**

This statement helps us understand the first part of Christ's prayer at the Last Supper when he prayed:

**I have glorified thee on the earth. I have finished the work which thou gavest me to do. And now, O Father, GLORIFY THOU ME WITH THINE OWN SELF WITH THE GLORY WHICH I HAD WITH THEE BEFORE THE WORLD WAS. (John 17:4-5)**

So although Christ had been given access to the fullness of the Father at the time of His baptism, that fullness was not fully bestowed until His resurrection shortly after this prayer at the Last Supper. In the same way, the glory of Jehovah was bestowed upon Jesus grace by grace until He received a fullness. Now, could the same be true about Adam? If so, the pre-existent glory of Michael was not bestowed upon Adam until he received the Holy Ghost.

#### **BY THE HOLY GHOST, ADAM WAS TO BE GIVEN THE POWER OF HEAVEN TO ABIDE IN HIM**

As the voice of God spoke to Adam, many years after the Garden of Eden, God explained to him why he now needed to be given the gift of the Holy Ghost. Notice the infinite magnitude of the blessing:

**Therefore, I give unto you a commandment, to teach these things freely unto your children...that ye might be sanctified from all sin, and enjoy the words of eternal life in this world, and eternal life in the world to come, even immortal glory...**

Therefore it is given to ABIDE IN YOU:

- the *record of heaven*;
- the *Comforter*;
- the *peaceable things of immortal glory*;
- the *truth of all things*;
- that which *quickeneth all things*,
- which *maketh alive all things*,
- that which *knoweth all things*, and
- hath *all power according to wisdom, mercy, truth, justice, and judgment*.

**And now, behold, I say unto you: This is the plan of salvation unto ALL MEN. (Moses 6:58-62)**

Those powers, glory and knowledge would describe perfectly what Jehovah and Michael must have had as pre-mortal, Spirit-God Beings in order to create the earth. The list certainly describes what Christ received access to when He received the Comforter, which was "the fullness of the Father" at His baptism. So would it be reasonable to say that just as Christ received access to His divine Jehovah-nature at the time of His baptism, so also did Adam receive access to his Michael-nature at the time of his baptism? If this is the case, and Michael in the creative trinity represents the

position of the Holy Ghost, then Adam's Michael-hood is the personalized Holy Ghost *to him* just as Jesus' Jehovah-hood was the same as the personalized Holy Ghost to Him.

### **SO IS THE HOLY GHOST TO EACH OF US AS THE ROLE OF MORPHEUS IS TO NEO?**

Now we come to the real key to our study of The Matrix. As we are all informed in the Temple, we should see ourselves as Adam and Eve. As we will discuss later, everything that happened to Adam and Eve in the Garden of Eden is symbolically parallel to what happened to each of us in the womb. So we can see that if we are "Adams," and Adam is Michael, then we, individually, helped create the earth along with Jehovah and we came down here just as Michael did, for we too, as children of God, would have been infinite, unembodied God-Beings. So if and when we truly receive the Holy Ghost, it is possible that we have access to receiving more of our infinite nature, or as Peter called, it, the *Divine Nature*.

In this way, the Holy Ghost has not been given a name because, as Michael, it is an office which includes the infinite and the finite, and is an integral, individualized aspect of each of the sons and daughters of our Father in Heaven. Some people like to talk about getting in touch with one's "higher self." Is that what Christ received when He was bestowed the Holy Ghost? Is that what Adam did when he received the Holy Ghost, **the truth of all things; that which quickeneth all things, and which maketh alive all things?** Is that what each of us is invited to do?

### **ANOTHER WAY TO SEE THE HOLY GHOST IS AS OUR "HIGHER SELF"**

So we can see Morpheus as representing the role of the Holy Ghost as our higher infinite self we had in the pre-existence. Since all the characters in the story are aspects of our inner self, we can see the Holy Ghost in a much more personal way and why He has never been given a specific name. Could his name really be Holy Michael for Adam, Holy Simon for Peter, Holy Joseph for the prophet, and Holy you for your divine inheritance as a literal offspring of Almighty God? So being introduced to the Morpheus in each of us will help us realize that we are already so much greater than we could possibly comprehend.

### **SUMMARY**

In the milk, preparatory gospel, the truth is limited to the materialistic level, in which the Godhead "is" just three exalted people. On the meat level, they are individuals who are also, consciously, omnipotent, omnipresent and omniscient in their infinite and eternal Oneness. So the Holy Ghost is more than a single person, but is a title given to that aspect of our eternal glory that can begin to be revealed to us even while we are mortals. In this movie, we will see how the role of Morpheus teaches us much about what the Holy Ghost can and cannot do, for He is only the First Comforter. It is His mission to prepare us so that we can receive the Second Comforter, which is the awakening to our infinite Oneness with the Infinite Christ.

## **PART II**

## **THE REBIRTH**

**Rescuing Neo and  
awakening him to the Real World**

## Chapter V

### TRINITY, AFTER WATCHING NEO, HAS TO MAKE HER ESCAPE

As we watch each scene, we will described the action and then discuss the elements of the story and what they might symbolize in our own process of waking up.

The movie opens showing a computer screen with data regarding a search going on while we hear a phone ringing and Trinity asks, “*Is everything in place?*”

Cypher answers and sounds irritated, “*You are not supposed to replace me!*”

Trinity acknowledges that fact, “*I know that. I decided to take this shift.*”

Then Cypher begins to challenge her by accusing her of forming an attachment to the person they are watching, whose name is Neo. “*You like him, don't you? You like watching him, don't you?*”

Trinity emphatically denies any attachment, “*Don't be ridiculous!*”

Then Cypher reminds her that he and some other members of the crew are going to eliminate this individual, so he reminds her, “*We're going to kill him. Do you understand that?*”

But Trinity reminds her fellow crewmember that their leader, Morpheus, believes that *he is the One*.

Cypher, with a sneer, challenges her by saying, “*You don't, do you?*”

Trinity responds, “*It doesn't matter what I believe.*” Then Trinity, having heard a click on the line, thinks this line might be being traced by agents of the Matrix, and asks, “*Are you sure this line is clean?*”

Even though Cypher assures her it is, she realizes her position might have been jeopardized by this phone call, and says, “*I had better go.*”

#### TAKING STOCK OF WHERE WE ARE IN THE STORY

This opening scene, once we know the whole story, tells us a great deal about Morpheus' mission and the state of his crew. Morpheus is a leader of one of Zion's many space crafts which have been sent out by what little is left of the Real World to secretly probe the Matrix of the Man-Made World. His mission is two fold, to secretly broadcast awakening messages into the slave population of the Matrix and, second, to find one of the slaves who has the potential of destroying the power of the Matrix from within. On board the spacecraft are two natural beings from Zion who always stay with the ship and five partially liberated slaves from the Matrix. Evidently, Morpheus has worked with many potential liberators from the Matrix, but each candidate has eventually tried to fight the agents and has been destroyed in the process. The only ones who have survived are those who learned to RUN. Evidently, this included these few, himself and the five other partially liberated crew members.

Morpheus knows that none of his present crew members have the capacity to be the ultimate liberator, so he has been searching the Matrix, with their help, looking for the One who could. However, in the past, each of the five has already been given the full liberating treatments that Neo will be taken through. Their bodies and minds have been reprogrammed so that they are more powerful than the Matrix, but not the three agents. They obediently serve Morpheus but are not slaves to him. Evidently, when Cypher said, “We are going to kill him,” he meant himself and two other members of the crew, Apoc and Switch. All three are convinced that Morpheus is wrong in choosing Neo and plan to eliminate him, which will prove to their leader that he was not the One after all and will look for another. It might be remembered that the crew members, having been freed from

the Matrix, do not see any of the Matrix as real. So for them to eliminate Neo would not be murder, but mere housecleaning.

### **OUR MANY DIFFERENT PERSONALITIES ARE LIKE THE NATIONS OF THE EARTH**

One of the Biblical prophecies of the last days says that when the end-time comes, two thirds of the nations will be destroyed and the other one third will be tried by fire. Along with all the other prophecies of the Second Coming, they can be seen as symbolic of how the coming of the Savior into our hearts will take place. Just as the earth is made of many nations, so each of us is made up of many different personalities. Each inner personality contains great populations of programming that makes it into a powerful entity in its own right, just like one of the nations on the earth. So just as the climax of the Second Coming is described as the terrible violence of Armageddon, so there must finally be an Armageddon in our hearts in which two thirds of our hard-won personalities will be destroyed and the other third will be tried by fire. This movie demonstrates, graphically, what that violence will be like in our inner awakening. It is for that reason that, as you see the movie each time with deeper understanding, the violence will be a major part of your inner processing.

Another point to remember is that just as our first parents were two people, each of us has two basic centers. Our mind, the conscious mind housed in the left hemisphere of the brain, is the intellect. Our heart, the subconscious mind housed in the right hemisphere of the brain, is the way we sense things. One is masculine and the other is feminine. The total sanctification of the inner self cannot be done by either the mind or the heart alone. In this story, we notice, it took the full awakening of Neo and Trinity to complete the inner dwelling of Christ. Neo became fully trusting, conscious *awareness* and Trinity became fully trusting *agape*.

Apoc and Switch were a potential pair but failed to fully break through. Cypher has been greatly disappointed in not being able to pair up with Trinity and especially jealous of Neo, who Trinity seems to like. This seems to be what pushes Cypher over the brink of joining the enemy. Sweet little Mouse seems to be satisfied with his inner fantasizing of an imaginary woman, the woman in the red dress. All four of these crew members, Apoc, Switch, Cypher and Mouse, represent the two thirds, that will be destroyed. As Neo joins the crew of non-naturals, making six in all, he and Trinity are the one third which will be tried by fire and survive to victory.

### **THE CREW HAS ALREADY COMPLETED THE FIRST AND SECOND LEVELS OF AWAKENING**

So in this first scene, what do we learn about what this powerful crew of five advanced personalities represents in each of us? As we live out our lives, different personalities of our inner self advance at their own pace. Most aspects of ourselves are still back in the area of sleepily, live and let live, occasionally getting involved in a little self-improvement. These personalities stay on the First Level and never leave the Great and Spacious Building of pride in their mastery of knowledge. A smaller group is holding fast on the Second Level of spiritual empowerment, in which they yearn to manifest the miraculous and enjoy the feelings of inspiring spiritual experiences. Then we have a few of our personalities who have moved to this Third Level. They are represented by the five crew members in our story. They are the near best and may actually try to destroy the real BEST, which is Neo. They have been anointed by their higher self, their Michael-hood, symbolized by Morpheus, and they work effectively in carrying out their part of the work. Everything seems pretty well in order until Neo comes aboard. Then they must come to a higher level or be taken out of the picture.

The Third Level, symbolized by the Flaming Sword and the Iron Rod, is to enable the more advanced inner personalities to see additional illusions of their conclusions of what ought to be. In our story, the crew members have already given up the illusion that they can successfully fight the devil on his own turf. They have learned to run. This skill enables them to survive precariously in the jungle of the conditioned man. They are able to stay above the entanglement of taking the Man-Made World too seriously. That is why they wear dark glasses when they go into the Matrix so that they are not caught up in either the glitter of world's glory or the trashy darkness of the world's decadence. They experience an inner peace and a lessening of fear, which can easily fool them into thinking they are already complete in their evolving liberation. However, they have not discovered

that there is an alternative to either fighting or running. Thus, they are in danger of being engulfed in pride, which, at this stage, will destroy them.

### ARE YOU SURE THIS LINE IS CLEAN?

Trinity heard something on the phone line and asked, “*What was that?*” The crew of the spaceship must stay totally undetected when they enter the Matrix. They do this by using only safe lines of communication. Meanwhile, as seen at the start of the movie, the agents are continually running a world-wide search to detect any lines that are being used by these “alien” invaders. So while Trinity and Cypher are speaking, the search has hit their line and Trinity picks up the telltale click. Not only does this put her in great jeopardy, but allows the agents to discover who it is that Morpheus has them watching. That being the case, they will trace and try to either control or destroy whoever that is. So Trinity realizes that, first of all, she must get to the nearest exit.

An exit is a natural looking device, namely a telephone, the spaceship has used the Construct to place in the Matrix which will beam an individual’s conscious mind back to the spaceship to his or her physical body. Since the exit device is not part of the Matrix, there is no way that the agents can trace it back to locate where the spaceship is.

What does the “exit” symbolize? When we are in the Man-Made World, we are vulnerable to its insidious and treacherous powers. However, special hidden channels have been provided within us that are not accessible to the devil. Although our inner devils can appear as angels of light, they cannot perfectly duplicate that light, because that light is the pure love that is beyond their capacity. However, since Trinity was talking to Cypher on a regular phone line, the incredible power of the agents’ computer-search found its target because the conversation was going on too long. Now, back to our movie.

### TRINITY IS SURROUNDED

The first scene in the movie shows four policemen with flashlights, searching in a dark hall of an abandoned hotel. They come to room 303. Breaking down door, they shout, “*Freeze! Police! Hands over your head! Do it! Do it now!*”

Trinity, with her back to the door, facing a computer screen, slowly raises both hands, waiting for them to come close. Outside we see a darkened sign, “HEART,” and in small letters beneath it, “Ol City Hotel., Hourly Rates, Free TV. Below the sign is a group of police cars, lights flashing. A black car pulls up. Three agents in dark suits and dark glasses get out of the car and walk toward the police. The leader, Agent Smith, accompanied by Agent Brown and Agent Green, says: “*Lieutenant!*”

The police lieutenant, seeing the three men, says, under his breath, “*Oh shit!*”

Agent Smith, speaks quietly but disgustingly, “*Lieutenant, you were given specific orders.*”

The police lieutenant answers angrily, “*Hey, I’m just doing my job. If you give me that jurisdiction crap, you can shove it up your ass.*”

Agent Smith, responds, tight lipped, “*The orders were for your protection!*”

The police lieutenant, laughs back, “*Ha, ha! I think we can handle one little girl.*”

As the agents walk toward the hotel, the police lieutenant shouts, “*I sent two units! They are bringing her down now.*”

To which Agent Smith answers, curtly, “*No, Lieutenant. Your men are already dead.*”

### THE STORY ENDS AT THE SAME ROOM IT BEGINS

Watching the movie on DVD, which gives a clearer picture than VHS, we see that the room number is 303. At the end of the movie when Neo is trying to escape the agents, he is sent to this same building, the Heart Hotel, to the same room. This is the third room on the third floor. Since the creators of the movie were masters of innuendoes, it is interesting that we are using their story to teach Third Level Principles.

### WHAT DO THE THREE AGENTS REPRESENT?

The police represent our ordinary resistance to unfavorable circumstances. As one has advanced

through First and Second Level processing, these obstacles to our inner peace present little real threat. So Trinity, being a highly evolved individual, dispatches them with immediacy, accuracy and without mercy. She has no time for them nor fear of them.

But what inner aspect of ourselves does Agent Smith and his two lieutenants, Agent Brown and Green, represent? They form the inner trinity of darkness that makes the *natural man* an eternal enemy to God. In the scriptures, these entities of doubt and fear are referred to as devils. The chief agent represents the great *Accuser and Usurper*, himself, known as Lucifer. But at his side are two more entities of the personality, known as the *Complainier* and the *Blamer*. These brilliant, well experienced agents of our carnal, sensual and devilish nature can be ruthless, vindictive, addictive and, at other times, they are logical, professional and efficient. They keep the slavery of the inner Matrix in force and will try to destroy any awakened part of the self that tries to fight them straight on. Surprisingly, one of the greatest values of this movie is to gain respect and understanding for the power and intrigue of the *dark side within all of us*.

### THE ACCUSER THRIVES AS LONG AS WE KEEP EATING FROM HIS TREE OF KNOWLEDGE

The scriptures, including the New Testament, have many stories about devils. For example, when Christ asked the entity that possessed a tormented man what his name was, the man's voice answered, "**Legion, for we are many!**" (Mark 5:1-17) Obviously, in the Man-Made World there are many satanic beings, both in spirit and in flesh. But in our study here, we will be dealing with the devils that we can truly do something about, and those are the self-created devils who dwell within us, those aspects of our personality that thrive on creating misery and negativity.

It is so easy to believe that to be under Satan's power, one must be evil as it is defined in the Man-Made World. However, as one proceeds through the Flaming Sword to the Tree of Life, we understand more accurately what it means to still be under his power. Being under Satan's power simply means that we keep eating off the forbidden Tree of Knowledge of Good and Evil, comparing anything or everything that "is" to that "which it ought to be." That is still the essence of judging and will keep alive the inner *Accuser, Complainier and Blamer*. Interestingly, their negative energy need not always be directed outwardly, for as Agent Smith finally reveals, that negativity is most enslaving when turned inwardly as guilt and shame.

### TRINITY'S NARROW ESCAPE

Upstairs, the police are coming up behind Trinity to put on the handcuffs, and she suddenly strikes back. There is rapid violence, their shooting, her Karate blows, and her shooting. When they are dead, Agent Smith and his two lieutenants show up and Trinity runs for it. When she is clear for a moment, she makes a dangerous but emergency call on her cell phone to the spaceship, "*Morpheus, the line was traced. I don't know how.*"

Morpheus answers, "*I know. They got the hard line. There is no time. You are going to have to get to another exit.*"

Desperately, Trinity asks the critical question as to whether there are any agents involved. When she learns that there are, she swears in desperation, "*Goddamn it!*"

Morpheus, realizing her precarious position, strongly counsels her, "*You have got to focus, Trinity. There is a phone at Wells and Lake. You can make it. Go!*"

Agent Smith, picking up the call, knows where she is heading. As Agents Brown and Green give chase, with police right behind, Trinity leaps between buildings. Agent Brown follows. A policeman, seeing the agent making the same jump between buildings, says, incredulously, "*It's impossible!*"

Trinity, with a flying leap, crashes into a building from another building, and momentarily is alone. Exhausted and wounded but with two guns drawn, she commands herself, "*Trinity, get up! Get up!*"

Finally she makes it to the street and sees the phone booth. The phone begins to ring. At the same time, Agent Smith, driving a dump truck, lines it up to ram the booth, spins its wheels. Trinity just makes it inside the booth, holds the receiver in one hand and puts her other hand up to the window facing the truck. In the same instant, the truck crashes the booth.

Agent Smith comes up to the smashed phone booth and sees no body. He says, "*She got out.*

*But it doesn't matter. We know the next one they are going to hit. It is Neo. We'll need a search running."*

Agent Brown responds, "It is already begun."

## DO WE HAVE AN "EXIT" THAT WE CAN ACCESS WHEN ATTACKED?

Wouldn't it be helpful if we had a magical exit phone we could run to and instantly escape back to our inner spaceship of peace, love and strength? Well, there is one that is almost always accessible, but it is so simple that most of us will fail to remember to use it. But if we focus and get to it in time, it is instantaneous and complete. I cover this "exit" strategy in greater detail in Chapters 19 and 20 in *Book II, Finding the Mark*. Just as a reminder, let's read a little of it again.

**There is a wonderful way to do our own housekeeping so that we can keep expanding space for the growing Tree of Life. When negative thoughts take possession of our mind by—**

**finding fault,  
impatience,  
worry,  
blame,  
comparing,  
anger,  
guilt—**

all as the result of comparing, justifying or whatever, we know that our inner adversary, Lucifer, is setting us up so he can feast on our misery by pulling us back to his "wise" Tree of Knowledge. At minimum, he is helping us have a busy, negative mind, and at maximum, giving us the urgency and pain of a "glitch," right in our solar plexus. So what do we do?

Please learn the following words by heart and use them immediately whenever you are being pulled back to negatively comparing "what is" with "what ought to be." Say to yourself, silently or out loud, but not angrily:

***Hello, Mr. Devil, now you go  
back to hell where you belong!***

Don't laugh! The Accuser-part of our mind, our unbeliever, can't stand the light of day. When he is caught in the act, and we send him off, our mind and feelings of urgency instantly clear and we are free to return to gratitude for the miracle of our life.

Remember, ANY TIME you feel a glitch or find you have a busy mind with negative or justifying thoughts or feelings, take charge and use the polite but firm command. Don't bother to argue [fight] with him. If you do, he will always win. At certain times you may be casting him out half a dozen times in an hour. But gradually, his beer-party, amply supplied by your anguish, misery and self-pity, will dry up. You will find him bothering you less often.

However, if you do not catch him in time, he may refuse to leave. In such a case, you may have to confidently add to these words, "In the name of Jesus Christ, my Lord!" He will go for sure, but that doesn't mean he won't be back. And it could be shortly, but this next time, catch him at the first glitch. (Max B. Skousen, A Blessing Hitherto Unknown, Book II, *Finding the Mark*, pp. 251-252)

Well, what do you think? Does it sound too glib or simple to be true? Yes, of course, but try it, anyway. It really works. When we discuss one of the last scenes in the movie, you will see how powerful this exit strategy can be. Gradually, as you become more aware of how the master agents of the Matrix work in your thoughts and feelings, you will recognize their activity and what they are doing sooner and sooner, at least most of the time. You will find you do not have to run as hard and far as terrified Trinity did in this first scene.

## SUMMARY

As we watch this first episode of the movie, we are introduced to the amazing performance of both Trinity and the agents. Thanks to her hairbreadth escape through the exit phone, we see that Trinity has learned to run, not fight. That is our first important lesson in dealing with the Accuser and his henchmen. Fight them and they win. Running means that we get out of their way. Their job is to create anxiety, at the least and down right misery at the worst. However, as we see Trinity making her escape through the exit phone, we can do the same by taking charge and sending the devil right back to hell where he belongs.

## Chapter VI

### NEO, BEING WARNED, THEN CAPTURED AND FINALLY BUGGED

Morpheus and his crew now know that the agents have discovered that his crew has been watching Neo and, therefore, he is in great danger. So, later, Morpheus, with his team, comes back into the Matrix to have Trinity warn Neo of his immediate danger and to help him escape.

#### THE INVITATION TO A PARTY

The next scene, probably a few weeks later, is in Neo's apartment. He is knapping while waiting for a visitor. His computer is showing news from the Internet. He is awakened by a message being typed on his monitor: "*Wake up, Neo.*" As Neo tries to understand, the words appear: "*The Matrix has been....*"

Neo speaks under his breath, "*What the hell?*"

The computer next prints, "*Follow the white rabbit.*"

Neo reads the message, questioningly, and repeats out loud, "*Follow the white rabbit?*"

As soon as the screen shows the words, "*knock, knock, Neo,*" there are two loud knocks at the door, startling Neo. He asks, "*Who is it?*"

A man answers from outside the door: "*Choi.*"

As Neo opens the door at the safety chain, he sees a small group of people outside and says: "*You are two hours late.*"

Choi answers, nonchalantly, "*I know. It is her fault.*" He nods in the direction of the pretty young woman by his side.

Neo asks, "*Got the money?*"

Choi answers: "*Two grand,*" handing the money to Neo.

Neo tells him to hold on, closes the door, takes out a floppy disk from a hollow book and puts in the money. He then takes the disk to the door and hands it to Choi. Choi responds enthusiastically, "*Alleluia. You are my savior, man. My own personal Jesus Christ!*"

Then Neo tries to dampen the man's enthusiasm with a warning, "*You get caught using that!*"

Choi quickly acknowledges his awareness of the danger, "*Yeah, I know. This never happened. You don't exist.*" Then, looking at Neo, he asks, seriously, "*Something wrong, man? You look a little whiter than usual.*"

Neo, with a laughing sigh, answers, "*Do you ever have that feeling when you are not sure whether you are awake or still dreaming?*"

"*Yeah. All the time. It is called Mescaline [a psychedelic drug]. It is the only way to fly. Hey, it sounds to me like you just need to unplug, man. You know you want to get some R and R.*" Then, turning to the young lady at his side, asks her, "*Should we take him with us.*"

The young lady, DeJour, looking wisely at Neo, with a smile, answers, "*Definitely!*"

But Neo declines, "*I can't. I have work tomorrow.*"

DeJour tempts him with a smile, "*It will be fun, I promise.*"

As she turns half way around, Neo notices a painting of a white rabbit on her bare shoulder. Remembering one of the messages on his computer to follow the white rabbit, he immediately

changes his mind and says, "Yeah, sure. I'll go."

## NEO'S LIFE IN THE COMPUTER UNDERGROUND

Neo is a computer genius, creating powerful programs that he sells for nice chunks of cash. What does this symbolize in our inner self? This introduction to that aspect in ourselves which has the potential of being "the One" gives us some important clues.

For us to move high up on the addictive Tree of Knowledge that makes up the Matrix, we must have already learned to play a double life. We will have been playing both sides of the street. On one side, we outwardly conform to the demands of the Man-Made World, while inwardly we have found ways to go beyond the system. Although most people just go along to get along, there are a few of us who had chosen to go underground in our opposition to the foolishness of the ideals and rules of the Man-Made World. This has been a dangerous path and has probably made it difficult for many, including our family and friends, to understand what was happening to us. The reason is that, one way or another, we have begun to see the inconsistencies of the "got to" and "have to" way of thinking of the totally conditioned man. Not only that, we have begun to carefully do something about it. What that is will vary with each individual, but if we look carefully at our life, we will see that, as Neo was a hacker in the computer world, we have become more and more of a non-conformist in our inner life. We have had to carefully find ways to buck the system without being too obvious.

Choi represents another part of our personality that feeds on the underground activity. His girl friend, representing a shallow form of phileo-love, is in love with good feelings and knows how to get them.

## TRINITY WARNS NEO OF HIS DANGER

At the party, Neo is still in a state of trying to wake up from a bad dream. Trinity comes up to him and calls him by his hacker name of Neo. He is shocked and hostile, asking her, "*How do you know that name?*"

Trinity answers, seriously, "*I know a lot about you.*"

Neo asks her who she is. She answers, "*My name is Trinity.*"

Neo is surprised because that name is famous in the underground, so he asks, incredulously, "*Trinity? THE Trinity that cracked the IRS d-base?*"

Trinity, thinking of her long-ago-past as a hacker, responds, "*That was a long time ago.*"

Neo, admitting surprise, "*Geez. I just thought you were a guy.*"

Trinity smiles wistfully, "*Most guys do.*"

Neo picks up the clue that Trinity must be the one that got him to the party, so he declares, "*That was you on my computer. How did you do that?*"

Instead of answering, she moves her mouth close to his ear and says, "*Right now all I can tell you is that you are in danger. I brought you here to warn you. Please, just listen. I know why you are here, Neo. I know what you have been doing. I know why you hardly sleep; why you live alone and why, night after night, you sit at your computer. You are looking for him. I know because I was once looking for the same thing. And when he found me, he told me that I wasn't really looking for him. I was looking for an answer. It is the question that drives us, Neo. It is the question that brought you here. You know the question, just as I did.*"

Neo acknowledges the question she is hinting at, "*What is the Matrix?*"

Trinity assures him that his goal is not far away, "*The answer is out there, Neo. It is looking for you and it will find you if you want it to.*"

## NEO IS BEING INVITED TO ENTER A WHOLE NEW PHASE IN HIS ENLIGHTENMENT

Neo's double life in the Matrix is about to reach a climax and come to an end. The transition is not going to be easy. What does this represent?

This represents the time when our path moves out of the Second Level of Spiritual Empowerment to the Third Level of Integration, symbolically, moving from our position high on the Tree of Knowledge to the Flaming Sword. Like Neo, who thought his double life of creating computer magic

was doing just fine, those on the Spiritual Level have enjoyed a high level of spiritual blessings which have made them feel very secure. Then, suddenly, the spiritual guidance stops appearing infallible. There are conflicting messages. As Neo said, “**Do you ever have that feeling when you are not sure whether you are awake or still dreaming?**” The student is going from a “knowing mind” to a “not knowing mind.” That shift takes a little getting used to. That is when one is thrown back onto an inner knowing of the heart which provides a surprisingly new sense of direction.

### **A DEEPER FORM OF LOVE HELPS US GET CLEAR ABOUT OUR SEARCH**

What aspect does Trinity represent in our inner life? Unknown to the conscious mind, she is a very advanced part of our emotional, feminine side, the right brain. Trinity represents a deeper part of our love that has been advancing faster than the intellectual side, represented by Neo. In contrast to the love we experienced in our spiritual highs of the Second Level, this love is not sentimental or emotional. Instead, it has grown significantly in understanding. Although not totally complete in the process, that aspect of ourselves warns us of a different danger than we had supposed. This danger comes from our search, itself.

Who is this someone she reminds Neo he has been looking for? For Neo, it is a guide, called Morpheus. To the student, it is the full, personal companionship of the Holy Ghost, his higher infinite self, his Michaelhood. We yearn for a personal guide, a presence that will take us by the hand and lead us each step of the way so that we do not have to flounder. In Trinity’s early searching, that form of love she once was did the same. But she found her guide and discovered that her search was not for a tutor, but for freedom from the slavery of the Matrix, the auto conditioning created by stimulus/response mechanical nature we had become.

### **NEO IS CONFRONTED BY TWO FORCES IN HIS OFFICE, HIS BOSS AND WHAT LOOKS LIKE THE FBI**

Having been up most of the night, Neo is awakened by his alarm clock which was set rather late. He slams down on the clock, realizing that he is late for work. When he gets to work, he is called in by his supervisor, Mr. Rhinehart, who explains in no uncertain terms that this part of his life is not working.

Mr. Rhinehart looks very seriously at Neo, who he knows as Thomas A. Anderson, while the window washers outside squeak their squeegees, and says, “*You have a problem with authority, Mr. Anderson. You believe that you are special. That somehow the rules do not apply to you. Obviously, you are mistaken. This company is one of the top software companies in the world because every single employee understands that they are a part of a whole. But if an employee has a problem, the company has a problem. The time has come to make a choice, Mr. Anderson. Either you choose to be at your desk on time from this time forth or you choose to find yourself another job. Do I make myself clear?*”

Neo very politely agrees, “Yes, Mr. Rhinehart.”

We next see Neo working in his small, bare cubicle. Suddenly, a FedEx man walks in and inquires, “Mr. Anderson?”

Neo, looking up, answers, “Yeah, that’s me.”

As the FedEx man leaves, Neo opens the envelope. A cell phone falls out and immediately starts to ring. Neo answers in a quiet, puzzled voice, “Hello.” A voice on the phone speaks, “Hello Neo. Do you know who this is?”

Neo, wondering if he is being contacted by the mysterious teachers he has heard about in the past, asks, “Morpheus?”

The voice responds, “Yes. I have been looking for you, Neo. I don’t know if you really want to see what I have to show you, but unfortunately, you and I have run out of time. They’re coming for you, Neo, and I don’t know what they are going to do.”

Neo, confused, asks, “Who is coming?”

Morpheus, answers, “Stand up and see for yourself.”

“Right now?”

“Yes, now! Do it slowly. The elevator.”

As Neo peeks over the partition, he is startled to see three men in business suits and dark

glasses, along with police, coming into the office, and mutters alarmingly under his breath, "Shit!"

Immediately he speaks into the phone and asks Morpheus, "What the hell do they want from me."

"I don't know, but I suggest if you don't want to find out, you'd better get out of there."

"How?"

"I can guide you, but you must do exactly as I say."

"Okay."

Morpheus, who has electronic surveillance of the area, talks swiftly, "The cubicle across from you is empty."

"What do you mean?"

"Go! Now!"

Neo scoots into the other cubicle just as the agents look into his own vacant booth. Neo, keeping hid in the new booth, hears further instructions, "Stay here for just a moment....When I tell you, go to the end of the room to the office at the end of the hall. Stay as low as you can....Go now!"

Neo, squatting down, rushes to the end of the room and enters an office.

## CONFLICTING CHALLENGES OF THE MAN-MADE WORLD

This episode represents a turning point in our spiritual life where urgency increases necessity. Neo is being confronted by two powerful forces in his attempt to live in the world, his boss on one hand and law enforcement on the other. Neo's double life has finally caught up with him. These kinds of pressures come to us from time to time, and then suddenly, a hidden hand seems to guide us. It usually happens directly and effectively. Suddenly, we may be given to know things that are critical for us. In a sense, we have no choice. Knowing that we do not know, we follow the impressions step by step.

The principle at operation here is that when circumstances seem to overwhelm us, we suddenly find ourselves in a state of not knowing what to do. This rather uncomfortable but advanced state of conscious is called, "the not-knowing mind." In other words, we are rather befuddled or blown away by circumstances. It is at these times that, almost unconsciously, we surrender. We have yielded and help comes in some mysterious way. A strange sense of awe and confidence seems to come with the guidance.

The circumstances that bring us to the "not-knowing" state may seem forced upon us but gradually, we can experience "the not-knowing mind" in more ordinary conditions without needing to be blown away. However, when it is forced upon us, our guidance will often walk us up the scale of choices that may cause us to run. This is what happened to Neo next when he was told how to escape.

## RISKING ONE'S LIFE OR ONE'S CAPTURE

No sooner had Neo found the security of the empty office, than he was given a frightening next step. Morpheus speaks, "Good, now outside there is a scaffold."

Neo, totally blown away by this stranger on the phone, asks, "How do you know all this?"

"We don't have time, Neo. To your left is a window. Go to it... Open it. Use the scaffold to get to the roof."

"Wait! No way! This is crazy!"

"There are two ways out of this building. One is that scaffold, the other is in their custody. It is your choice, either way. I leave it up to you."

Neo, realizing that the last thing he thinks he wants is being captured, opens the window and looks down to the street far below, and mutters to himself, "This is insane! Why is this happening to me?"

As he moves out on the ledge, fear begins to petrify him. Realizing his very precarious position, he mutters to himself, "I'm going to die!"

Yet Neo struggles towards the scaffold, but suddenly, he almost falls. As he grabs to save himself, he loses the phone as it falls to the street many stories below. Realizing that he would rather face capture than death, he turns back to the window, exclaiming, breathlessly, "I can't do this!"

The next scene is at street level and Neo, in custody of the agents, is being put in Agent Smith's

black car. Trinity is on a motorcycle nearby and realizing the catastrophe of Neo's capture, mutters her disdain in the descriptive word, "Shit!"

### LEARNING NOT TO TRUST THE INNER GUIDANCE AS ABSOLUTE

From this scene, it does look like Morpheus is asking Neo to do the impossible. But since Neo gave up, we will not know whether he could have made it or not. Obviously, his guide felt so. But, notice, Morpheus had said, "*It is your choice, either way. I leave it up to you.*"

It seems that all of us, as we have clung to the spiritual level of the Tree of Knowledge, looked forward to that day when choices, in a real sense, would be made for us. As Nephi assured us, "**The Spirit will tell you all things to do.**" We took that to mean that the inner guidance would always be there and would never fail. Well, as long as we have that belief and try to make it work, we are trying to be puppets on the divine strings of manipulation. In Chapter 29 in *Book II, Finding The Mark*, we reviewed how necessary it is, at times, for revelations to fail—for us to be occasionally miss-directed—so that we will finally give up trusting the Tree of Knowledge. Eventually, we find how the Spirit, instead of dictating step by step what to do, helps us choose what to do. The Spirit, being perfect agape-love, enables us to naturally and easily choose what to do when life places opportunities in front of us. The difference is very subtle but critical. We must reach that point when we no longer "trust" God to give us *knowledge*. We remember that, although He made both trees, one was forbidden. That forbidden tree is the rigid, inflexible and narrow knowledge of right and wrong, like the trunk of a tree. But the pure love of Christ, symbolized by the Tree of Life, inspires spontaneous choices, from moment to moment, like the wind blowing in the branches.

We notice that Neo was willing to try to reach the scaffolding, but the further he got along that path, the worse things became. When he suddenly lost the telephone, he had no further way to be instructed. It was then that "good sense" prevailed and he returned back into the office.

### NEO STANDS HIS GROUND AND IS IMPREGNATED WITH A TRACKING ORGANISM

Neo is taken to the Agent's headquarters and is left sitting, waiting in an office behind a desk. Agent Smith comes in with his two lieutenants, Agent Brown and Agent Green, all wearing dark suits and dark glasses. Agent Smith places a big file on the desk in front of him and unwinds the string holding it closed. He opens the file, showing Neo's file number in big print.

Agent Smith, in a very calm, professional tone, begins to explain to Neo where he stands. "*As you can see, we have had our eye on you for some time now, Mr. Anderson. It seems that you have been living two lives. In one life, you are Thomas A. Anderson, a program writer for a respectable software company. You have a social security number. You pay your taxes, and you help your landlady carry out her garbage.*

*"Your other life is lived with computers where you go by the hacker alias Neo, where you are guilty of virtually every computer crime we have a law for. One of these lives has a future. The other does not. I'm going to be as forth coming as I can be. Mr. Anderson, you are here because we need your help."* At this point, Agent Smith removes his dark glasses, and then continues. "*We know you have been contacted by a certain individual, a man who calls himself Morpheus. Whatever you think you know about this man is irrelevant. He is considered by many authorities to be the most dangerous man alive. My colleagues feel that I am wasting my time with you. But I believe you wish to do the right thing. We are willing to wipe the slate clean and give you a fresh start. All that we are asking in return is your cooperation in bringing a known terrorist to justice.*"

Neo has been listening carefully and, after a pause, responds deliberately, "Yeah, well that sounds like a pretty good deal. But I think I have a better one. How about I give you the finger and you give me my phone call."

Agent Smith, as he puts his dark glasses back on, declares, "Now, Mr. Anderson, you disappoint me."

Neo is not dismayed, and demands, "You can't scare me with this Gestapo crap. I have my rights. I want my phone call."

Agent Smith, with a wry smile on his face, retorts sarcastically, "Tell me, Mr. Anderson, what good is a phone call if you are unable to speak!"

Immediately, Neo's teeth begin to be like glue-paste and his mouth begins to disappear. He

struggles to get up and is forced by the two assistants back on the table, as they rip his shirt open and he lays face up on the table. Agent Smith, with a big smile on his face, announces, “*You are going to help us, Mr. Anderson, whether you want to or not.*”

Agent Smith takes a vile out of a little silver box, presses the “on” button to activate it. Out comes a wiggly device that is like a big, multi-legged insect. Agent Smith drops the wiggle device on Neo’s stomach. The device continues to wiggle and finally disappears in Neo’s naval, causing a great deal of pain to Neo, who struggles and groans in agony.

### TRYING TO TAKE ON THE ACCUSER IN HIS OWN CAMP

This scene represents a very critical stage in our attempt to break through the Matrix. As our awareness, as represented by Neo, sees more and more of the illusions of the Man-Made World, we begin to gain a sense of invulnerability. Agent Smith represents a time in our integrative process in which the magnitude of our old conditioning makes a major attempt to fully enslave us by making us a hidden ally of his dark forces of contempt. Agent Smith is the master devil within each of us. He is brilliant, professional, and has powers far beyond those of our growing awareness. Remember, Agent Smith’s real name is the Accuser, i.e. the devil, the dark force in our lives we picked up in the womb when we stopped flowing with life and judged what was happening as bad.

Agent Smith and his two lieutenants are the most reactionary and advanced parts of our thinking mind. They are masters of control, creating the anger and guilt that holds the Matrix in place. Agent Smith represents that voice we hear within which is constantly blaming, accusing, faultfinding, comparing what is with what it ought to be. Of all our mental processes, this part has had the most practice. It is the part of us which wants to keep us *carnal, sensual and devilish*, but at the same time, appears so civilized, rational, justified and loyal.

The Accuser wants us to go with him willingly, but at this stage, our awareness has advanced far enough to know that we are not victims, that we can stand our ground. So as Neo made his brave stand, demanding his rights of a phone call, so do we when we think we can out bluff that voice within our head. As Neo found out, it doesn’t work. If we argue with our devil within, he will, eventually, win. Just as Neo’s mouth became glued shut, our best defenses are blunted. Not only that, the Accuser sets us up so that we are taking the dark forces with us, even when we do not know it. That is represented by the bugging device.

So many advanced students, thinking they are free of the foolishness of judging and the self-pity illusion of being a victim, still carry a disguised but even more powerful force of spreading gossip and judgment, all housed in the brilliant language of enlightenment. It is a stage all of us have found ourselves going through. This is a dangerous time from which many students never break free—and are usually the last to know. However, the purpose of the allegory of this movie is to show us the way, though painful as it may be, to be freed from this high level form of slavery.

### SUMMARY

Just as it was difficult for most of us to see through the literal, pragmatic and rigid knowledge of the First level, it is even more difficult to go beyond the thrilling “spiritual magic” of the Second Level. Neo has become a master of computer magic, leading a double life, but he is being invited into the next phase of enlightenment, the Third Level, called “Integration,” symbolized as the Flaming Sword or Iron Rod, toward the end of giving up one’s fixed knowledge of what ought to be to a more fluid state of living with what is. This process is called “*seeing the illusions of our conclusions*” of what ought to be. One’s introduction to this phase usually has two components, first the old way must begin to fail and a new way must come from our heart as a strange, inner sense (Trinity) and an inner guidance (Morpheus). To bring this about, the old way must stop working to some critical degree so that there is an urgency (the agents) to begin accepting a very new direction. This process is the beginning of gaining “*the not knowing mind*.”

## Chapter VIII

### NEO’S DEBUGGING

As Neo awakens and is invited to visit Morpheus, he is not aware that to do so would play directly into the agent's hands, for the homing device Agent Smith implanted in his body would lead the agents directly to the one they are after. As Agent Smith declared, "**You are going to help us, Mr. Anderson, whether you want to or not.**"

### NEO IS ON HIS WAY TO SEE MORPHEUS

In the next scene, Neo is waking up in bed and feels like he is just waking up from a nightmare. He feels his mouth and finds that it is normal. Relieved, he is convinced the frightening confrontation was just a bad dream. But when the phone rings, he again hears the familiar voice of Morpheus: "*This line is tapped so I must be brief. They got to you first but they underestimate how important you are. If they knew what I know, you would probably be dead.*"

Neo, bewildered, now realizing that all of those experiences must have been real, he demands: "*What are you talking about? What is happening to me?*"

Morpheus, matter of factly, tells Neo the secret of all secrets: "*You are the One, Neo. You see, you may have spent the last few years looking for me, but I have spent my whole life looking for you. Now, do you still want to meet?*"

Neo responds, hesitantly but agreeably. Instructed to go to the Adam Street Bridge, he goes out into a heavy downpour and waits out of the rain on the street under the bridge. A black Lincoln sedan pulls up. Trinity opens the back door and invites him to get in.

Besides Trinity in the back seat, Switch and her buddy, Apoc, who is driving, are in the front seat. We want to remember that these two are in sympathy with Cypher and would like to eliminate Neo. However, since Trinity is their senior officer, they are doing as they are told. But as soon as the car pulls away, Switch whirls around to face Neo in the back seat and aims a pistol at him. Neo, not at all pleased, demands: "*What in the hell is this?*"

Trinity attempts to assure him: "*This is for our protection. We can't trust you.*"

Switch, authoritatively, demands that Neo take off his shirt. This is more than he is prepared to do and questions the demand. So Switch tells Apoc to stop the car and curtly tells Neo that he only has two choices. As the car stops, she compares him to a Duracell battery, by saying, "*Listen, copper top! We don't have time for 20 questions. Right now there is only one rule. Our way or the highway!*"

Neo, perplexed but disgusted, starts to step out of the car, saying: "*Fine.*"

As Neo prepares to leave, Trinity is not about to give up, and calmly says, "*Please, Neo, you have to trust me.*"

Half way out of the car, Neo retorts, "*Why?*"

Trinity explains, reminding him that he has already been taken captive by their mutual enemy. "*Because you have been down there, Neo. You know that road. You know exactly where it ends. And I know that is not where you want to be.*"

### NEO IS TOLD THAT HE IS THE ONE

When Morpheus had first called Neo in his office cubical, he said, "**I have been looking for you, Neo. I don't know if you really want to see what I have to show you, but unfortunately, you and I have run out of time.**" But now that he knows Neo has been worked-over by the agents, he is more blunt. "**You are the One, Neo. You see, you may have spent the last few years looking for me, but I have spent my whole life looking for you. Now, do you still want to meet?**"

To Morpheus, Neo may be the One, but at this moment, he is also a walking Trojan Horse. As long as the bugging device is inside his body, the agents can follow the bug's signal and find Morpheus' secret operation's center. Neo must be cleared first before he can be taken any further in the process of his enlightenment.

### NEO IS READY TO GRADUATE FROM SECOND LEVEL

Let's remember that Neo must have already gone through the First Level before now and is fully involved in the Second Level. On the First Level, like all of us, he would have been a fairly normal,

young man who became well educated in a professional career and learned how to be the kind of a person who would help his landlady take out her garbage. That world would have been “four-square,” with things like Boy Scouts, church, and obedience to authorities.

Then his life must have changed drastically. We are not told anything about his life during the last several years when he was searching intensely for a personal, direct guide, but whatever his spiritual gifts were, his life had so impressed Morpheus that he is convinced that his life-long search for the One was finally over. Neo must have begun to discover that there is almost supernatural powers in computers that would not only allow him to experience something far bigger than himself but help others do the same.

Neo’s gifted life had been observed for some time by Morpheus and his crew. As he said to Neo, **“They got to you first but they underestimate how important you are. If they knew what I know, you would probably be dead.”** Let’s remember, Neo represents that part of our Awareness that has the potential of fully waking up, experientially, to who and what we really are.

### **WAS THERE MAGIC ON THE DISC HE SOLD CHOI?**

Evidently, in Neo’s search for answers, he had discovered a metaphysical world that could be created through his computer that most people could only dream about. We don’t know what was on the disk he sold to Choi, but it must have been something ingenious and miraculous enough that Choi would pay him so much and be so thrilled that he exclaimed, **“Alleluia. You are my savior, man. My own personal Jesus Christ!”**

At the same time, the disc contained a dangerous program, so Neo warned, **“You get caught using that!”** Choi acknowledged, **“Yeah, I know. This never happened. You don’t exist.”** From these comments, I first thought the disk might have been a corrupting, computer virus, but it must have been something much more valuable, possibly some program that, in the A.I. Machine’s Matrix, would give the user an incredible out-of-body experience.

Such a powerful method of altering consciousness, even more than psychedelic drugs, would be especially frightening to their First Level World. So if that is what the \$2,000 disc could do, it would certainly have been outlawed. As Agent Smith had told him, **“Your other life is lived with computers where you go by the hacker alias Neo, where you are guilty of virtually every computer crime we have a law for.”** So the disc would be dangerous to anyone associated with it. One way or another, Neo must have been functioning on a highly miraculous level so that he was ready to be introduced to the next level, the Third Integrative Level.

### **THE DIFFERENT FUNCTIONS OF THE HOLY GHOST ON EACH OF THE THREE LEVELS**

Although we are seeing Morpheus fulfilling for Neo the Third Level role of the Holy Ghost, this will not be the first time that Neo has had help from the infinite world of the Spirit. In fact, the Holy Ghost has a different function on each of the three levels. He is a (1) *Testifier* on the First Level, (2) *Enhancer* on the Second Level and (3) *Challenger on the Third Level*.

In our own experience, on the first level, the **TESTIFIER** guided us into “the one and only truth” as it is found on the Tree of Knowledge. It is by the witness of the Holy Ghost that we received our inspired testimony and grew in faith and obedience.

Then, if we have moved into the Second Spiritual Level, the Holy Ghost served us as an indwelling **ENHANCER**, functioning as an inner power and burning which came from time to time. Although we would still be judging “what ought to be,” we experienced levels of blessings that gave us a much greater spiritual understanding of what life can be all about.

The work of the Holy Ghost on both of these first two levels is usually experienced as an enhancement of spiritual knowledge which brings joyous feelings. Our testimony on the First Level brings us good feelings about the gospel. Yet, our spiritual attunement on the Second Level is a much greater feeling of unity and support, and for a few gifted souls, possibly all the way up to visions and the visitation of angels.

As we have considered, Morpheus is now demonstrating the role of the Holy Ghost as the **CHALLENGER**, to guide Neo through the Third Level, the Integrative Process of awakening. As we have said, this is the *chastening* symbolized by the Flaming Sword. In this role, the Holy Ghost serves as a tough, demanding but friendly teacher, helping us see *the illusions of our conclusions*

*about what ought to be.*

## **THE BUGGING AND DE-BUGGING REPRESENT THE PAINFUL TRANSITION BETWEEN TWO LEVELS**

Although these two scenes of Neo being unwillingly bugged by Agent Smith and just as unwillingly debugged by Trinity are short in time, they represent the transition between Second and Third Level which may take many months or even years. The reason is that we will give up the thrill of the miracles we experience on the Second Level, which I call “spiritual magic,” only when we are convinced that such blessings are loaded with misdirection, where only some work and others do not. Somehow or other, as Neo was by being cruelly treated by the agents, we are to discover that this spiritual world of magic, as thrilling as it might be, is a spiritual dead end. I cover this subject in more detail in Chapters IX, X and XI in *Book II, Finding the Mark*.

It is during this period that the function of the Holy Ghost changes from *Enhancer* to *Challenger* to begin to destroy the vanity of our fixed and rigid conclusions about “what ought to be.” As Neo discovered, this process of leaving Second Level can be very disorienting and painful, even frightening.

The reason this transition may take longer than it needs to is that students fool themselves by thinking that because they have seen some of the illusions of the old conclusions, that they are now free from the old bigotry that went with conclusions. So they can talk as though they have been cleared, but have merely learned to cover up their conditioning with Third Level talk.

### **WHAT DOES THE BUGGING DEVICE REPRESENT?**

What is the meaning of the device that will allow the agents to trace Neo if he were allowed to see Morpheus? Neo being bugged by Agent Smith and his lieutenants symbolizes one of the most critical roadblocks facing the early processes of integration. Why is that?

Every since we originally started following the Tempter’s advice to become wise by partaking of the Tree of Knowledge, first on the Temporal and then on the Spiritual Level, we have remained under the Fall, cut off from our full sense of Oneness with Infinite and Eternal God. Our inner Matrix, supported and held in place by our judgmental nature — justifying anger or guilt by still accusing, complaining and blaming — we are part of the darkness that covers the earth. That darkness of the natural mind is self perpetuating but is continually threatened by our *possible awakening*. So like Neo who is being rescued by Morpheus, as students move to the Third Level, starting to leave the Second Level of Spiritual Empowerment, the Accuser has a trick up his sleeve which will work like an unknowing Trojan Horse. He let’s us talk as though we are truly advanced students, but keeps us judging in a more subtle, pernicious way. I call it learning to live with our “buts.”

### **HOW WE COVER OUR “BUTS”**

The bugging device represents a pernicious and crafty skill we acquire, along with our growing Third Level learning, of still *resisting* in a way that does not look like *resisting-judging* that does not look like *judging*. As students begin to see the illusions of their conclusions, they learn the principles of non-judging and then find a way to disguise the judging which they are still doing. Here are some examples—

- ▶ They learn that whenever they make anything important they will be anxious, so they learn to say, “*Now I am not making this important, BUT....*”
- ▶ They learn the basis of agape, that no one ever does anything unless they feel, at the time, it is either *right, proper or at least justified*, so they learn to say, “*Now I know they think they are justified, BUT....*”
- ▶ They learn that although we are victims only in our imagination, so they say, “*I know I am not a victim, BUT....*”
- ▶ They learn that we do not have rights, only privileges, so they say, “*I am not trying to stick up for my rights, BUT...*”
- ▶ They learn that none of us are worthy before God, for we are all unprofitable servants, so they learn to say, “*I know we are not worthy, BUT...*”

The “but” makes everything in front of it a lie, as in “*I want to go to the beach BUT I don’t have*

*time.*" Both halves of that statement may be true, in and of themselves, since it could be true that I do want to go to the beach and it could also be true that I do not have time, IF I do the other things that I want to do more than go to the beach.

The real truth is that we always have time to do what we, ultimately, really want to do. In the case of the beach, we would rather go to work, even though it is not as enjoyable as going to the beach, for the simple reason that we like to eat regularly. So the truth is that although we would like to go to the beach, we really don't want to go to the beach at this particular time. So the "but" makes the whole statement only a partial truth, actually a lie and not the real truth.

So Third Level students, for some time, at least, will invariably carry within their hearts a way to enable the Accuser to thwart the work of the teacher.

### NEO IS DEBUGGED BY TRINITY

As Neo listens to Trinity's plea for trust, he gets back in the car which speeds away. Trinity gives instructions to Apoc to hand over a large, cumbersome device. Trinity tells Neo to open his shirt. Switch helps Trinity place the machine over Neo's bare chest, which alarms him. He asks what is going on. Trinity explains, "*We think you are bugged.*"

As the machine is turned on and starts working, Trinity asks Neo to relax. But as Neo begins to feel pain, he squirms, which causes Switch to warn Trinity, "*You are going to lose it.*"

Trinity, without losing her concentration, replies, "*No I'm not.*"

Finally, with a great deal of agony, the bug device comes out of Neo's navel and is sucked up into a glass container in the machine, where it implodes, making a bloody mess.

Neo, after considerable painful groaning, is shocked and exclaims, "*Jesus Christ, that thing is real!*"

Trinity takes the loaded glass vial out of the machine and throws it out of the car's window. We see it on the pavement in the rain. The red glow gradually goes out while the car speeds away.

### BEING FREED FROM THE DEVIL'S HIDDEN IMPLANT

Neo's painful but brief operation represents what may take a Third Level student months or even years to discover and finally become less of a beacon to the Accuser's hidden presence, like being a wolf in sheep's clothing. So this episode describes that point in the process when we really do get that the Accuser in us is getting us to listen to its lies ALL THE TIME, especially to ourselves. We will discuss those lies, especially the five main lies, later on.

Eventually, usually in a moment of enlightenment, we may wake up, laugh at that part of the joke, and find that it is almost impossible to believe that particular part of Accuser's lying any more. We choose not to play that significant but particular part of the game any more — that we really do not need to compare "what is" with what we can think "it ought to be" in this way. It is only then that the student can be taken to the inner circle of being introduced to the Real World.

### SUMMARY

The transition from the Second Level to the Third Level is usually much more difficult than going from First Level to Second Level. The reason is that the Spiritual Magic of the Second Level is experienced as evidence of their advanced spiritual attainment. So few of such blessed and gifted people realize that they are still stuck on the Tree of Knowledge when they believe they have finally reached the Tree of Life. Then, as their magic begins to falter, they wonder about the reliability of their revelations. However, even though they learn the principles of liberation, it takes time to "do" as well as "say." As Morpheus tells Neo later, "**Sooner or later you are going to realize, just like I did, there is a difference between knowing the path and walking the path.**"

## Chapter IX

### NEO CHOOSES

# TO TAKE THE RED PILL

Once Neo has been debugged, Trinity is free to take him to see the one he has been searching for during the last few years. As Trinity had told him when they first met, “**You are looking for him. I know because I was once looking for the same thing. And when he found me, he told me that I wasn’t really looking for him. I was looking for an answer. It is the question that drives us, Neo. It is the question that brought you here. You know the question, just as I did.**”

## MORPHEUS GIVES NEO A CHOICE

In the next scene, Neo and Trinity climb the open stairwell to the upper floor of an old apartment building that Morpheus is using as his secret headquarters in the Matrix. As they reach the room, the two stand in the hall outside the door. As Trinity pauses, she gives Neo some pertinent counsel, “*Let me give you this advice. Be honest. He knows more than you can imagine.*”

As they enter the room, Neo sees a man standing with dark glasses, silhouetted in the light of a window. He speaks, “*Welcome, Neo. As you no doubt have guessed, I am Morpheus.*”

Neo replies, “*It is an honor to meet you.*”

But Morpheus retorts, emphatically, “*No, the honor is mine. Please. Come and sit.*”

As they sit down, Trinity goes in the next room. Morpheus continues, “*I imagine that right now you feel like Alice, tumbling down the rabbit hole, hmmm?*”

Neo, with a wry smile on his face, answers, “*You can say that.*”

“*I can see it in your eyes. You have the look of a man who accepts what he sees because he is expecting to wake up. Ironically, this is not far from the truth. Do you believe in fate, Neo?*”

Neo replies in the negative, so Morpheus asks, “*Why not?*”

Neo gives a frank answer, “*Because I don’t like the idea that I am not in control of my life.*”

Morpheus, with a big smile on his face, adds, “*I know exactly what you feel. Let me tell you why you are here. You are here because you know something. What you know you can’t explain, but you feel it. You have felt it your entire life, that there is something wrong with the world. You don’t know what it is, but it is there, like a splinter in your mind, driving you mad. It is this feeling that has brought you to me. Do you know what I am talking about?*”

Neo replies, uncertainly, “*The Matrix?*”

Acknowledging the answer is correct, Morpheus continues, “*Do you want to know what it is? The Matrix is everywhere. It is all around us even now, in this very room. You can see it when you look out your window, or when you turn on your television. You can feel it when you go to work, when you go to church, when you pay your taxes. It is the world that has been pulled over your eyes to blind you from the truth.*”

Neo interrupts him by asking, politely, “*What truth?*”

“*That you are a slave, Neo. Like everyone else, you were born into bondage, born into a prison that you cannot smell, or taste or touch. A prison for your mind. Unfortunately, no one can be told what the Matrix is. You have to see it for yourself.*”

While they have been talking, seated alone in the apartment’s living room, Morpheus has been playing with a silver box. He now opens it and takes out two pills, and solemnly declares, “*This is your last chance. After this, there is no turning back. You take the blue pill, the story ends. You wake up in your bed and believe whatever you want to believe. Now, take the red pill and you stay in wonderland and I show you how deep the rabbit hole goes.*”

As Neo starts to reach for the red pill, he is reminded, “*Remember, all I am offering is the truth. Nothing more.*”

Neo takes the pill and swallows water to wash it down. Morpheus immediately rises and Neo follows him into the next room of the apartment, which is filled with all kinds of equipment and monitors. This is where the crew, including Trinity, has been waiting.

## LIKE ALICE GOING DOWN THE RABBIT HOLE

Three times in this movie we are reminded about this marvelous tale of Alice falling down a rabbit hole into a wonderful world of amazing people and events. Lewis Carroll was describing what

we will find when we go within and discover all the strange personalities which make up our own conditioning. Originally, Neo was awakened by his computer screen showing the words, “Follow the rabbit.” When he saw the rabbit painted on the girls shoulder, he changed his mind about going to the party. Then, upon meeting Morpheus, he is told, “**I imagine that right now you feel like Alice, tumbling down the rabbit hole, hmm?**” Then we notice that on the TV in the Oracles waiting room, there are rabbits scampering around.

The journey of Third Level awakening is not only to discover the many strange personalities the Matrix has created in our inner self, but to *understand* them in such a way that they no longer have the power they enjoyed while they were unknown to us. So Neo is given the final advice, “**Now, take the red pill and you stay in wonderland and I show you how deep the rabbit hole goes.**”

### **THERE IS NO SUBSTITUTE FOR MAKING UP THE MIND**

There are many times as we go through the various stages of illumination in which, as the saying goes, the chips are down. The game is to go or not go. There is no more room to equivocate, to be wishy-washy. It is a time to go for broke, or rush back to the comfort zone. The line of demarcation was not so definite on the First Level, as we were leaving the Great and Spacious Building of the temporal law. Neither was it so true on the Spiritual Path that was clouded by the temptations to still keep looking for the spiritual “good” and resisting the spiritual “bad.” Even on this Third Level, as we see Neo wavering at different times, we are finally brought to a point by our higher self, our teacher of what truth really is, that we are confronted with the real choice, the challenge to finally *make up our mind*. In Lehi’s vision of the Strait and Narrow Path, we remember that the mists of darkness blinded those on it. Most of those were not willing to give up their floundering around, drop to their knees to find and then take hold of the Iron Rod. For those who did, there was to be no letting go because the mists were still blinding their eyes.

In this part of the story, we notice that it is Trinity, and Trinity alone, who takes Neo upstairs to where Morpheus is waiting. We learn later that this is an eight story walk-up and they climb the entire stairwell to the eighth floor to the door, where she lets him lead the way. Her advice is simple. Don’t hide anything. There is no need because there are no secrets from the Spirit, our higher self. Nor is there anything for which to be ashamed. Since Christ revealed that He gives us our weaknesses, He certainly does not condemn us for those weaknesses.

At this point, Neo is asked to make a choice, once and for all. The door is open, but if it is refused this time, it will not be opened again. There are no threats. If Neo chooses the blue pill, his life will go back to “normal” and he will just continue to live, unconsciously, in the restrictive controls of the Matrix. But if he takes the red pill, there will be no going back.

### **MOST SEEKERS OF THE “TRUTH” ACTUALLY FEAR THE TRUTH**

We notice that as Neo reached out for one of the pills, and it appears that he was reaching for the red pill, Morpheus still reminds him of what this is really all about. “**Remember, all I am offering is the truth. Nothing more.**”

Students of enlightenment usually believe they have a sincere commitment to wake up to the real truth. However, it is not waking up that most students really want the most. What they really want is a higher level of comfort and freedom from fear. They search until they find a story that makes them feel good. A message that has a “ring of truth” may only placate their fear with a ring of comfort. They now start following this teacher or attending that church because it tells them what they want to hear. They hear a story that they would like to have be the truth, and told it is the truth, so now they think they have “come home.”

The real motivation for most who seek spiritual truth is simply that their present lives are not working well enough. These “seekers” hope that some spiritual enlightenment will magically evaporate their everyday problems. To the extent that they are distracted from their problems, it does seem to help. We see many folks going to church during times of stress and conflict, and then gradually return to their beer and football as soon as their problems are solved.

Difficulties with money, relationship, health, guilt, etc. can be very painful and very fearful. This causes some people to start looking for the “true meaning of life.” However, because their search is motivated by pain and fear, as the pain decreases and the fear subsides to a tolerable level, they climb back into the sandbox of life and explain their absence with a statement like, “Well, I tried \_\_\_\_\_, but it wasn’t for me.” Some folks are into such a defeatist mode that they drop out of one new

teaching after another just to prove that nothing works for them, therefore they are really not to blame.

As Christ taught his disciples about the Holy Ghost at the Last Supper, “**I have yet many things to say unto you, but ye cannot bear them now. Howbeit when he, the Spirit of truth, is come, he will guide you into all truth, for he shall not speak of himself, but whatsoever he shall hear, that shall he speak and he will show you things to come.**” (John 16:12-12)

Also, as Moroni testified in the last chapter of the *Book of Mormon*, “**And by the power of the Holy Ghost ye may know the truth of all things.**” (Moroni 10:5) Remember, Morpheus symbolizes the Holy Ghost.

### BUT WHAT IS THE “TRUTH,” THE TRUTH OF ALL THINGS THAT SETS US FREE?

According to the Tree of Knowledge, truth is always opposite to what is false, to what is not true. In contrast, truth as seen on the Tree of Life, which is the window to the Real World, the one Morpheus has just invited Neo to choose and enter, sees in an entirely different way. So what does Morpheus mean when he tells Neo, “**Remember, all I am offering is the truth. Nothing more?**”

At this particular time in the story, let us take some time to examine the fact that there are two opposite definitions of “truth.”

In the slavery of the Matrix, truth is believed to be limited to *only one* possibility, namely “*what actually was, what actually is and what actually will be.*” Therefore, according to the Tree of Knowledge, there cannot be more than one truth about any particular aspect.

So, from the view of opposites, even though the distinction of what is the actual truth is often difficult to determine, something is either true or it is false. So from this restricted definition, if the Holy Ghost were to let us “*know the truth of all things,*” then we would be shown only what are all the facts about everything, actually an impossible task. But in that quest on the First and Second Levels, the Holy Ghost does help us create the illusion of certainty, creating conflict, struggle and resistance.

### TRUTH IS IN THE EYE OF THE BEHOLDER

In contrast, the Holy Ghost on the Third Level will show us that “truth,” like beauty, is actually in the eye of the beholder. Remember, the Man-Made World is structured around standards, ideas, ideals and machines, many of which are in opposition and contradiction to other standards, ideas, ideals and machines.

Let us take making punch for example. We want to know the truth about the punch. Is the punch we have prepared for the picnic too sweet, not sweet enough or just right? The way we would know is to taste it. So we taste it and our senses tell us the “truth.” But if we have just been eating some sweet cookies, the punch might taste sour to us. If we had just been sucking on a lemon, the punch will probably taste too sweet. Now, which would be the truth? The answer, of course, is that from our different experiences, each would be seen as the truth. The “fact” is that we have some punch, but what is the “truth” of the punch? Our truth is our perception, and the punch will be experienced by those at the picnic in just that variety of ways. There could be quite a fuss when some say it IS too *sour* and others say it IS too *sweet*, and others say, for a fact, that, to them, it IS *just right!* Thus, the truth of the punch is relative, not exact.

### TRUTH IS ONE’S PERCEPTION, AND INDIVIDUALS’ PERCEPTIONS ARE ONLY THEIR POINT OF VIEW

In line with this concept of the relativity of truth, the 93<sup>rd</sup> Section of the *Doctrine of Covenants* defines truth in exactly this relative way. Instead of saying that truth is confined to only one reality of “*what is, was and will be,*” we find that it says “*truth is the knowledge of things as they are, and as they were, and as they are to come.*” (D&C 93:24) Knowledge is an individual’s perception based upon what the individual compares it to. In contrast, a bigot is a person who believes his perception of something is the only possible truth. The Tree of Knowledge is the tree of bigotry because it claims there is only one truth for everything.

The Tree of Life recognizes that every person’s “knowledge” or perspective IS THE TRUTH for that individual. This realization destroys bigotry, the arrogance of the right or wrong game. This is

what enables the fruit of the Tree of Life to grow perfect love in our hearts, which means greater tolerance and understanding for another's beliefs about what is true. That is the ultimate function of the Holy Ghost, to reveal to us the truth of *all differing points of view*, even though the Spirit will support us in also having our particular, *favorite* point of view.

So when Morpheus tells Neo, just before he chooses the red pill, "*Remember, all I am offering is the truth. Nothing more,*" what Neo is to be given is an entirely different way to see "truth" as it ultimately exists in the world—the Real World.

## SUMMARY

The Flaming Sword, the Third Level, is designed to gradually burn out of us the judgmentalness that we picked up from the forbidden Tree of Knowledge. As with Alice in Wonderland, we journey into our inner world. It is then that the student discovers that the truth is not the facts of life (what is, was and will be), but the truth is each person's perceptions of the facts. Differing perception can go 360 degrees on any subject, which is what fills the earth with darkness, i.e., the confusion of conflicting "truth." That is why, from the Tree of Life perspective of perfect love, one believes "all things," i.e., every side to every question even though one usually chooses to have a personal, favorite side.

# Chapter X

## NEO IS RECLAIMED FROM HIS ORIGINAL WOMB EXPERIENCE

Now that Neo has agreed to see how deep the rabbit hole of his inner Matrix personality goes, his first step into the abyss will be the longest and most frightening one in which life is put on the line.

### SEEING THE URGENCY OF TAKING THE NEXT STEP

Neo is still in an apartment in the Matrix where Morpheus has secretly established a control center. As Neo is taken into the back room, we find the crew is waiting, surrounded by a collection of complex equipment. Morpheus realizes that the agents, with their world wide search, must be getting close to tracking their hidden location, so there is no time to give Neo any formal introductions or explanations. As they walk into the room, Apoc is asked if he has been able to get on-line yet. He answers that he is almost to that point, but not quite.

Morpheus explains to Neo that there is a great deal of urgency in taking him to his first step out of reach of the agents. He declares, "*Time is always against us.*"

He instructs Neo to sit down in a chair. As Trinity attaches sensing pads, Neo turns to her and asks: "*Did you do this?*"

She assures him that she did this process herself. Morpheus explains further, "*The pill you took is part of a trace program. It is designed to disrupt your input/output carrier signal so we can pinpoint your location.*"

Neo asks, "*What does that mean?*"

Cypher, laughingly, retorts, in reference to the movie Wizard of Oz, "*It means, buckle your seat belt, Dorothy, because Kansas is going bye, bye.*"

As Neo sits in the chair, he begins to feel strange. Suddenly he notices a distorted image of himself reflected in a mirror-like film. As he tries to figure out what he is seeing, Morpheus offers some calming perspective by asking, "*Have you ever had a dream, Neo, and you were so sure it was real. What if you were unable to wake from the dream? How would you know the difference between the dream world and the Real World?*"

Being too much for his logical mind, Neo objects, "*This can't be.*"

He is being faced with multiple realities, even two realities of his own self. So Morpheus, smiling with understanding, challenges him with a question, "*Be what? Be real?*"

As Neo goes to reach out to the image of himself, he touches the film which sticks to his fingers.

As he withdraws his hand, the film begins to cling to him, gradually covering his hand, then his arm and starts moving up his neck. He is squirming in horror as the dark black goo begins to engulf him. As Neo struggles in life-threatening desperation, it appears he is going into shock.

Trinity shouts out an alarm to the crew, “*He’s going into replication!*”

Morpheus, realizing the urgency of the situation, calls out to Apoc as to whether they are yet on line. Apoc answers, helplessly, “*Still nothing!*”

Morpheus realizes that they can wait no longer since Neo is in mortal danger of being overcome. So he grabs his safe mobile phone to get some emergency support from the spaceship, speaking to the chief operator in the control room, “*Tank. We are going to need a signal soon!*”

Trinity orders the crew to start the fibrillation on Neo, as Morpheus commands Apoc to find a location where Neo can be sent. As Apoc struggles to get the location in time, Trinity warns the crew that it is almost too late for Neo, shouting, urgently, “*He is going into arrest!*”

At that moment, Apoc excitedly announces that he has the location, shouting with relief, “*Lock! I got him!*”

So with the communication channels open, Morpheus orders the space ship to activate the transition, and transport Neo to the designated location, “*Now, Tank! Now!*”

Tank activates the transition and, although we do not see it, Neo physically disappears from the chair and is sent out to his first major process. Once he is gone, the team transports themselves back to the spaceship so they can be on hand to locate and rescue Neo.

### **NEO MUST BE SENT OFF TO REJECT THE MATRIX ON THE PHYSICAL LEVEL**

What does all this represent? Remember that Morpheus represents our higher self, the Holy Ghost. Neo is being introduced, rather quickly, into a new relationship with his guide. Prior to the start of this movie, Neo must have been influenced by spiritual tutoring, but not as directly as this.

Like Neo, during the preparatory level of the Spiritual Law, we may have experienced, from time to time, the visitation of a more personal heavenly power, even, possibly the baptism of fire. In those times, since we were still addicted to the judgmentalness of comparing “what is” with “what ought to be,” we grew in spirituality, yet we were still not totally liberated to the true abiding of the Holy Ghost as the teacher within.

Finally, when life’s circumstances increases the necessity of really breaking loose from that Tree of Knowledge and stepping into the Flaming Sword, the more direct contact with the Holy Ghost will allow us to break free from the big, subconscious black hole of fear and unworthiness we picked up in the womb. So in this part of the story, we are being introduced to an entirely unique and much more direct experience with the Holy Ghost. Let us review more of the actual scene.

### **BEING OVERCOME BY OUR DREAMLIKE REFLECTION**

At this stage, Neo is still a product of the Matrix, a being of the Man-Made World. In order for him to be reborn back into the Real World, he must begin to see the view of his own life as a mere phantom, like a mirage—something that is not real but only pretends to be. The film, which imperfectly mirrors him, represents the shiny mirage which holds him to the Matrix.

Of what stage of awakening is this symbolic? It represents the stage in which we begin to see our own personality in a new, almost frightening way — beholding the pretense of our own egotistical dishonesty, fakery and self-lying. As Neo was asked, “*Have you ever had a dream, Neo, and you were so sure it was real. What if you were unable to wake from the dream? How would you know the difference between the dream world and the Real World?*”

The process of our going to sleep took place in rapid stages in our first months in the womb. Then, forgetting that we were really infinite spirit beings, we started experiencing a limited, mortal existence that is actually *more dream than real*. Neo is going to be physically projected back in time to when he was first taken over by the Matrix in the womb.

Just like Neo as Thomas A. Anderson, our identity of ourselves claims to be so real, so legitimate and genuine. The waking up process brings us to a point when the ego begins to see itself for what it is, nothing less than an engulfing mire of deceit and pretense. This is symbolized graphically by the black film finally reaching his face, then his mouth. He is on the verge of being consumed. Neo is beginning to feel the heat of the Flaming Sword of truth. Allegorically, it is a time of amazing fright

as the “pretense world” of his false ego begins to smother him. At that critical point, contact is made and Neo is sent back in time to relive what it must have felt like when his spirit first entered the strange, new world of physical mortality in the womb.

## SYMBOLICALLY, RELIVING THE FRIGHTENING EXPERIENCE OF THE WOMB

The scene opens like a hellish nightmare. Neo is suddenly naked and bald-headed. He thrashes around in the filmy, blood colored fluid, trying not to drown. As he breaks out of it, he finds that he can stand up. He looks out in amazement, startled at the incredibly beautiful and complex scene stretched out before him—marvelous structures, machines and electric currents. But, suddenly, a monstrous, octopus-like machine approaches him and begins to clamp onto him, suffocating and entrapping him. As a drilling device extends out of the machine towards him, he screams and fights against it.

Yet, because of Neo’s determined rejection of the threatening device, the monster machine starts backing off by breaking loose, releasing one clamp at a time and Neo is thrown back into the fluid where all kinds of attachments are snapped free from him. Next, he is catapulted through a tunnel, cascades out a waterfall of blue water and is about to drown in the turbulence.

Suddenly, high over his head, the spacecraft, having followed his red-pill carrier waves to his location, appears hovering above. A door opens in the bottom of the spacecraft and an octopus-like clamp comes down, picks up his helpless body and pulls him up through the door, which then closes.

## NEO IS BEING SENT BACK IN TIME TO WHEN HE CAME UNDER THE FALL

The movie does not give an obvious hint as to just what this scene represents. All we see is that Neo is thrown into a gooey, red liquid and is almost captured by a machine, but escapes only to almost drown before he is rescued by being pulled up into the spaceship. It is certainly one of the most gruesome scenes in the movie. Yet, its symbolic meaning is of utmost significance because Neo comes out of it, although almost dead, being introduced into the REAL WORLD. So in a sense, it is truly a rebirth, which is the beginning of his coming out from under the Matrix, i.e., the FALL.

Everything which happened in the story of Adam and Eve in the Garden of Eden is symbolical of what actually happened to each of us in the womb. Our left brain, the conscious, logical, masculine mind, is represented as Adam. Our right brain, the subconscious, feminine, sensing side of the brain, often referred to in scriptures as the heart, is represented by Eve.

For most of us, the first month in our mother’s womb was evidently very peaceful, but when the hormonal disturbances began to set in at about the second month, the womb became a very disturbing place. That is when we began to sense that we could no longer trust and, therefore, flow with Life. We began to resist our newly threatening environment. That judgmentalness is called “partaking of the tree of KNOWLEDGE OF GOOD AND EVIL.”

## WHAT WERE WE LEAVING WHEN WE ENTERED MORTALITY?

When we think of what it must have been like living in the spirit pre-existence, we usually assume that it must have been somewhat similar to the only life we now remember, which is our present mortality. But if we give the subject some thought, we can realize that being in the spirit world would have been an entirely different form of existence. We might ask, what was it like being a spirit being? Well, we are told that **“all spirit is matter, but it is more fine or pure, and can only be discerned by purer eyes.”** (D&C 131:7) That is about all we have been given.

Yet, we have all heard of people who had momentarily died and returned, yet have remembered some of their incredible experiences in the spirit world. Different people have their own unique aspects to that experience, but they also find many things in common.

Many of us know a friend or two who have had such a near-death event. One such friend of mine had an experience which, off and on, lasted three weeks. He was badly injured in an accident in 1988. He experienced being in the spirit world during the three hours under anesthesia for surgery. Then, during the next three weeks in the hospital, he was able to return to the spirit world almost at will.

## MY FRIEND’S EXTENDED EXPERIENCE IN THE SPIRIT WORLD

From those many visits, these are my friend's observations about the spirit world from which we came:

**While attempting this I am constantly perverting thought or distorting language in my attempt to unfold the reality of spirit phenomena.**

**TOTALLY DIFFERENT** — In the spirit world there are more things that are different than similar to things as they are here in mortality. Things that are most different are light, time, travel, and mode of communication, music, clothing, fauna, flora, housing, and manner of working. There is no need there to rest or sleep as we do here.

My first impression of the spirit world was the extreme beauty, peace, and unlimited freedom of movement and power to think, understand and communicate. Vision was omnidirectional. Thinking is complete and profound. Understanding is deep and all encompassing.

There is no doubt, suspicion, misunderstanding, emotional filters or preconceived notions.

**AN EXISTENCE OF BEING LIGHT** — You are vitalized or fed by an all-permeating light of a source other than our sun. It feels as if you are eternal and endless, vital and powerful so that you feel as though you will go on forever as long as you are immersed in this glorious light. You are comfortable, weightless, and extremely powerful in that you can move effortlessly and instantaneously in any direction at tremendous speed.

**COMMUNICATION** — Communication there is often only by thought and you can communicate with several others simultaneously on more than one subject at a time and understand it all without confusion. Communication is by "chords" or compound thoughts or in several directions rather than in single thoughts in one direction or on one subject. When you communicate with the Spirit of God you can learn more in five minutes than you can by spending every minute of an entire lifetime reading in a library on earth.

**INFINITE TIME** — As for time, our world is three-dimensional and in a way, we are chained by time. This creates anxiety, tension and boredom. In the world of spirits there is no time as we know it and we are immersed there in a sort of timeless atmosphere that extends from the present into the past and future. This is the most natural blending and a concept of time that is totally foreign to mortals and extremely difficult to explain.

The result of this timeless, past-present-future awareness is a complete lacking in anxiety, tension or boredom. Here on earth events are sequential and locked in time. We are chained by time, regulated by events and tossed and battered by the ebb and flow of time on the beaches and rocks of experience. In comparison, even rest isn't restful.

**A FOURTH DIMENSION** — The spirit world, by contrast, is four dimensional and this fourth dimension gains a new, fresh, more real, flexible or classic (past, present and future) concept of reality that is more complete, rich, full, meaningful, natural, restful, free and unlimiting.

It also seemed that when we become unchained from time measurement, we also become unchained from our limited position in space. The fourth dimension somehow has a new dimension in freedom of movement. Travel is almost instantaneous and effortless.

Let's remember that these observations took place, intermittently, over a space of three weeks. Others who have had briefer experiences have described some of these elements but his descriptions are more inclusive than any others I have found.

#### **COMPARING THE LIGHT OF THE SPIRIT WORLD TO THE DARKNESS OF THE MATRIX OF THIS WORLD**

As we read my friend's vivid description of the spirit world of our pre-existence, we might be able to better understand what it might mean when we are told that this world is filled with darkness, not comprehending the light by which it is made. For example, our finite minds cannot comprehend an existence without time as we know it, but, as we are told, with God, the past, present and future, are one eternal "now."

Let's read again what Elder Neal Maxwell wrote, "**Once the believer acknowledges that the past, present and future are before God simultaneously — even though we do not understand how — then the doctrine of foreordination may be seen somewhat more clearly.**" (Neal A. Maxwell,

Our primary purpose in coming into mortality was to experience the opposite to heaven so that we could more fully comprehend who we are. That transition of forgetfulness first took place for each of us in our womb experience. Yet we did not fully forget. Neo was reminded of this before he was asked to choose which pill to take. Here are Morpheus' words again:

**Let me tell you why you are here. You are here because you know something. What you know you can't explain, but you feel it. You have felt it your entire life, that there is something wrong with the world. You don't know what it is, but it is there, like a splinter in your mind, driving you mad. It is this feeling that has brought you to me...**

**It is the world that has been pulled over your eyes to blind you from the truth...that you are a slave, Neo. Like everyone else, you were born into bondage, born into a prison that you cannot smell, or taste or touch. A prison for your mind. Unfortunately, no one can be told what the Matrix is. You have to see it for yourself.**

Probably the best way to see the magnitude of our fall into the frightening experience of separateness is to imagine what it must have felt like, as an infinite spirit being, to experience being part of a tiny, helpless, rapidly evolving embryo in the strange environment of our mother's womb.

### **THE PARALLEL OF THE WOMB TO THE GARDEN OF EDEN STORY**

In the temple we are shown how the third member of the creative Godhead, Michael, was put to sleep and placed in the beautiful Garden of Eden which he had helped create. At first, although he had forgotten all of his infinite glory and creative experiences, he still felt a natural Oneness with the other two members of the Trinity. Then he was put to sleep again and awakened to find a companion, Eve.

So how does that remind us of coming into mortality? Well, our first awakening in this weird, new existence, called the body, is as a sperm. Imagine what that would have felt like. In our Introspect Training program we used a special process of mental imaging to help people get a picture of that experience. We had people get in a relaxed state and let their minds recreate what each of us being a sperm would have felt like — to have been a fast moving, wiggly individual in the relatively immense loins of our earthly father. We were active, independent, growing, and instinctively determined to do well in this new, strange world.

Then, suddenly and without warning, we were projected rapidly into our mother's moist world and after great, exhausting effort that seemed like it would never end, we suddenly came to a great giant ball that was a thousand times bigger than we were. We burrowed into the mucus lining of this great "thing" and as we entered, for some mysterious reason, it closed instantly behind us so that none of the other sperms could join us on the inside.

Let's remember that our real infinite, spiritual self, having shed our infinite glory and comprehension, having been put to sleep, awoke to this new sperm existence. Little did we know that our other, passive, female half was waiting for us.

When the union is made, our two halves became one. So we are both masculine and feminine, mind and heart. Whether we are man or woman, our active part, the masculine side which becomes the mind, became aware of ourselves as sperm in our fathers, then we became joined to our passive side in our mothers. Like Adam awakening to see Eve, this was our conception of two becoming one.

### **WHAT SCIENCE TEACHES US OF EMBRYOLOGY**

Science has learned a great deal about this process, so let's continue imaging how our conscious, spirit intelligence would have experienced our strange, evolving physical body. As the egg is joined by the tiny sperm, we began to divide—again and again—as we slowly moved down the four inch long, fallopian tube toward the uterus, which relative to our microscopic size, must have seemed like a mile away. As this point, we are still so small that we cannot be seen with the naked eye.

On this journey of three to four days, our rapidly growing embryo is nourished by the fluids in the fallopian tube. As we entered the gigantic home of the uterus, we burrowed into the soft wall which started to enfold us with what would become the placenta. By the end of the first month, we had grown enormously, 10,000 times larger than we were at first, yet we were still less than one fourth of an inch long, which was about this size:

Already our physical form was taking definite shape. Our internal organs, such as the lungs, kidneys, liver and backbone were forming. The simple structure of our heart was already beating 65 times a minute.

The more our scientists learn of our incredible development from being only a microscopic, single cell into an adult human being, the more amazed they are. As one noted writer, Lewis Thomas, wrote,

**The mere existence of that amazing cell should be one of the greatest astonishments of the earth. People ought to be walking around all day, all through their waking hours, calling to each other in endless wonderment, talking of nothing except that cell. If anyone does succeed in explaining it, within my lifetime, I will charter a skywriting airplane, maybe a whole fleet of them, and send them aloft to write one great exclamation point after another, around the whole sky, until all my money runs out.**

### **THIS TIME, NEO REJECTS THE MECHANICAL MASTER**

If you watch Neo's frightening event as symbolizing our own womb experience, we notice that he goes through three stages. In the first stage, although it starts out momentarily as frightening, he struggles to stand up and then stands in silent amazement at this incredibly beautiful and complex world he is in. Then we witness Neo's second stage, which is just the opposite. He is suddenly attacked by a monstrous machine which starts to lock him into its grasp, and then sends a drilling probe to make him a slave. Both stages one and two are typical of what originally happened to each of us in the first and second month in the womb.

However, in contrast to what happened in his first womb experience, this time Neo goes into a third phase of rejecting the machine. In great desperation, groaning and yelling, he repels the machine, which then withdraws. But in doing so, he is thrown back into the red liquid where the many attachments are being pulled out. Finally, he is flushed out a tube-like drain into a pool of water where, being weak and not knowing how to swim, he starts to drown. Then he is rescued by the spaceship, which has found him because of the red pill he had taken and is hovering overhead.

### **THE CONTRAST BETWEEN THE FIRST AND SECOND MONTH**

Does this represent how students can go back and start to undo the mechanical nature we started to develop in the womb?

Through the RFA processes (Relaxed Focused Awareness), we have helped many individuals do just that. When we had assisted them to regress back into their womb experience, we found that the first month in the womb was consistently peaceful. It corresponds to the allegory of Adam and Eve before they partook of the forbidden fruit. Even though they had forgotten who they were, they enjoyed a comfortable relationship with Elohim and Jehovah, with a sense of innocence, yet, undoubtedly awed by the marvelous nature of this new world.

That is also the event symbolized by Neo as he stands, gazing at the expanse of the complex, beautiful world set out before him. So each of us had a very peaceful existence in the womb during that period of the first month before our mother was aware of her pregnancy and her life was still going on as usual. This would have been our first Matrix that Agent Smith was referring to when he said, "**You know that the first Matrix was designed to be a perfect world, where none suffered and where everyone would be happy.**"

But, as we discussed, we didn't come into this existence to find heaven, for we already had that. We came here to experience the opposite to heaven so we could comprehend who and what we are. So, in the beginning of the second month, as the pregnancy of our mother started the disruptive hormonal changes in her body, what had been peaceful for a month invariably became stressful to both our mother and our selves. It was in that frightening change that each of us felt we could no longer trust life and started resisting by judging this new condition to be wrong and threatening, thus we entangled ourselves in the structure of the Matrix, symbolized by being made captive by the vampire machine.

**ALL BY INFINITE DESIGN, RIGHT ON SCHEDULE**

The frightening and devastating womb experience in the second month was not an accident, but an ingeniously and divinely devised set-up so that we could experience going from a sense of oneness to a frightening sense of separateness and vulnerability. In the Adam and Eve experience, they felt naked, ashamed and tried to hide from God. As Agent Smith further explains, that when we were faced with the stress test, we caved in. **“But that was a disaster. No one would accept the program [of trusting Life]... The perfect world was a dream the cerebrum was trying to wake up from [because of stress].”**

As we have discussed, in the pre-existence, as spirit beings, we lived in a world totally different than the one we know here. Although, at first our mortal embryo had not developed a brain or sense organs, our spirit intelligence would have been very much aware of our environment. In that early stage, as we were moving down the fallopian channel and first entered the great expanse of the womb, everything was peaceful. Our mothers were going about their affairs, not realizing we were already on board. So our first experience of being a mortal person would have been very peaceful, with no pain, fear or concern, yet no special joy.

As Lehi explained that for the earth to fulfill its purpose, there had to be a yielding to the temptation to become wise and defend ourselves from a rapidly changing, inhospitable environment.

**Now, behold, if Adam had not transgressed he would not have fallen, but he would have remained in the Garden of Eden. And all things which were created must have remained in the same state in which they were after they were created...wherefore they would have remained in a state of innocence, having no joy, for they knew no misery, doing no good, for they knew no sin. And behold, all things have been done in the wisdom of him who knoweth all things.** (2 Nephi 2:22-24)

### NEO DOES NOT CAVE-IN THIS TIME

To provide Neo's first step in his transformation, Morpheus has arranged to send him back into the dangerous environment of the Matrix to see if he is strong enough, this time, to reject the enslaving conclusions, symbolized as the monster machine, that has held him bound all of these years. Just at the moment the enslaving device is sending in its drilling probe to again take possession of him, Neo struggles to break loose and successfully rejects the automatic, mechanical controls. When that happens, the other tubular attachments are also ripped out of his body and he is ejected back into that state of innocence and liberty that sets him free, yet helpless and bewildered.

In his great weakness and vulnerability, he begins to drown. It is at this time that Morpheus brings in the spaceship to retrieve his drowning body. As the claws are lowered, Neo is taken up out of the water. This is when a new level of relationship with the Holy Ghost is ready to take place. Neo is being retrieved, not to the apartment in the Matrix, but to the spacecraft that is home to the crew whose job it is to bring him back to a functional life in the Real World.

### SUMMARY

As in the Garden of Eden account, we can see that Adam represents our masculine, left brain intellectuality and Eve represents our right brain intuitive way we feel about things, i.e., the heart. As they partook of the Tree of Knowledge to fall into spiritual separateness, and suffered the consequences, so did we go from trusting life during the first month to resisting life in the second month when the hormonal changes in our mother's body seem to threaten us. That is when we started to interpret the world as a dangerous place and began programming automatic, mechanical reflexes, i.e., the Matrix. So in our Neo allegory, he is sent back to reject his mechanical slavery, but in doing so, he needs to be rescued by a higher presence, the spaceship. This graphic portrayal represents an essential step in healing our rejection of the first, peaceful Matrix, which led to the creation of our own interpretation of this world, which enslaved us. Neo's re-visit to the place of his origin enabled him to come back to the Real World of perfect design.

# **PART III**

# **THE**

# **PREPARATION**

# **PERIOD**

**The process of regeneration,  
learning whole new skills**

## **Chapter XI**

### **NEO'S PHYSICAL BODY IS REGENERATED**

This is the beginning of Part III in The Matrix movie, called The Preparatory Period, in which Neo will now be able to enter back into the Real World that he left in the second month in his mother's womb. During this phase of his transformation, Neo will undergo physical regeneration, mental development and practical, on the job experience in the simulators.

Morpheus and his crew will require several months to complete this part of Neo's preparation before he can face the Matrix and the agents on his own. Even then, he will fail and it is only in that failure that he will discover what he really needs to know, that only when he stops resisting the

Matrix will he become liberated from the slavery of the Matrix.

## **NEO CAN NOW BE TAKEN OUT OF THE MATRIX INTO THE REAL WORLD OF THE SPACECRAFT**

The scene changes and Neo comes to semi-consciousness in a chair in the spaceship where he is now wet, naked and bald, actually a reborn creature, partially free from the old physical programming of the Matrix. They dry him off as they wrap him in blankets to get him warm.

Morpheus, without wearing the dark glasses since he is no longer in the Matrix, speaks to Neo: “*Welcome to the Real World!*”

Then speaking to his next in command, “*We have done it, Trinity. We've found him!*”

Trinity, hopefully but skeptically, “*I hope you are right.*”

Morpheus, with confident enthusiasm, responds with assurance, “*We don't have to hope. I know it!*”

After some time, Neo awakens, lying helplessly on a table, whispers weakly, “*Am I dead?*”

Morpheus answers emphatically, “*Far from it.*”

### **THE BEGINNING OF A TRANSFORMED LIFE**

Since the other members of the crew had previously been rescued from the Matrix after having also gone through the same experience, we are left to speculate as to why Neo's experience gave Morpheus concrete evidence that he IS THE ONE, declaring, “**We don't have to hope. I know it!**”

Perhaps the reason Morpheus is so sure is the way Neo was able to defeat the monster machine so quickly rather than through a prolonged struggle. Whatever it was that Morpheus saw, the deep inner capacity of Neo was becoming more and more evident, even though he was almost killed in the process and would have died had he not been rescued.

Yet to Neo, the experience was not reassuring at all. He felt so weak and helpless that he was sure he was more dead than alive. It is at this point that his “real” body must be brought back to a level of health in order to function physically in the Real World.

### **THE RENEWAL OF THE BODY**

The scene changes. Neo is on a special operating table where Morpheus and Dozer are working on him. His body is naked except for a cloth draped over his loins. They are working on the areas where the tubes were withdrawn when he was released from the monster machine. Monitoring screens are showing the status of the progress. Finally, Dozer comments, “*He still needs a lot of work.*”

We get the impression that this process is taking many hours, even days. Neo is unconscious most of the time, but awakes temporarily and sees that he has hundreds of acupuncture pins sticking in him, and asks, inquisitively, “*What are you doing?*”

Morpheus answers, “*Your muscles have atrophied. We are rebuilding.*”

Neo, rather bewildered, asks politely, “*Why do my eyes hurt?*”

“*You have never used them before. Rest Neo. The answers are coming.*”

As we watch the needles finally being removed, while a number of tubes are attached to his body, we see the two men going about their work which probably lasts a month or so.

### **A PHYSICAL CHANGE CORRESPONDS TO THE SPIRITUAL CHANGE**

So what does this stage in the transformation process symbolize? We are seeing how the physical body, once a release from the illusions of the Man-Made World has reached a critical mass, permits a gradual change back to more optimum health. It may be slow at first, but old problems begin to disappear, wrinkles seem to fade out and a higher level of vitality seems to be available.

Under the Fall, man feels separated and detached, thus he senses a state of vulnerability and feels endangered by all kinds of circumstances, from physical threats to psychological pressures, from financial burdens to social stigmas, from fear of loss to need for gain. Even though we may become acclimated to the pressures of living as if we are literally “of” rather than just “in” the world, we are

so constantly subject to these many forms of stress and anxiety that we may hardly notice their persistent magnitude.

Modern medicine acknowledges that 90% of the underlying causes of disease and illness is psychological and emotional stress. We all inherit bodies of different strengths and weakness, so these stresses show up in our most vulnerable systems. To one it may be cancer, to another arthritis, to another bronchial weakness. Ordinarily, the body is naturally designed to respond to real dangers when we must either fight or run in order to survive. But the days when we had to frequently face tigers and bears have long since passed. But we don't need to be confronted by real physical danger to feel anxiety, worry, tenseness, and unhappiness. As one famous author put it, most people live lives of *quiet desperation*. Possibly the only exception to that truism are those who don't do it quietly.

In working with thousands of clients, I have found that these persistent feelings of insecurity go back to the big black hole we built into our deeper subconscious in that frightening experience of the second month in the womb when we felt that *we must not be enough*. This is what makes the "natural man" an enemy to God unless he YIELDS. But we cannot yield when we are still bound by, as Lehi said, the chains of hell. These chains are to be cast off, which is to reject them as real, to disown them as not true properties of who we really are. The Tree of Knowledge creates a Vicious Cycle that is what eventually brings death. That is what Neo has begun to do and is now ready to experience a gradual renewal of his body through being released from the *Vicious Cycle*.

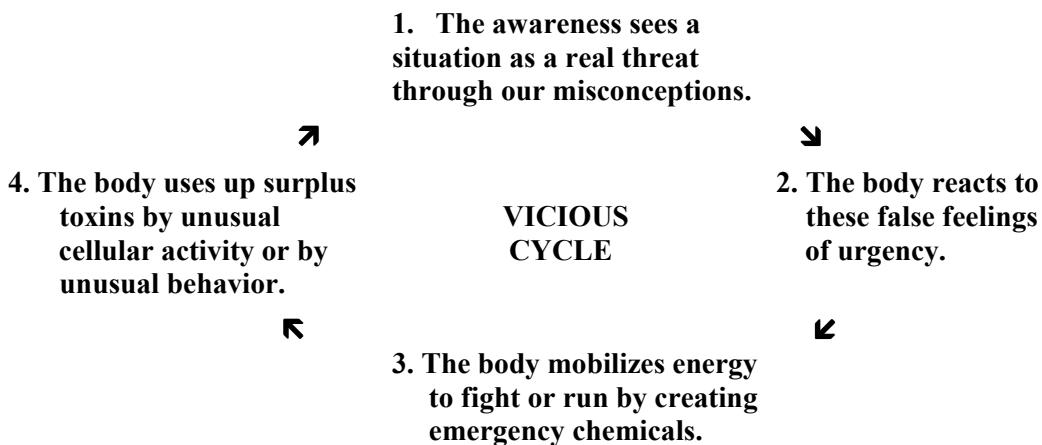
### **DESTRUCTIVE EFFECTS OF THE "VICIOUS CYCLE"**

When we allow circumstances to create stress, we are actually interpreting those circumstances as though they were "tigers and bears." Thus, we have FALSE FEELINGS OF EMERGENCY. They are false because there really is no emergency threatening life and limb, but our alarm system goes off simply because our ego is threatened. Those powerful ego-based, false emotions cause tension in our bodies. These tensions signal our bodies to either fight or run. The adrenal glands start pumping. Thyroxin flows. Blood is re-channeled away from our digestive system to tighten our muscles. The brain goes into overdrive. In a real emergency, of course, the body would use these natural adjustments for the fighting or running that would be required, but in most of our cases, there is nothing from which to actually fight or run. So these chemical stimulants become toxic and must be quickly eliminated by the body or they will kill us. The body burns up these toxins by one of two ways, or both —

1. Unusual cellular activity or
2. Unusual behavior.

Of course, unusual cellular activity is known as fatigue, illness and dis-ease. Unusual behavior, such as anger, jealousy, revenge, self-pity, blame or depression, creates havoc in our relationships. In turn, these developments cause more problems which produce even greater stress, i.e., *more false feelings of emergency*. In this way, the Vicious Cycle is repeated over and over again and again. This cycle is shown in the illustration below.

### **THE VICIOUS CYCLE**



The Vicious Cycle is what holds the Matrix in place. It is no wonder that Agent Smith marveled at the success of the Man-Made World of the Matrix. As he declared, “**Have you ever stood and stared at it... Billions of people just living out their lives, oblivious.... I believe that as a species, human beings find their reality through misery and suffering.**”

Of course, he has a point. People really do define themselves by their outer circumstances which determine the way they can gain comfort and escape pain. We fight for what we think we need in order to feel comfortable and secure, and we struggle against or run from what we think will hurt. These dual urges gradually develop automatically in our lives on four levels that we can call the Four Dual Basic Urges.

### THE FOUR DUAL BASIC URGES OF NEED

To better understand the ways we have distorted our basic need for survival from actual to psychological, we can see how we have developed our inner sense of good and evil. As shown on the following diagram, from the very beginning we gradually developed urges or senses of right and wrong depending upon how they made us feel. Since our desires develop as urges, only secondarily as thoughts; they originate below the conscious level. Since our subconscious, which never forgets, has a vivid memory of that sublime state we had experienced in the first month in the womb, like Neo standing and gazing at the marvelous new world, there is that *constant drive within us to regain that ideal and elusive state, called the NON-DISTURBED STATE.*

This becomes the primal software programming of the right side of our marvelous, dualistic brain. The right brain is not logical, it just feels it “KNOWS.” Part of what it knows is accurate but much of what it knows is not accurate. It is the rule of the photographic memory of the subconscious that once we make a *decision with feeling* (right brain), that decision becomes the *rule of attitude and action from then on*—unless it is recognized and altered by the right brain.

#### FIRST PHASE

As a tiny baby, this powerful, primal decision first functioned only on a *physical level*. We wanted what was physically comfortable, like a dry and clean bottom and full tummy, and to escape that which was painful, being hungry or wet.

#### SECOND PHASE

After a few months, as our conscious mind developed more awareness, we began to experience a new form of comfort and pain—on the *mental level*. We felt that it was comfortable to get attention and it was painful to be ignored.

#### THIRD PHASE

By the age of twelve to eighteen months, we began to experience pain on a third level, having to do with emotional feelings. We found that approval was comfortable and disapproval was painful.

#### FOURTH PHASE

After a few more years, we began to experience comfort and pain on a transcendental level when we found that we wanted to feel being needed which gave us a feeling that we were somewhat important, since it was now quite painful to feel inferior or unimportant.

#### FOUR DUAL BASIC URGES OF DESIRE

LEVEL	NEED TO GAIN:	NEED TO ESCAPE:
Physical	Comfort and Pleasure	Pain and Discomfort
Mental	Attention	Being Ignored
Emotional	Approval	Disapproval
Transcendental	To Be Needed or	Inferior or
Empowerment	To Be Important	Meaningless

#### RECOGNIZING HOW WE CREATED OUR OWN MATRIX

In this way we see that the primary, MASTER DECISION—*that our primary purpose of living was to regain the non-disturbed state*—made in the second month of the womb, gradually evolved into these eight desires or urges. Since we are all different, each of us developed our unique formula for which of these needs we felt were more important to us. If our inherited tendency was to be extrovertish, we placed more importance on gaining attention, approval and a sense of being needed. If we tended to be more introverted, we develop a greater need to escape the feelings of disapproval and inferiority, even to the extent of being ignored.

Whatever emphases we developed in our inner mind, we struggled to get and keep the “good” and escape the “bad.” Since no one can have a full quota of any one of these eight needs fulfilled all the time; there is a persistent inner feeling of anxiety which we just take as normal. Yet these deep desires keep demanding, “I am entitled to have these ideal sensations satisfied.” This is the Matrix aspect of our being. Our logical mind usually recognizes, intellectually, that total satisfaction is not possible, but our inner sense, the subconscious, is not logical.

From the very beginning, we felt the subconsciously disconnectedness of having a purpose for living, to regain the non-disturbed state, which was not being fulfilled. In other words, *we had a problem*. Problems call for solutions. How to gain comfort and escape pain on all levels is the constant inner question of our turbulent, subconscious minds. As a baby, we tried one thing and then another, making decisions about what is the “right” way. These decisions become basic neuron patterns that exist on the sensing level and may only be vaguely recognized on the conscious level.

At this stage, the first step for Morpheus in bringing Neo into an effective existence in the Real World was to rejuvenate his physical body. To do so, Neo had to be released from the old attachments and recharged with a new energy of life. The process being symbolized at this stage of the movie is our discovering what those attachments are and to see them released one step at a time? Actually, there are seven key attachments to the Matrix. Interestingly, each was adopted as a new-found *solution* to the problems created by what we thought were solutions to the original problem, the Master Decision of trying to regain the non-disturbed state. The reason we could not find the non-disturbed state is that THERE IS NO TOTALLY NON-DISTURBED STATE IN THIS MAN-MADE WORLD of standards, ideas, ideals and machines.

## **DISCOVERING THE FIRST FOUR UNWORKABLE SOLUTIONS TO THE PRIMARY UNSOLVABLE PROBLEM**

### **FIRST SOLUTION**

Even as a tiny baby, our first “how to” decision was —“*In order to regain the non-disturbed state, I must have my way and I can get it if I complain.*”

### **SECOND SOLUTION**

Within months, we soon added No. 2, a companion decision —“*In order to regain the non-disturbed state, it is important to stick up for my rights because I know what is right.*”

### **THIRD SOLUTION**

These two decisions actually worked pretty well for us as babies, but as we became a little older and started walking around, our parents tried to get a third decision into our solution machinery, No. 3, which was —“*In order to regain the non-disturbed state, it is important to please them.*”

### **FOURTH SOLUTION**

As we got older and entered school, we created, along with the need to please, a companion decision, No. 4, which was —“*In order to regain the non-disturbed state, it is important to do and believe what I am told by my authorities.*” We learned that if we believed what others told us, we would be less disturbed. Most of our original beliefs about “good and evil” were gained for this No. 4 reason because we had a need to be secure and accepted as part of the group.

Solutions No. 3 and No. 4, the need to please and belong, are in opposition to No. 1 and No. 2, the need to have our way. These two opposing sets of solutions form two basically different personalities in conflict with each other.

For convenience, we can call these two opposing sides the “A Side” and the “B Side.” The A Side developed first and is the infant mind. In psychology, they often call it the “Id.” The B Side was developed later and is the child mind. It is often referred to as the *super ego*, the home base of our conscience. Our A Side is energized by *anger and self pity*. Our B Side is motivated by *guilt and*

*self doubt.* The A and B sides of our mind will almost always produce at least two feelings about anything. Both sides demand to be recognized. The conscious portion of the awareness tries to keep peace in the household by giving one the nod and then the other.

On the following chart, called **The Picture of Man**, we see the first four of these solutions which, since they cannot give us the totally non-disturbed state, become more of the problem. There is nothing right or wrong about any of these decisions, in and of themselves. It is just that when we make any of them important “needs,” they add to the stress and therefore are destructive. It is fine to have our own way—as long as we are not miserable if we cannot have it. It is fine to please others, as long as we are not all torn up when we fail to please. However, since none of these solutions produce the desired totally non-disturbed state, there is no true inner peace.

## THE PICTURE OF THE MATRIX MAN

### SEVEN DECISIONS TO SOLVE THE MASTER DECISION

.....  
**THE MASTER DECISION:**  
***“The Main Purpose of Living  
is To Regain the Nondisturbed State!”***  
.....

#### B SIDE GUILT AND FEAR

5. It is important that I *be different* than I am.
4. It is important to do and *believe* as I am told by my authorities since they know what is right.
3. It is important to *please* them so I will be non-disturbed

#### A SIDE ANGER & SELF PITY

7. Wow, am I important!

AWARENESS
(Conscious & Subconscious)

6. It is important you, *it or they be different.*
2. It is important to stick up for my right because I know what is right.
1. It is important to have my *way* and I can get my way if I *complain.*

### ADDING TO THE FIRST FOUR DECISIONS WITH THREE MORE

**FIFTH SOLUTION** Therefore, as a youngster—usually at about the age of 7 or 8, we made another decision, No. 5 on the B Side —“*In order to regain the non-disturbed state, I would be all right if I were just different!*” In other words, if we were just better looking, or stronger, or smarter, or the champion, etc., then we would be non-disturbed. If being different works at all in giving us the non-disturbed state, it works only temporarily and does not give the ideal sensation permanently.

**SIXTH SOLUTION** Therefore, around the age of 11 or 12, we found another solution, No. 6 on the A Side —“*In order to regain the non-disturbed state, I would be all right if YOU were different!*” We discovered that since “they,” “it,” “she,” “him,” or “something else” must be the cause of our being disturbed and if they would change, we “knew” we would then *feel all right*. That decision is called “The Blamer.”

**SEVENTH DECISION** By this time, our ego was so busy trying to keep the mind together that it sighed—"Oh, am I important!" This is decision No. 7 of the subconscious mind which is trying to keep both A and B Sides balanced.

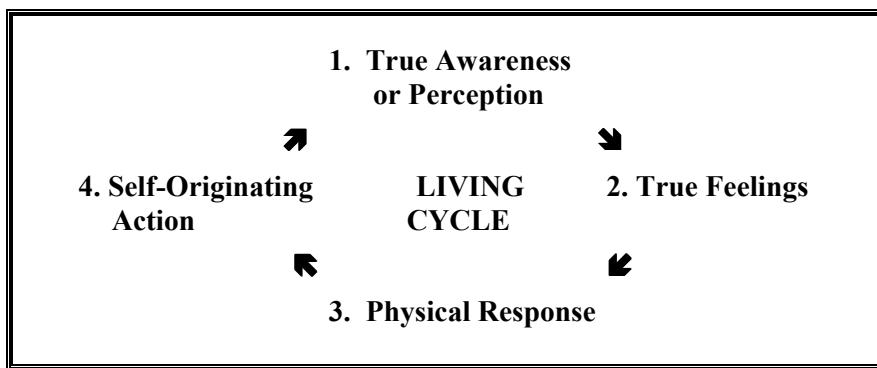
### THE PICTURE OF DISINTEGRATION

These seven attempts at solving the fallacious Master Decision fragments our inner being into many separate personalities. These entities of the self, our different personalities, can sometimes become so well developed that any one of them can take over our total being for a time. Then, when it is dethroned by another which then reigns for a while. Since each is based on the need to gain comfort and escape pain, we developed all Four Dual Basic Urges, which we classified as our concept of "good and evil"—on the physical, mental, emotional and transcendental levels. Each of these urges is not a single "I" but many. It is for this reason that a child of the Matrix cannot "self-improve" his way to perfection, since the "Self-Reformer" is merely one "I" judging another "I." Invariably, the "I" that is doing the criticizing is just more of the problem because it is the judge, claiming to know, for sure, "good from evil."

Because each of us has the infant mind of the A Side and the child mind of the B Side, we are double-minded. In the New Testament, James warns, "**A double minded man is unstable in all his ways... purify your hearts, ye double minded.**" The heart, the subconscious in the right hemisphere, where we have these powerful conflicting urges of the blamer and the pleaser, can never be at peace until the misconceptions are no longer the inner guide of what we need. As we begin to see the ILLUSIONS OF OUR CONCLUSIONS, our false feelings of emergency will come less and less, and instead of living on the *Vicious Cycle*, we can live more continually on the *Living Cycle*.

### THE LIVING CYCLE

While the Vicious Cycle is the creator of struggle, conflict and resistance, the Living Cycle creates love, joy and peace, which show up in the body as health and vitality. We then recognize that seldom does something TRULY threaten our physical survival. When it does, we would be prepared to deal with it according to its seriousness. We would function in a Living Cycle



First, (1) a conscious, whole being, seeing clearly what is and what is not a true threat, sees accurately what is true about each moment.

Next (2), one's inner sense responds to the particular situations correctly with true feeling.

And then (3), the body mobilizes the correct amount of energy, if any is required, to properly deal with the situation at hand,

through (4), the required action. There would be no misconceptions giving rise to false feelings of emergency and unnecessary mobilization of energy that the body cannot properly use and, therefore, must adapt through an incorrect function for the situation. When we are living by *true perception*, perceiving our selves as neither a victim to the conditions around us nor to bias and judgment about those conditions, our actions are, therefore, self-originating rather than reactive.

So while Neo's hair partially grows back over the following weeks of physical rejuvenation, he is carefully attended to by Morpheus and Dozer. When he does awaken for a bit, he wants to know what they are doing with him. Morpheus answers, "**Your muscles have atrophied. We are rebuilding.**" Neo has another question, "**Why do my eyes hurt?**"

He is told that it's because he has never used his real eyes of seeing the Real World, only the illusions of the Man-Made World of the Matrix. Then Morpheus instructs him to just rest. "**The**

**answers are coming.”**

The answers are a paradigm shift, a new way of seeing the world. The old way was seeing everything as a threat, keeping him from having the non-disturbed state at best, and extinction at the worst. The new way is seeing everything as an opportunity, a privilege, even a gift of life. Along with this true awareness comes an understanding of how everything in the Man-Made World is continually being created by our needs to be non-disturbed. That is Neo’s next step.

## SUMMARY

The structure of the Matrix which enslaves us are the Four Dual Basic Urges to gain comfort and escape pain on all four levels, the physical, mental, emotional and transcendental. These needs are based upon the illusion of the Master Decision, that our erroneous “purpose of living” is to regain the non-disturbed state we knew in the first month of the womb. These needs cause us to see the world in a threatening way, so we created false feelings of emergency, which creates the Vicious Cycle of improper adaptation, causing illness or disruptive behavior. So having our subconscious computer software designed to have what is not available in the Man-Made World, we gradually developed seven decisions in an attempt to solve the problem, which creates seven more problems.

# Chapter XII

## NEO HAS HIS MIND BLOWN BY EXPERIENCING “SOURCE”

We are not told how long Neo is being given help in the renewing of his physical body, but when he awakes, he is no longer bald but has a four to six week’s growth of hair.

### NEO IS INTRODUCED TO HIS NEW HOME IN THE SPACESHIP

In the next scene, Neo is waking up and wondering where he is. Being alone, he sees that he is still attached to a feeding tube. He takes it out of his arm and reaches around behind his neck to find a strange device there. Morpheus suddenly opens a heavy steel door and walks in. He is not wearing dark glasses, and we notice that he also has the same attaching device on the back of his neck. Neo, feeling totally bewildered, asks, *“Morpheus, what is happening to me? What is this place?”*

Morpheus evades the subject for a moment, saying, *“More important than what, is when? You believe this is 1999 but it is closer to 2199. I can’t tell you exactly what year it is because we honestly don’t know. There is nothing I can say which will explain it for you, Neo. Come with me. See for yourself.”*

### WHAT ABOUT TIME?

When Neo asked Morpheus what this place was, he was told, **“More important than what—is when? You believe this is 1999 but it is closer to 2199. I can’t tell you exactly what year it is because we honestly don’t know. There is nothing I can say which will explain it for you, Neo.”** Neo’s first lesson has to do with something we do not think needs an explanation, which is *the nature of time*.

Now that Neo’s physical condition has been renewed so that he is able to function as a Real World being, he is ready to start his mental transformation. Inside the Matrix, where most of us mortals live, we experience time as absolute. The PAST, and there is a lot of it, *is really past*, the FUTURE, and there is a lot of that, *is really the future*, at least until it becomes the “NOW,” and then, instantaneously, it becomes another part of the “past.” Einstein revolutionized our concept of time with his Theory of Relativity. But that is just the beginning of the shock. In Quantum Theory, the incredible new physics of the Twentieth Century, distance and time, called space/time, have been discovered to be only appearances, that in reality, ALL IS REALLY JUST “NOW” AND THERE IS NO “THERE,” IT ALL IS “HERE.”

## THE ILLUSION OF TIME FROM “TIME”

Time Magazine, in its final millennial issue, December 27, 1999, had a whole section titled, “The Riddle of Time.” The article’s headline stated, “We’re obsessed with it, and never seem to have enough. But scientists don’t know how to explain it—or even if it really exists.” The article concludes with this mind-bending thought:

**The orderly flow of events may really be as much an illusion as the flickering frames of a movie. And according to independent physicist Julian Barbour’s new book, *The End of Time*, even the apparent sequence of the flickers is illusory...**

**It gets even worse. In some versions of M theory—there may be more than three dimensions of space and more than one dimension of time. What does that mean? Even the experts have no clue. “We’re trying to understand it,” says Harvard theorist Cumrun Vafa, “It’s quite mysterious.” For physicists, then, time is an exceedingly complex and slippery concept.** (Time, December 27, 1999, pp. 143-144)

## A DAY WITH MAN IS LIKE A THOUSAND YEARS WITH GOD

Of course, we students of the scriptures should not be surprised. We have been told that in some strange way, time is a very different thing with God than it is with man. As Peter wrote, “**Be not ignorant of this one thing, that one day is with the Lord as a thousand years [is with man] and a thousand years [with God] as one day [with man].**” (2 Peter 3:8)

Although the thought that a thousand years with man is like a day with God is generally accepted, few of us have noticed the opposite, that one of our days can be like a thousand years with God. How could that be?

To Cyberspace people, our computers can give us the key. Working near the speed of light, a computer can do thousands of hours of work in one of our minutes. For example, I can have my computer do a spell and grammar check on this whole book. If everything is already correct, that function will only take my computer a few moments. In that brief time, the incredibly tiny microchip processors of my computer will look up every word of this book in its dictionary and every phrase and sentence in its grammar logic, and if everything is correct, almost instantaneously, tells me the check is DONE. If that process were to be done by human effort in “real time,” it would take one person many weeks, but with the computer, it is but a moment in our time even though it is actually a very long, exacting process in the computer’s time frame.

Joseph Smith mentioned that “**the past, the present, and the future were and are with [God], ONE ETERNAL ‘NOW.’**” (Teachings of the Prophet Joseph Smith, p. 220)

## ELDER NEAL A. MAXWELL’S DESCRIPTION OF GOD’S INFINITE TIME

In *Book II, Finding the Mark*, Chapter 21, I quote extensively from an Ensign article written by Elder Neal A. Maxwell on how God lives in infinite time. Let’s read a part of that report again:

**Once the believer acknowledges that THE PAST, PRESENT, AND FUTURE ARE BEFORE GOD SIMULTANEOUSLY— EVEN THOUGH WE DO NOT UNDERSTAND HOW—THEN THE DOCTRINE OF FOREORDINATION MAY BE SEEN SOMEWHAT MORE CLEARLY...**

The *omniscience of God* made it possible, therefore, for Him to determine the boundaries and times of nations. In the revelation given to Moses in which the Lord says, “*And all things are present with me, for I know them all.*” (Moses 1:16) *God does not live in the dimension of time, as do we...*

But the doctrine of foreordination properly understood and humbly pursued can *help us immensely in coping with the vicissitudes of life.* Otherwise, time can play so many tricks upon us. We should always understand THAT WHILE GOD IS NOT SURPRISED, WE OFTEN ARE...

What a vastly different view of life the doctrine of foreordination gives to us! Shorn of this perspective, others are puzzled or bitter about life... The disciple will be puzzled at times, too. But he persists. Later he rejoices and exclaims over how wonderfully things fit together, realizing only then, THAT WITH GOD— THINGS NEVER WERE APART! (Neal A. Maxwell, Ensign, February 1979)

## HOW THE MATRIX LOCKS US INTO PAST, PRESENT AND FUTURE.

In an earlier chapter of this book, Chapter X, I quoted an extensive description a friend gave me of his near-death experiences visiting the spirit world. What he described helps us understand what Morpheus said to Neo about time, that even the spaceship crew was not sure what time they were at, nor could he explain it to him. Let's read again the part of my friends amazing experience and his description of time in the "Real World," the spirit world.

**As for time, our world is three-dimensional and in a way, we are chained by time. This creates anxiety, tension and boredom. In the world of spirits there is no time as we know it and we are immersed there in a sort of timeless atmosphere that extends from the present into the past and future. This is the most natural blending and a concept of time that is totally foreign to mortals and extremely difficult to explain. The result of this timeless, past-present-future awareness is a complete lacking in anxiety, tension or boredom.**

**Here on earth events are sequential and locked in time...The spirit world, by contrast, is four dimensional and this fourth dimension gains a new, fresh, more real, flexible concept of reality that is more complete, rich, full, meaningful, natural, restful, free and unlimiting.**

### NEO'S FIRST OUT-OF-BODY, MENTAL TRIP

As Morpheus introduced Neo to the puzzle of time, he concluded by saying, "*Come with me. See for yourself.*"

They climb up to the congested main deck of the spaceship where the crew is working. Trinity has been welding and removes her shield. The others also stop work and gather around. Morpheus explains further, "*This is my ship, the Nebuchadnezzar. It is a hovercraft. This is the main deck. This is the core where we broadcast our pirate signal back into the Matrix. Most of my crew you already know. This is Apoc, Switch and Cypher. This is Tank and behind him is his big brother, Dozer. The little one is Mouse. You wanted to know what the Matrix is, Neo?*"

Then, as he turns to Trinity, instructs her to prepare Neo for a mental, out-of-body transition. She puts him in a metal chair and begins closing attached clamps on his feet, arms and body. Neo is puzzled and somewhat alarmed, undoubtedly remembering the other time he was physically transported to another dimension. Morpheus speaks softly, as he leans Neo's head back into the chair's headrest, trying to prepare him for the amazing mental transition he is going to experience, "*Try to relax. This will feel a little weird.*"

The large connection pin to the Supplement Drive is inserted in the back of his head to keep his body functioning while he is mentally transported away. Neo experiences an intensive blast of energy that shocks both his mind and his body like a large bolt of electricity. As his body tenses, his face grimaces with the pain.

Immediately, the scene changes to an all-white room. As Neo turns around, he sees Morpheus and two large, red chairs, the same ones that he and Morpheus had sat in when they first met in the apartment. There is also a TV sitting on a low table. Morpheus, now with his dark, mirror glasses on again, explains, "*This is the Construct. It is our loading program. We can load anything from clothing, equipment, weapons, training simulations. Anything we need.*"

### BEING INTRODUCED TO LIFE ON THE SPACESHIP

As soon as Neo is introduced to the main deck of the spaceship and its seven-member crew, Morpheus has him sit in a special, metal chair. This is not an ordinary chair like he sat in when he was in the apartment in the Matrix and was sent back, physically, to re-experience the womb. This is a transition chair in which the mind will time-travel out of the body. Therefore, the body must be secured and fed through a physical life support cable. During the transition, although the body will be alive, it will be unconscious while the individual's consciousness is away. Even though the two entities, the mind and body, are separated, they are still connected. As we see later in the movie, if the body's life support system in the spaceship were to be detached, the body would instantly die. Then, simultaneously, the mind in the Matrix would also die. If, in turn, the mind were to be killed while projected into the Matrix, the body in the spaceship would also die. As Neo was told, "**The body, without the mind, cannot live.**"

Also in my friend's description of the spirit world, he had an interesting thing to say about travel when one is released from the chains of time. Let us read that again:

**It also seemed that when we become unchained from time measurement, we also become unchained from our limited position in space. The fourth dimension somehow has a new dimension in freedom of movement in space. Travel is almost instantaneous and effortless.**

What Neo is about to experience is the opposite of going back to the Matrix. He is going to be sent into the partial Source of the Matrix, called the Construct. Morpheus knows what a shock Neo's body and mind will go through as his mind is released from his body, so he says, "**Try to relax. This will feel a little weird.**"

As Neo immediately discovers, that is quite an understatement! But the pain and shock is but a moment. The next thing he knows is that he is standing, startled but comfortably, in a strange new world.

### EXPERIENCING "SOURCE," CALLED "THE CONSTRUCT"

Neo, having worked endlessly for years in the inner workings of computers had discovered that computer programs, the intricate software, really seem to have a strange life of their own. Although computers, themselves, are just machines, the intelligence of the computer, the complex programming, is a collection of thoughts, choices, concepts and instructions created by the programmer. So Neo makes a wild guess and asks, not whether they were in a computer, but something more ethereal, "*Right now, are we inside a computer program?*"

*"Is it really so hard to believe. Your clothes are different. The plugs in your arms and head are gone. Your hair has changed. Your appearance now is what we call residual self-image. It is a mental projection of your digital self."*

Neo, pointing to one of the two familiar, red leather chairs, questions, "*This isn't real?*"

Morpheus smiles and answers with a question, "*What is real? How do you define real? If you are talking about what you can feel, what you can smell, what you can taste and see, then real is simply electrical signals interpreted by your brain.*"

### THE INFINITE MYSTERY OF THE UNIVERSE

Of all the mysteries revealed in this movie, we have just been given the greatest and most profound mystery of them all, the mystery of existence itself. The natural mind cannot begin to comprehend that mystery, even though it may have some rather accurate concepts about it. However, when one is allowed to break through the veil of darkness and comprehend the Source of it all, the simple reality is that the universe and everything in it is ALL CONSTRUCT! It is all *vibratory energy* held in place by divine will, *exactly as it is, exactly on purpose*. It is all put in place and held in place by infinite intention which goes beyond time and space. Every bit of it is alive, alive in that it is a living part of the One Life. That One Life can only be described as the essence of God, for God is Life! God is light! God is love!

When any portion of His infinite creation is truly awakened, even for a brief moment, that portion experiences itself as the whole, the whole that is sourcing it all. That part, when enlightened, discovers that wherever life is, it is—IN all things, OF all things and THROUGH all things. Christ was not exaggerating when He testified as to the infinite magnitude of that which He consciously knew what He was. Christ clearly stated, "**I am the way, the truth and the light.**" "**I am the light of truth.**" As John testified, "**All things were made by Him, and through Him, and of Him.**" Another way we might describe this wonder is by expressing it in *present and future tense*, as in these words—*all things are being made and will continue to be made BY HIM AND THROUGH HIM AND OF HIM*. Moroni invited us, "**Yea, come [present tense] unto [the infinite] Christ, and be perfected in Him** [future, perfect tense]."**"** In grammar, "perfect" means "complete."

When one is truly awakened, which is what Neo experiences at the climax of this movie, this is the reality one is awakened to, that all life is by and through the personalized infinite Source, even by Him, through Him, and of Him, that as He is the individualized source of all things, that is the Christ we consciously join, the *Christ we freely come to*—the Infinite, Cosmic Christ, as revealed to us in His mortal and, now, immortal existence. That finite, mortal form revealed as Jesus is the exalted

being in whose image we are created. In this way, as Jehovah becomes Jesus, as Michael becomes Adam, *each of us, although we are actually infinite and eternal, spiritual beings, have become temporary, finite, mortal men and women.*

## HOW IS THE INFINITE LIGHT OF CHRIST THE SOURCE OF ALL THINGS?

So how does infinite light create the spiritual universe, then the physical universe? Simply, Infinite Life creates out of *intention*, sending forth *vibratory energy*, which is *thought*. We know vibratory energy as **LIGHT**. Light becomes manifest, in turn, as both energy and mass, alternating between the two at incredible speeds. As Quantum Physics gradually explained in the last 100 years, that light is both a wave (energy) and a particle (mass), almost but not quite simultaneously. Even the atoms, the building blocks of all matter, instead of being made of little electron balls spinning around another ball we call the nucleus, are actually more like fields of energy interacting with each other at relatively incredible distances and speeds. In other words, the atom is nothing but light, the light out of which everything is made. Isn't that what we are told in these words, which we should know by heart:

**Truth [the manifestation of reality] shineth. This is the light of Christ. As also He is in the sun, and the light of the sun...the light of the stars, and the power thereof by which they were made...And the light which shineth, which giveth you life, is through Him who enlighteneth your eyes...which light proceedeth forth from the presence of God to fill the immensity of space, the light which is in all things, which giveth life to all things...**

**He comprehendeth all things, and all things are before him...and all things are by Him, and of Him, even God, forever and ever...The light shineth in darkness [the Matrix of control] and the darkness comprehendeth it not; nevertheless, the day shall come when you shall comprehend even God, being quickened in Him and by Him. (D&C 88: )**

## ONENESS IN SEPARATENESS

Just as we are individualizations of that light in which we became organized around spheres of influence, like we do in mortal society, so also is the whole universe organized through a hierarchy of leadership by those who have gone on before. **“For intelligence cleaveth unto intelligence, wisdom receiveth wisdom; truth embraceth truth ... judgment goeth before the face of Him who sitteth upon the throne and governeth and executed all things.”** (D&C 88:40)

This “oneness in separateness” is what Christ invites His brothers and sisters to wake up to and experience. I say experience, not just believe. Although believing this principle is helpful, a conceptual level of knowing is only a first step. As Christ said, the eating and drinking of it is the true prize, and that prize is to experience that we have been, are and will continue to be perfect individualizations of that One Infinite Light. To directly experience that reality is what is often called a **COSMIC CONSCIOUSNESS** experience, because “cosmic” means “without end.” Such an experience in this life is usually, of necessity, relatively brief but its effect is often life transforming. As Joseph Smith taught, one could learn more in five minutes gazing into the infinite oneness of heaven than one would learn by reading and comprehending all the books on the subject of who we are and our relationship to God. (Teachings of the Prophet Joseph Smith, p. 324)

Is that the great truth that Morpheus has introduced Neo to in taking him into the Construct? The answer is yes, but only in part.

## THIS CONSTRUCT IS LIMITED TO BATTLING THE MATRIX

Since Neo’s experience of this incredible Construct was his first major event following his physical renewal, it certainly would not be the final awakening that he would require in order to experience total victory as the One. That total victory is what the end of the movie is about. Actually, at this point, he has merely been introduced to Infinite Source in its limited form. In the story, this level of Source has to do with the way the city of Zion has empowered its spaceships, and, in this case, the Nebuchadnezzar, to fight the Matrix.

Notice how Morpheus described what its function is. **“This is the Construct. It is our loading program. We can load anything from clothing, equipment, weapons, training simulations. Anything we need.”**

Anything “we need” to do what? Through this Construct, the crew of the spaceship could

provide for all their needs when they went into the Matrix. But when it came to their life in the spaceship, we find that being able to have anything they might want was another matter. It is quite evident that the higher Construct, coming directly from the Infinite Source, was not making their battle with the Matrix one of comfort and ease. As we see later in the movie, the spaceship was anything but a place of luxury. The food was poor, the temperature was cold and the ship was an old, squeaky, heavy metal battlewagon, even though it flew.

### WHY OUR ABILITY TO CREATE MUST BE RESTRAINED

But why would the Infinite Source, meaning God, limit the capacity of Zion's Construct? This world is a place where we experience the Fall so that we can know the opposite to heaven, thus being able to comprehend the light in contrast to the darkness. As we are told, even the great Jehovah “ascended below all things, in that he comprehended all things, that He might be in all and through all things.” (D&C 88:6)

So what does this represent in the process of transformation? It is the beginning of grace, the undeserved blessings poured out upon the candidates of consciousness whereby they can begin to experience the powers of heaven enough to gradually start penetrating and reducing the powers of darkness in their inner life. This process is not haphazard and unplanned as it appears. The plan was made outside of time and is always right on schedule. Let's read again what Joseph Smith taught:

*The Great Jehovah contemplated the whole of the events connected with the earth, pertaining to the plan of salvation, before it rolled into existence or ever “the morning stars sang together” for joy; the past, the present, and the future were and are, with Him, one eternal “now.”...He was acquainted with the situation of all nations and with their destiny. He ordered all things according to the council of His own will.* (Teaching of The Prophet Joseph Smith, p. 220)

### THIS VISIT TO THE CONSTRUCT IS FOR NEO TO LEARN HOW TO USE POWER IN THE MATRIX

The power to will something and make it so is rather heady business and can get us into a great deal of trouble if we begin to worship it. Yet, as in most everything in life, we learn more from our mistakes than we do from our successes. As the movie goes on, we see how the ability to access the sourcing power of the Construct can be used for violence, trying to take on the agents at their own game. Actually, as Neo will discover, it is a good way to get killed. But, let's remember, even that eventually works too.

One of the great lessons of this movie is this—don't take the miraculous too seriously. As individuals become more enlightened and learn how to live by greater and greater faith and a sense of empowerment, there comes a time in the life of most when they begin to believe that *there is just no limit to what they can create*. To think a thing makes it so, right? Well, yes, up to a point. Then the roof caves in.

One of the great movies which teaches this lesson is made around Kipling's story, *The Man That Would Be King*. I recommend that you view that video and see what happens when a seeker suddenly thinks that he can finally HAVE IT ALL. Most of us have had to learn the error of this delusion more than once. It is also one of the great lessons of this movie which will be discussed in later scenes.

### SO WHAT IS REAL?

When Neo, looking at one of the apartment's red chairs, asks if it is real. Instead of an answer, he is asked in return, “**What is real? How do you define real? If you are talking about what you can feel, what you can smell, what you can taste and see, then real is simply electrical signals interpreted by your brain.**”

We naturally believe that the physical world is solid, concrete—REAL. But we see it with eyes that are only antennas, hear it with ears that are only a communication link, taste it with taste buds that convert flavors into signals. We see the world as solid, yet Quantum Theory has proven that, like the cosmic universe, all of it is 99.999% space. It is not our eyes, ears or taste buds by which we experience the world. It is the incredible brain that has to see, hear, taste, etc, and how in the world does that complex three pounds of protoplasm do that? We have only clues, but no final answers. In fact, the more our scientists have learned, and they have learned a lot, the more they know we don't know very much at all. So we go back to our definition of truth discussed earlier, that what is real is

only what we perceive, for “**truth is a knowledge of what is, was and will be,**” and everyone of us comes up with our own unique interpretation of what that is.

So in this experience, Neo is at another giant leap to enlightenment by experiencing, first hand, the paradox that what he knows, he doesn’t really know, and, in contrast, what he doesn’t really know, he knows.

### SUMMARY

The title of this chapter is “Neo Has His Mind Blown By Experiencing “Source.”” The reader may have experienced some of that as well because Neo’s first introduction to the Real World deals with the illusion of time/space, along with a brief peek at how everything in existence is, in final analysis, *only information*, sourced by infinite intelligence, of which each of us is an intentional manifestation. In the Matrix we are locked in sequential time, limited by distance, and convinced of our eternal separateness from each other and from Infinite Source. Once we understand that light, whether it is the visual band or the invisible frequencies, carries all the information which makes up the universe, then it is not such a giant leap to conceive, even intellectually, that the light of Christ creates the universe, just exactly the way it is, as an intentional manifestation. Thus all things are made of Him, by Him and through Him, referring to the Infinite Christ and not just the finite Christ. This is what Neo is in the process of discovering, one step at a time.

## Chapter XIII

### HOW OUR MECHANICAL NATURE (THE A.I. MACHINES) TOOK OVER

As the title of this book implies, we are using this movie as an allegory describing some of the steps to integration. The primary key to seeing the symbolism is to understand, in our own mortal experience, how the Matrix is the result of our own misconceptions about the purpose of living. Morpheus is now going to explain to Neo the allegorical origin of the Matrix.

#### HUMANS DEFEATED BY THEIR ARTIFICIAL INTELLIGENCE MACHINES

At this point, Morpheus is ready to give Neo some history. He activates a VCR with his remote to play a video tape on the TV. A picture of our 1999 world comes into view. He explains, “*This is the world that you know, the world as it was at the end of the 20<sup>th</sup> Century. It exists now only as a part of a neuro-introactive simulation, that we call the Matrix. You have been living in a dream world.*”

Immediately, the scene on the television changes into a dark and dismal world. Morpheus explains that this dark picture is the world as it really exists at this time around 2200 A.D.

Then, suddenly, the two of them are no longer in the white room of the Construct but sitting in the two red chairs in a rocky desert with a dark, stormy sky. Neo’s lesson continues, “*Welcome to the desert of the Real World. We have only bits and pieces of information, but from what we know, at some point in the early 21<sup>st</sup> Century, all mankind was united in celebration. We marveled at our magnificence as we gave birth to “A. I.”*”

Neo asks, “*A. I. You mean Artificial Intelligence.*”

“A single consciousness that spawned an entire race of machines. We don’t know who struck first, us or them. But we know that it was us who scorched the sky.”

At this point, Morpheus explains how such enlightened human beings became afraid of the new independence of the biological, Artificial Intelligence Machines they had created. The machines were taking on a life of their own and threatened to take over the world. Morpheus describes, matter of factly, why the tragic miscalculations took place.

He continues, “*We thought the machines were dependent on solar power and it was believed*

*that they would be unable to survive without an energy source as abundant as the sun. Throughout human history, we have depended on machines to survive. **Fate, it seems, is not without a sense of irony.***

## UNDERSTANDING HOW ALL OF THIS STARTED IN THE WOMB

We were in the womb for nine months. Actually, that was like a whole lifetime to us then. It was the whole world as far as we could remember, having forgotten the glory of our pre-existence. Since Morpheus is describing how the machines took over the world, it is very useful to see how literally he is describing what happened to us in the womb. We can no longer remember what it was like to be a real human being because we soon became controlled by a mechanical nature of our own creation which took its place. Although we covered this subject in general when Neo was sent back to the womb experience, let's briefly review how we became under full control of an automated, stimulus-reaction system.

After that first month of awe and peacefulness, when the environment changed due to the hormonal disruptions in our mother's body, we felt threatened. We began to experiment with defense mechanisms for handling the distress on one hand and what we thought was our very survival on the other hand.

In the allegory of the Garden of Eden story, Adam and Eve, symbolizing us, needed to become "wise" and yielded to the temptation to create a bull-work of defense to protect themselves. As for us, in that second month in the womb, we started to compare our new, stressful circumstances to the original non-disturbed state of the first month. We too, symbolically, partook of the fruit of the forbidden tree. As a result, we also felt naked, frightened, unwanted, inadequate and alienated from the Oneness we had felt with Source during the first month. Subconsciously, we set up one protective software program after another. Each program became a decision-context which took on a personality in its own right. Thus we became fragmented into many conflicting entities of personality instead of one.

## BEGINNING TO SEE THE MATRIX AS BEING RIGHT ON SCHEDULE

In The Picture of Man, explained in Chapter X, we saw how this conditioning was amplified after birth, but a great deal of this programming must have been done before birth. In either case, each aspect of our personality was created to solve the problem created by the previous "solutions."

Each so-called "solution" to the unsolvable problem only increased our feelings of vulnerability, so we reached that point described allegorically by Morpheus, when he said that we blew up the sky, trying to close down our automatic response systems by disconnecting them from Source. But our mechanical, stimulus-response programming reversed its polarity and started taking its energy directly from us. Thus, our mechanical nature, called the Matrix, took charge. In the scriptures, this is called the Fall, in which we became the natural man, an "enemy" to God.

Now remember, this was all according to the divine plan, and in our pre-existence, we were a party to making up the plan. As Elder Maxwell explained in his great article on the foreknowledge of God about our acceptance and involvement in the plan for our earth life:

**In some way, our second estate [mortal state], in relationship to our first estate, is like agreeing in advance to surgery. Then the anesthetic of forgetfulness settles in upon us. Just as doctors do not de-anesthetize a patient in the midst of authorized surgery to ask him again if the surgery should be continued, so after divine tutoring, we agreed to come here and to submit ourselves to certain experiences; it was an irrevocable decision.**

**Of course, when we mortals try to comprehend, rather than accept foreordination [the foreknowing of God] the result is one in which finite minds futilely try to comprehend omniscience.** (Neal A. Maxwell, Ensign, February 1979)

To experience the opposite to our being an infinite, eternal spirit, we had to find ourselves in an environment that was so separated and threatening that we would give up trusting in our Oneness with Infinite Source. When we did that, we created our unique, full-blown Matrix within ourselves because we thought survival was totally up to us and those around us. In that process of vulnerability, we learned to function more and more automatically in our own world of darkness, fear and disconnectedness from Source. From this view of the Man-Made World, we can see how well it is working.

## THE CONCEPT OF FREE AGENCY VS THE IDEA OF FATE?

Remember, when Neo first met Morpheus, he was asked, “**Do you believe in fate?**” When Neo admitted that he did not, he was asked why not. His answer was, simply, “**Because I don’t like the idea that I am not in control of my life.**”

We have a name for this idea of our being in control. It is called having free agency. We LDS are great believers in free agency as something guaranteed to us by God. So we certainly would tend to agree with Neo’s answer. In fact, we explain that God allows all the evils, disasters, disappointments, abuses and struggles on the earth, both natural and human, because He will not take away our free agency to create and live in a fallen world of sin and darkness.

But let’s ask ourselves a basic question. What if this pivotal concept of free agency is only a part of the preparatory gospel, the milk, and is not a part of the fullness of the gospel, the meat? The idea of free agency is the basis for partaking of the forbidden Tree of Knowledge. By dividing up good from evil, we formed the belief that we are independent, separate entities, truly free agents unto ourselves. We define free agency as the freedom to independently choose good or evil, and, in turn, receive the consequences. And we might ask, isn’t this what God has told us? Yes, as part of the Tree of Knowledge but *is it also a part of the Tree of Life?*

The fruit of the Tree of Life contradicts the concept of separateness and awakens us to our eternal unity with and as a part of Source. That is why the fruit of the Tree of Life produces the same kind of perfect love possessed by God because it destroys fear. This alternative view, that we are an integral part of the one Infinite Life, replaces our idea of independent free agency of the individual with the collective free agency of God whose HAND IS IN ALL THINGS.

### WHAT IS THE MEANING OF THE WORD “IRONY?”

Morpheus explained to Neo the contradiction between mankind needing machines and being afraid of machines. “**A single consciousness that spawned an entire race of machines...It was believed that they would be unable to survive without an energy source as abundant as the sun. Throughout human history, we have depended on machines to survive. Fate, it seems, is not without a sense of irony.**

So Morpheus is saying that like God in creating His intricate and immense plan, has a sense of irony. So what is the meaning of the word, “irony.” The dictionary defines irony as “**an expression or description marked by such a deliberate contrast between apparent and intended meaning.**”

Our creating an inner Matrix, an automatic reaction machine, to survive in a threatening world of separateness has the appearance of being an existence of continual struggle, conflict and resistance plagued by failure, when in reality it is a masterfully orchestrated program of universal success.

This cosmic view that everything was planned by Jehovah from the very beginning is the opposite of the concept of free agency. The real meaning of “fate” is that it is God’s free agency, His perfect, divine plan. Let’s remember, inside of time, there is little true evidence of fate. People who believe in it are called foolish and superstitious. In common-sense reality, everything appears to just happen, like a whole series of coincidences and accidents. The reason is that the natural man’s view of things is controlled by *the constraints of time*. Another *irony* is that *time*, itself, is a “*construct*,” merely an illusion.

Next, Morpheus explains to Neo how we are the unconscious source of the energy which allows the Matrix to survive.

### HOW WE PROVIDE THE ENERGY TO KEEP THE MATRIX ALIVE

“*The human body generates more bioelectricity than a 120-volt battery and twenty-five thousand BTUs in body heat. Combined with a form of fusion, the machines had found all the energy that they would ever need. There are fields, endless fields, where human beings are no longer born. We are grown.*

“*For the longest time I would not believe it, and then I saw the fields with my own eyes. I watched them liquefy the dead so that they could be fed intravenously to the living. As I was standing there, facing the pure horrifying precision, I came to realize the obviousness of the truth. What is the Matrix? Control! The Matrix is a computer-generated dream-world built to keep us under control in order to change a human being into this.*”

At this point, Morpheus holds up a standard D size Duracell, copper top battery, showing what humans have become, merely a source of energy to run the mechanical monster of the Matrix.

At this point, Neo is pushed over the brink of sanity. Every fiber of reason and logic tells him that this could not be true. In desperation, he screams, “*No! I don’t believe it. It is impossible!*”

Morpheus emphasizes, “*I did not say it would be easy, Neo. I just said that it would be the truth.*”

Neo, screaming while he is trying to run away, like most of us have done in a frightening nightmare, yells, “*Stop! Let me out! Let me out! I want out!*”

## COMING FACE TO FACE TO THE INCOMPREHENSIBLE

Many of those who believe they are sincere students do pretty well until they hit the inconceivability of infinite time being ALL NOW and that everything—and *I mean everything—is exactly as planned*. In my own experience with students, many have commented that they were in total agreement with me until I ran off-track by trying to explain time in a different way than, to them, *it obviously is*. They felt that, even if it is true, I should leave that part out as totally unnecessary. My answer is that the information about time, the construct of the past-present-future illusion, is the most essential part of understanding the mind of God and what the perfect love of Christ is all about.

## NEO HITS THE WALL OF INCONCEIVABILITY

In Neo’s total rebellion, he instantly finds himself back in the spaceship’s transition chair, thrashing about. Trinity, with her hand on his forehead, softly pleads, “*Easy, Neo! Easy!*”

Neo is not about to take it easy. He has had more than he can take. Breaking loose from the husky grip of Dozer, who is unplugging him, he stands up and screams his demands, “*Stay away from me! I don’t believe it! I don’t believe it!*”

Cypher, declaring with alarm, warns everyone of what seems obvious, “*He is going to pop!*”

Morpheus speaks to him kindly but emphatically, “*Breathe, Neo! Breathe!*”

Neo collapses on the floor in a fetal position and throws up.

## THE NEED TO TRY TO STAY WHERE WE ARE

What made Neo blow up? What could he not accept? When Morpheus showed him a copper top Duracell battery, indicating that this was all human beings had become to the A.I. Machines, Neo could not accept that as truth. Such an idea was like taking away his life, his dignity, his worth, his value.

What does Neo’s total rejection and rebellion represent? It symbolizes that point of awakening when we really see that our mechanical, stimuli-response programming is all that is left of who we are. *Certainly that cannot be the truth!* Our whole image of ourselves as free agents—spontaneous, conscious masters of our destiny—is what we think we know for sure. So in this way Morpheus’ words take on frightening, incomprehensible meaning, “**I did not say it would be easy, Neo. I just said that it would be the truth.**”

But Neo did not want truth if this is what the truth is. He wanted the sanity of the reality he had always known as the one and only truth. So he vocalized the inner terror of his mind, “**Stop! Let me out! Let me out! I want out!**” Most of us have gone or will go through such a stage as a sudden surge of enlightenment forces us to cross over the bridge of incomprehensibility.

## SUMMARY

While Neo’s previous return to the womb was a physically, life threatening experience, his first genuine exploration of the Real World is intellectually a mind shattering experience. None of us want to give up our sacred belief in our free agency, and in its place accept the concept that we are automatic-reaction machines basically controlled by the Four Dual Basic Urges through the Seven Unworkable Solutions we invented in our futile effort to find the totally non-disturbed state we knew during the first month in the womb. Integration is seeing the irony of God’s free agency of designing a perfect plan whereby we could experience the opposite to who and what we are, as infinite spiritual beings, so that we could finally and fully comprehend what that means. As Neo found out, making

that discovery is not an easy transition to make.

## Chapter XIV

### NEO IS READY FOR THE REPROGRAMMING OF HIS MIND

Neo has now gone through a number of steps having to do with the Flaming Sword. Remember, the Flaming Sword, which stands between the Tree of Knowledge and the Tree of Life, is there to actually protect the unprepared from the Tree of Life. Going through the Flaming Sword, the Third Level, also called “the chastening of the Lord,” is designed to BURN OUT OF US more and more of the judgmentalness we picked up from the forbidden Tree of Knowledge.

#### NEO HAS PASSED THE POINT OF NO RETURN

Later, Neo is lying on the bed in his room, recovering from his painful blow-up. When he suddenly sees Morpheus patiently sitting behind him, he asks what is becoming obvious to him, “*I can't go back, can I?*”

Morpheus is now ready to bring Neo to a deeper level of what is really going on. He answers Neo’s question by simply saying, “*No.*” Then he adds, “*But if you could, would you really want to?*”

He continues by referring to Neo’s age, probably around 30, as being an almost impossible barrier to breaking through. “*I feel I owe you an apology. We have a rule. We never free a mind once it has reached a certain age. It is dangerous and the mind has trouble letting go. I have seen it before and I am sorry. I did what I did because I had to.*”

Next, Morpheus tells Neo about the reason for his search for the “One.” He explained, “*When the Matrix was first built, there was a man born inside who had the ability to change whatever he wanted to remake the Matrix as he saw fit. It was he who freed the first of us. He told us the truth. As long as the Matrix exists, the human race will never be free. After he died, the oracle prophesied his return, that his coming would hail the destruction of the Matrix, end the war and bring freedom to our people. That is why there are those of us who have spent our entire lives searching the Matrix looking for him. I did what I did because I believe that search is over. Get some rest. You'll need it.*”

Neo asks, “*For what?*”

“*Your training.*”

This is the one and only specific reference in the movie to the Savior. On the **First Level** of awakening, dealing with the Temporal Law, the Savior is seen as someone outside of ourselves, someone who has paid the fine, the penalty for sin on the scale of justice so that mercy can prevail. On this Temporal Law Level, this is the meaning of grace, receiving absolution from guilt through the sacrifice of Christ.

As a person evolves to the **Second Level**, the Spiritual Law, the Savior is seen as more than a separate, sacrificial lamb who paid the price for us. On this level, Christ is also experienced as a living, omnipresent, personal Spirit that we can choose to accept, literally, into our hearts and through doing so, become more and more cleansed in the inner vessel. This is the meaning of grace on the Spiritual Law Level, which is the sanctifying union between our spirit and Christ’s Spirit. This is called the First Comforter, being baptized by fire and the Holy Ghost.

#### WHAT THE SAVIOR MEANS ON THE THIRD LEVEL

On the **Third Level**, the Integrative Level, we begin to see ourselves as finite, individualizations of the Infinite Christ out of which everything is made. The boundaries of separateness begin to

dissolve as that part of ourselves, the “One,” which can recreate the spiritual Christ-Matrix that we knew with Him in the pre-existence. We gradually begin to comprehend the light which shines in every bit of the darkness. We begin to see His hand, His masterful workmanship, in ALL THINGS. All things mean, literally, ALL THINGS, including everything in and about our own selves.

Seeing the movie in this way, every character, including the agents, represent aspects of our inner self. Morpheus represents the personal guidance of our Michaelhood or higher self, we think of as the Holy Ghost, who has been searching continuously to find which of our individual, inner personalities has the capacity to go all the way, to be the “One” that can break free from the enslaving Matrix of darkness to the liberating Matrix of light. As seen on this level, Christ’s Second Coming begins with the perfection of His Spirit in the human heart, whereby the individual becomes a Christ-man, the real meaning of being a Christian. There is an aspect of each of us that has the capacity to do just that.

### NO TURNING BACK

At this stage of the awakening process, there can be no turning back. And as Morpheus reminds Neo, **“But if you could, would you really want to.”** The process may slow down or even stop from time to time, but there is no going back. Like the old World War I song, “How can you get Johnny back on the farm after he has seen Paree.” Whereas the other crew members are in a holding pattern in their spiritual development, Morpheus is convinced that Neo can go all the way. However, now that the powerful agents of the Matrix know of Morpheus’ interest in Neo and are rapidly closing in, there is no time to waste.

But what about Neo’s age? Why was he not found earlier when he was younger? There is good reason. The part of us that will finally become the “One” must have already gone through the first two levels, the **Temporal and Spiritual Law Levels**. As in Lehi’s vision, those grasping the Iron Rod which lay along the path to the Tree of Life had already known what it was (1) to be self-confident bigots in the **Great and Spacious Building** and then (2) to be confused in the mists of darkness on the **Strait and Narrow Path**.

In a part of the original script which the two Wachowskie Brothers wrote for this movie, we have an interesting statement by Cypher just after he offered Neo a drink. He says, **“I’ll tell you, I feel for you, man. I really do. Most of us were still young, just punks, when Morpheus jacked us. But you, you had a real life!”** So Neo’s relative mature age is both an advantage and a disadvantage, but having a “real life” is an essential ingredient to his being the “One.”

### THE SECOND COMING STARTS IN OUR HEART

Neo is told by Morpheus about the one who began the liberation. **“When the Matrix was first built, there was a man born inside who had the ability to change whatever he wanted to remake the Matrix as he saw fit. It was he who freed the first of us. He told us the truth. As long as the Matrix exists, the human race will never be free.”** Allegorically, on the **Third Level**, this reveals that even in the beginning of our Fall while in the womb, a portion of our inner consciousness stayed in touch with Source. That is the seedling of Christ that is a part of each of us. Even in our darkness, we are provided the still small voice of the Spirit of Christ that is given to every man. **“And the Spirit giveth light to every man that cometh into the world, and the Spirit enlighteneth every man through the world [the Matrix], that hearkeneth to the voice of the Spirit.”** (D&C 84:46)

In the Temple Endowment, this is symbolized by Adam and Eve being dressed in the garment of the priesthood as a guide and protection for them as they come out of the Garden (the womb) into the lone and dreary world of the outer Matrix. Of all the different personalities within the self, Neo represents that special vortex of consciousness that is the “One” that can go all the way. And the guide, the teacher, has finally found this one aspect of our personality that can fulfill the prophecy. As Morpheus explained, **“After he died, the Oracle prophesied his return, that his coming would hail the destruction of the Matrix, end the war and bring freedom to our people.”**

Who is “he” who will return? Is it the Second Coming of Christ, followed by the millennium? Eventually, but first we are assured that He must come within our hearts. As we find in Revelations, **“As many as I love, I rebuke and chasten. Be zealous, therefore, and repent. Behold, I stand at the door [of the heart], and knock. If any man hear My voice, and open the door, I will come into him, and will sup with him, and he with Me.”** (Revelations 3:19-20)

There is to be a destruction of the inner Matrix of the “natural man,” the enemy of God, by being

reborn by His Spirit. We understand that to assist us in this process, we have all been given guardian angels. We are not told much about them, but in this movie, we can see that they might be symbolized as the two naturals, Tank and Dozer.

### THE ROLL OF THE NATURALS

In the next scene, Neo, still in his room, is lying on his bed by himself. Tank comes in and greets him, “*Good morning. Did you sleep?*”

Neo, still bewildered, is not given time to respond. Tank continues, “*You will tonight. I'm Tank. I'll be your operator.*”

Neo, taking a good look at Tank, remarks with surprise, “*You don't have any....?*”

“*Holes? Nope. My brother, Dozer, and me are 100% pure, old fashioned, homegrown humans grown right here in the Real World, a genuine child of Zion. If the war was over tomorrow, Zion is where the party would be.*”

Neo, curiously asks, “*Is it a city?*”

Tank explains, “*The last human city. It is the only place we have left.*”

“*Where is it?*”

“*In the ground, in the earth's core, where it is still warm. If you live long enough, you might even see it. Hot damn! I've got to tell you, I'm fairly excited to see what you are capable of, if Morpheus is right, and all. I'm not supposed to talk about this. But if you are, this is a very exciting time. We've a lot to do and we have got to get to it.*”

Although five of the crew are personalities freed from the Matrix, two of them, Tank and Dozer, are naturals, true products of the Real World of Zion. Even their names represent powerful tools used in warfare and construction. Zion provided Morpheus with these two crew members who would not leave the spaceship but would be the basic back-up crew when the others left on Matrix missions. What does this mean?

As our fallen, fear-ridden, mechanical nature took over in the womb, each of us still has a residual part of us that remains innocent, like little children, as are the “potentials” in the Oracle’s waiting room. As King Benjamin was told by an angel, when we **“yield to the enticing of the Holy Spirit...and becometh as a child, submissive, meek, humble, patient, full of love, willing to submit to all things which the Lord seeth fit to inflict upon him, even as a child doth submit to his father.”** (Mosiah 3:19)

We don’t see much of Dozer in the movie, but we see a great deal of Tank, and he epitomizes all of those virtues mentioned by King Benjamin.

### TANK STARTS NEO'S TRAINING

In the next scene, Neo and Tank have moved to the ship’s operations room. Tank enthusiastically crashes into his own operator seat and starts shuffling through floppy disks of simulation programs. “*We're supposed to start with these operating programs first.*”

Tank throws one floppy after another aside to get to the interesting ones. Finally, he says, “*Let's get to one that is a little more fun. How about combat training?*”

As Tank inserts the disk into the computer, the screen shows an individual demonstrating Jujitsu. Neo, looking curiously pleased, “*Jujitsu. I'm going to learn Jujitsu.*”

As Neo is again hooked up to the transitional chair, he is impacted by the incredibly massive input and, as it is quickly completed, exclaims, impressively, as if he had just experienced a thrilling orgasm, “*Holy shit!*”

Tank, exclaims, excitedly, “*Hey Mickey, I think he likes it! How about some more?*”

“*Hell yes! Oh yeah!*”

Tank puts in another program. We see the massive digital display as program after program is loaded into Neo’s mind. The scene next changes to 10 hours later. Morpheus walks into the room and asks Tank, “*How is he*”

“*Ten hours straight! He's some machine!*”

Neo, opening his eyes, looking very pleased, adds, “*I know Kung Fu!*”

Morpheus retorts, in a commanding voice, “*Show me!*”

## A NEW WAY OF SEEING THE WORLD

This is Neo's fourth phase of rejuvenation. After the womb experience, his body was renewed so that he could survive physically in battling the Matrix. However, even with that stage complete, he was not ready to be a representative of the pirate ship in the Matrix. So he was next given the mind-blowing Construct experience, which began exposing his mind to the illusion of the Matrix, that it is not the Real World as it appears to be. So this next phase for Neo is the rebuilding of his mind. As he will painfully learn, the martial arts are not so much about techniques as they are about a completely different way of seeing. To understand what this mental phase represents in our evolving process, let's remember that the difference is in the way we see from the Tree of Knowledge and the way we see from the Tree of Life. To see differently requires a great deal of redoing of our minds. It is called, "*seeing the illusions of our conclusions!*"

Again, using the allegory of Lehi's vision, we are seeing this movie as describing what it is like to move along the Iron Rod, through the mists of darkness. The rod becomes like the airplane instruments to a pilot when he has to fly blind. He must stop listening to his natural senses, like what is up and down, what is turning, climbing and diving, etc. He must believe only what his instruments tell him. Those following the Iron Rod were still blinded by the mists of darkness. Those mists represent the temptation to keep eating off of the Tree of Knowledge, judging what is right from what is wrong, comparing the ideal from the non-ideal. Instead of depending upon their old ideals for judging, they were to simply follow, hand over hand, the Iron Rod. If they did not, they would yield to the temptation to give up clinging to the Iron Rod and turn again to try to "see" their own way and erroneously take off on what would "feel" like the direction they "should" go.

So in the same way as a pilot flying blind, Neo must discover how to go beyond even his new-found knowledge. It is no different with us in our own releasing of the old to discover the new. We have all been completely conditioned to use the conclusions of our minds as our absolute guide. To us, to live by our conditioned prejudices is the only way we "know" how to live. It is essential that we look beyond what our old ideals tell us about where we are, how far we have come, how much further we have to go. To say the least, this part of the process can be very DISORIENTING.

## DISCOVERING THE INNOCENCE OF "THE NOT-KNOWING MIND"

In a way, this stage feels similar to what it is like to be in an earthquake when the ground, that one solid reality we thought we could trust, suddenly becomes anything but solid, firm and trustworthy. That is when we stop trusting in the old ideas, standards, ideals and machines of the Man-Made World. But how does one do this?

Actually, to do this requires that we finally, possibly in desperation, realize that we have NO ALTERNATIVE. We realize the old way just does not work. This is the real meaning of a broken heart and contrite spirit. Like the pilot flying blind, we realize that, in and of ourselves, *we really do not know anything* and that everything our old "sense of things" tells us is an untrustworthy illusion. There is no other way that we will totally disengage our conditioned senses of judging. For example, the natural man knows that he has been commanded to cease judging, but he cannot. Try as he will, even with thought control, he still judges, like trying not to think of a pink elephant. But the *spiritual man* begins to realize the truth, that all of his knowledge of good and evil is the Matrix of the Fall, that although he is IN the Man-Made World, he is not OF IT.

These two worlds, the Man-Made and the Real Worlds, form a paradox. They contradict each other, yet they are *both REAL PERCEPTIONS*. It is by experiencing the Man-Made World that we can truly know the Real World. As we are told, "**The Spirit enlighteneth EVERY MAN THROUGH THE [Man-Made] WORLD, that hearkeneth to the voice of the Spirit.**" How is that? Simply, to comprehend light, we must know darkness. To comprehend perfect love, we must know fear. So we can no longer make darkness and fear bad or evil, but instead, merely a process of seeing that there must be opposition in all things for ALL THINGS, INCLUDING GOD, AS AN INDIVIDUAL BEING, TO EXIST IN THE UNIVERSE.

## **SEEING THE VALUE OF ALL THINGS, INCLUDING THE TREE OF KNOWLEDGE**

So we love not the Man-Made World, but neither do we hate the world. We don't love our blindness nor do we hate it. We merely experience "what is" for "what it is," a perfect gift for the here and now given to us by our loving Creator and Redeemer. In no other way can we BE TRULY

THANKFUL FOR ALL THINGS that are happening to us each and every moment.

Of course, there is much of the knowledge found on the Tree of Knowledge that is essential to our living successfully in the Man-Made World. So what is it about that knowledge which is an illusion? It is simply that the whole premise of that Tree is built upon the assumption that if we do what is defined as “good,” then we are “good,” and if we do that which is defined as “evil,” then we are “evil.” That is why the Tree of Knowledge represents the preparatory gospel, since this is the way a person becomes structured and disciplined. It is vital to be well-grounded in God’s law. **“And men are instructed sufficiently that they know good from evil. And the law is given unto men.”** Well, some might ask, do we need anything more? Possibly not. However, we are invited to have more.

The invitation is significant for the simple reason that the natural man cannot keep the law. **“And by the law NO FLESH is justified; or, by the law men are CUT OFF.”** Why? Because by its very nature, obedience to the law must be based upon fear of negative consequences and the pride of claiming worthiness for the rewards. Yet the law demands that we *cast out fear and forsake pride*. Thus, by the ends of the law, we “become miserable forever.” The atonement answers **“the ends of the law unto all those who have a broken heart and a contrite spirit; AND UNTO NONE ELSE CAN THE ENDS OF THE LAW BE ANSWERED.”** (2 Nephi 2:5-7) It is that simple. Our God-given knowledge of good and evil is surrendered as we are prepared to partake of the fruit of the Tree of Life. It is that pure love of Christ which destroys fear, thus it is only available to those who are given a broken heart and a contrite spirit because they are no longer motivated by the illusions that create pride and fear.

### BECOMING A KUNG FU MASTER IN SEEING THE “REAL WORLD” THROUGH THE “MAN-MADE WORLD” ILLUSION

So Neo is being given mental tools, such as the Martial Arts, by which he can see beyond the obvious material structure of the world we live in. A master in these arts can do that which appears impossible to the rest of us because he sees beyond the obvious. Just for an example, a Master can use his bare hand to break through a stack of cement blocks. Not only are the blocks broken, but his bare hand is not injured in the least. If the untrained person tried it, he would probably break every bone in his hand. A master does this “impossible task” by realizing that, outside of time, his hand is already on the other side of the crushed blocks. As soon as his vision is clear, he executes. It is done! So we will be shown a great deal of this in the movie. In fact, it accounts for much of the violence and carnage because it is a major part of the message.

The message is not that we will be transformed if we become black-belt, Kung Fu Masters. It is merely that we begin to see more and more clearly that what appears to be real, such as time-distance, good-evil, and the standards, ideas, ideals and machines of the Man-Made World are only divine constructs that we ARE IN but NOT OF.

So let’s look at a whole bushel of these beliefs we have of what it takes to survive in the jungle of this dog-eat-dog world. Since we have thirteen, beautiful Articles of Faith in the Church, lets look at the thirteen Articles of Faith that belong to those “good people” who believe that the fruit of the Tree of Knowledge is the ONLY way they can be “truly” wise.

### THIRTEEN POPULAR “SHOULDS” ON THE TREE OF KNOWLEDGE

1. I believe that I *should* judge almost everything, especially everybody, to see what is good or bad, right or wrong, normal or abnormal, pretty or ugly, “in” or “out,” orthodox or unorthodox, true or false.
2. I believe that I *should* know what ought to be and what ideals I *should* try to change everything into; that I can do so by either complaining and blaming or struggling and striving.
3. I believe I *should* use psychological pressure if possible and physical force if necessary to get people, especially my children, to do right, but I *should* do it in the name of duty, responsibility and solidarity, and for their own good.
4. I believe that I *should* maintain a spirit of competition with almost everybody, always striving to be the best and the greatest.
5. I believe that I *should* stick up for my rights by whatever means are necessary.
6. I believe that, ultimately, almost everyone is trying to use me and that I *should* constantly be

- on guard to be sure that I am not a victim of their selfishness.
7. I believe that I *should* be aware that almost everyone is or could be a threat to my well being, since there are many ways that others can betray me and fail to really support me.
  8. I believe that many things in life are very important and that I *should* be anxious about seeing that such things are done right, proper and on time.
  9. I believe that I *should* not ever attempt to do anything until I have made proper preparations and learned how to do it well.
  10. I believe that I *should* not be satisfied until I have enough of the things in the world, for without them I would be insecure and unsuccessful in the struggle of life.
  11. I believe that happiness can be assured if I just had less of whatever it is that keeps me from being fully happy and more of what it takes to make me totally satisfied.
  12. I believe that my unhappiness is caused by “this” that is going on with me now and that I *should* be all right if I had “that” instead.
  13. I believe that I am a separate entity of life and that it is me that is doing what I am doing, so I *should* strive to be worthy to have eternal happiness and peace of mind.

Do these “shoulds” sound familiar? Yes, they do. Students begin seeing these illusions on the material and relationship level, called the **First Level**. As they move from the “Great and Spacious Building” of pride to the spiritual rigidity of the “Strait and Narrow Path,” the **Second Level**, the “shoulds” become *spiritual* instead of just material and social. Now, by our moving to the Iron Rod, the **Third Level**, these spiritual “shoulds” begin to be replaced, step by step, with (1) “choices” instead of “needs,” (2) “privileges” instead of “rights,” (3) “opportunities” instead of “obligations.”

### SUMMARY

Morpheus gives Neo a deeper meaning of what it means to be the One by telling him of the prophecy that someday someone would come along that could defeat the Matrix. Outwardly, that would be describing the Second Coming, but inwardly, it means Christ’s first coming into our hearts, for Zion must first be the pure in heart. Since Neo represents that identity of our inner personalities which can manifest the Christ-man, Tank has been assigned to provide the skills of a new way of seeing. Neo can be given the information, but he will still need to know that such skills must become more than the “how to” principles. Possessing the art will include a new way of seeing like a little child. A child has a “not knowing mind,” and that is where Neo’s training will take him.

## Chapter XIII

### LIKE THE SKILLS OF KUNG FU, INTEGRATION IS GOING BEYOND LEARNING

Now that Neo possesses all the technical skills of Kung Fu, he is about to be given a chance to prove it. Again, the natural mind believes that knowing something is the same as having that something. Much to Neo’s surprise, his mastery of Kung Fu has just begun because the art requires a whole new way of thinking.

#### DISCOVERING THAT IT IS NOT IN THE TECHNIQUE BUT IN THE POINT OF VIEW

As Morpheus challenges Neo to show him, they are beamed to one of the simulation-training programs. The scene is a large oriental room provided by one of the Construct’s training simulations. Since they have been placed there by the Construct, we notice, again, that neither individual has any attachments. Neo not only now has a new body of tremendous speed and strength, but also a new mental capacity as far as Kung Fu expertise is concerned. His “digital self” has been programmed with those ten hours of skills, but those skills still require a shift in the way

Neo experiences himself.

Morpheus explains, “*This is a sparing program, similar to the programmed reality of the Matrix. It has the same basic rules, rules like gravity. What you must learn is that these rules are no different than the rules of a computer system. Some of them can be bent. Others can be broken. Understand? Then hit me, if you can.*”

A violent scene takes place for some time in which Neo masterfully attacks Morpheus but cannot really hit him. Then, finally, Morpheus stops and says, “*Good adaptation and improvisation, but your weakness is not in your technique.*”

### THE DIFFERENCE BETWEEN LINEAR AND CIRCULAR THINKING

A number of significant lessons are being taught here. The first is the explanation as to how this simulated training program is similar to the Man-Made World of the Matrix. Morpheus says, “**This is a sparing program, similar to the programmed reality of the Matrix. It has the same basic rules, rules like gravity.**” We are shown in this scene that the technical knowledge is like the Tree of Knowledge, but the full utilization of those skills is like the Tree of Life. As in the process of integration, the true ability, in and of itself, must go beyond the Tree of Knowledge. The Tree of Knowledge creates the limitations of what can and cannot be done. The Tree of Life goes beyond the limitations, seeing that all the circumstances in our life have value and exist for our good and the good of all.

As Morpheus added, “**What you must learn is that these rules are no different than the rules of a computer system. Some of them can be bent. Others can be broken. Understand?**” This transition requires a whole new way of thinking — a new, deeper understanding, that everything is a perfect part of one eternal round. The name for this new way of more complete seeing is called *circular thinking*.

Our normal and less complete way is called *linear thinking* because it is based on the illusion of logic, i.e., starting with the assumption that *IF this is so, then that is so*. In linear thinking, we think in terms of cause and effect, which is the basis for *blame and shame*. Circular thinking sees that because a “cause” is actually the “*effect* of another cause,” it is removed from the basis of either blame and shame or pride and glory.

*Circular thinking* is the only way we will come to that point where we “**becometh as a child, submissive, meek, humble, patient, full of love, willing to submit to all things which the Lord seeth fit to inflict upon [us], even as a child doth submit to his father.**”

### KUNG FU IS THE SKILL OF SEEING CIRCULARLY

It is interesting that the art of Kung Fu plays such an important part in the movie. The words are Chinese for the teaching of boxing principles. But that definition does not give us in the West the real meaning of the art. The dictionary defines the principles of Kung Fu as “**a system of self-defense, like Karate, but emphasizing circular rather than linear movements.**” In contrast to Kung Fu, Karate is much easier for Westerners to learn because it is consistent with linear—cause and effect—thinking.

The Western mind is trained to think sequentially, one step at a time, from beginning to end, looking for the cause of each affect. The enlightened Eastern mind is trained to think more circularly, where everything is one eternal round. This principle is symbolized in their drawing of Ying/Yang, the circle that has the white and dark sides curving into each other. This is one of the main reasons why we have the old saying, “*East is East and West is West, and never the twain shall meet.*” Yet until these two diametrically opposing concepts of reality blend, the earth will remain fragmented in misunderstanding.

### UNITING THE LEFT AND RIGHT BRAIN FUNCTIONS

Even more germane to our subject is that our minds are divided in the same way. Our left brain, which is the conscious mind and the only one we know about, is linear because it is logical and thinks sequentially. The right brain, the subconscious, is circular and holistic rather than logical. Also, interestingly, just as two thirds of the earth’s population lives in the East, 90% of our mental processing is done by the right brain. All of our skills, from typing to hitting a ball are done by the

right brain.

So how does this stage of Neo's reprogramming symbolize what must happen to us as we go from fragmentation to more integration? As students of the way, we can be taught rather quickly the misconceptions which produce struggle, conflict and resistance, but applying that knowledge to our automatic stimuli/response nature is totally another matter. The almost instinctive need we all feel to protect our ego is modified and overcome only with practice in this new art of seeing.

In his ten hours of intensive programming, Neo has been given all of the mental techniques and skills to understand how to function in the circular thinking of Kung Fu, but now he must discover the difference between "knowing" Kung Fu and "being" Kung Fu.

### **"I CAN ONLY SHOW YOU THE DOOR"**

Neo again attacks with all his might. While the fight goes on, we have a quick view of the crew in the spaceship where Neo's body is still locked into his transition chair. Mouse rushes into where the crew is relaxing and excitedly announces, "*Morpheus is fighting Neo!*"

The crew quickly rushes to view the fight on the monitors. The fight continues for some time until Neo is thrown so violently at a pillar that it breaks. We see that Neo's actual body, while locked into the transition chair, jerks as his mental, digital self in the simulation training room takes punishment, with Neo groaning at each major blow. Finally, Morpheus stops. Then as he watches Neo panting for air, demands of him, "*How did I beat you?*"

*"You're too fast."*

*"Do you believe that my being stronger or faster has anything to do with my muscles in this place? Do you think that is air you are breathing now? Again!"*

The fight continues. As the crew watches, Mouse exclaims about Neo's incredible speed for a beginner, "*Jesus Christ, he is fast!*" *Take a look at his neurokinetics, they're way above normal.*

Morpheus taunts Neo, "*What are you waiting for? You are faster than this. Don't think you are. Know you are!*"

As the fight continues, Morpheus yells, "*Come on. Stop trying to hit me. Hit me!*"

Mouse, in the control room, exclaims, "*I don't believe it!*"

With determination, Neo acknowledges, "*I know what you are trying to do.*"

*"I am trying to free your mind, Neo. But I can only show you the door. You are the one that has to walk through it."*

### **WE FREE THE MIND BY BEING IN THE "NOW"**

The Man-Made World we are in not only appears real, it seems like it is the only reality there is. Yes, it is the world we are in, but not the world we are of. Freeing the mind has to do with shifting away from seeing the limitations and dangers of the world as the reasons we stand impotent before its apparent absolute reality.

In this scene, Neo is being challenged to move from technique and skill to running an *experiment* of *doing* instead of *trying*. The session ends without Neo hitting Morpheus, i.e., *he fails*.

As for Morpheus, that is the very success of the exercise. Neo had to discover, first of all, that it is absolutely okay to fail. There is no other way to free the mind. Actually, the natural mind is afraid to be free, meaning free to fail. Failure to the natural mind, like being wrong, making a mistake, goofing up, etc., is the same as dying. So the Matrix of the mind has created programs which keep telling us how never to fail, but those programs are LIES! They create the tormentor in the mind, which we like to refer to as the "devil," as in "**Hello Mr. Devil, now you go back to hell where you belong.**" In this movie, they are represented by the agents, especially Agent Smith.

### **WE FOLLOW THE ROD BY PRACTICING OUR NEW WAY OF SEEING**

Following the symbolic Iron Rod is a very different process than climbing the symbolic Tree of Knowledge. Both are done one step at a time, but one is learning and learning, the other is unlearning and unlearning. As we mentioned, unlearning is seeing the *illusions of our conclusions* about knowing "what ought to be." As Morpheus told Neo, the difference cannot be explained. It must be experienced for the truth to set us free. In the symbolism of following the Iron Rod, we would ordinarily think, since it is described as made of iron, that holding onto such a solid guide would

enable us to safely and surely move hand over hand, one step at a time. If such were the case with the Iron Rod, we should never be disorientated, feel lost nor have a hard time figuring out what is up and down. So even though, as in the allegory of Lehi's vision in which we are without direct sight, we would expect to retain our usual right/wrong points of reference.

Yes, it is true that it would appear that an Iron Rod would be a stable, reliable guide, but this is a very unique rod, since it stands for the Flaming Sword, i.e., the "chastising of Christ." This is where we must lose our life "for His sake." Actually, at this stage of evolving, we get beat-up by this rod. This is where we find that Christ has a tough love. There is no other way to destroy all of the arrogance and pride we picked up from the forbidden Tree of Knowledge.

### **LEARNING THE "KUNG FU" PRINCIPLES OF HIGHER CONSCIOUSNESS WAS THE EASY PART**

So there you have it. One would believe that just knowing the misconceptions of our mind could be enough to set us free and would empower us to a higher state of consciousness. Yet, like Neo discovered in the practice room, when he still could not hit Morpheus, "knowing about" the principles of being free is not the same as "being" free. The difference can come only through experiencing the shift of the inner knowing, and that is done only one step at a time.

Neo has just broken through one of the greatest barriers of all, the most pernicious lie of the mind, that it is a fate almost worse than death *to fail*, i.e., to be wrong. Liberation is to experience the truth that nothing, not even death, is the end, merely a process of evolving. Let's review again how Morpheus defined the slavery of the Matrix as the misconceptions of what we think is our most valued asset, the thinking of our conscious mind.

**Let me tell you why you are here. You are here because you [think you] know something. What you know you can't explain, but you feel it. You have felt it your entire life, that there is something wrong with the world. You don't know what it is, but it is there, like a splinter in your mind, driving you mad...**

**You can feel it when you go to work, when you go to church, when you pay your taxes. It is the world that has been pulled over your eyes to blind you from the truth...[The truth] that you are a slave [to the mind], Neo. Like everyone else, you were born into bondage, born into a prison that you cannot smell, or taste or touch. A prison for your mind. Unfortunately, no one can be told [like getting it second-hand] what the Matrix is. You have to see it for yourself [by direct experience]."**

### **EXPERIENCING "CHURCH" AS A SPARING ROOM**

This simulated sparing room has taken Neo to the next phase of his integration. Believe it or not, the Church can provide for us such an environment. Although the Church looks informal and permissive, yet it is also very orderly, structured and controlling. In a way, it is really an esoteric Wisdom School.

Down through the ages there have been Wisdom Schools run secretly by those who were truly enlightened. These schools were also called Mystery Schools, not so much because they taught mysteries, which they did, but because what it appeared the teachers were doing *is not what they were really doing*. In the early days of our Church, we had the School of the Prophets, which looked like a lot of learning, but was really about something much deeper.

Today we have the Temple Endowment. As I covered in my 1971 book, *The Temple Endowment, The Key to the Mysteries of Godliness*, what it looks like the Endowment process is doing is teaching a whole list of principals and rules which we covenant to obey absolutely, even though we cannot fully do so. However, what is really being done in the Endowment is exposing us to our own blindness to see if we are willing to *truly wake up* to a whole new way of seeing. This is what the sparing program is designed to do for Neo.

In a way, our whole Church program is really a "Wisdom School" because what it appears the Lord is doing with the Church IS NOT NECESSARILY WHAT THE LORD IS REALLY DOING! We think "Church" is about learning and practicing the rules of righteousness. What the Lord is really doing is giving us the opportunity to see that we cannot make these RULES OF RIGHTEOUSNESS, ALL BY THEMSELVES, TRULY WORK.

The simple reason is that these laws we diligently learn makes all of us unworthy servants for our

failure to live our knowledge in purity and holiness we so solemnly covenant that we will do before God, angels and witnesses. Remember, the law of good and evil is given to prepare us for liberty by breaking our hearts if we are truly meek and honest. That is what is really going on in the present school of the prophets, called the Church.

### WHAT RULES CAN BE BENT AND OTHERS BROKEN?

In this Kung Fu battle between Morpheus and Neo, we see one gravity-defying activity after another. As Mouse declares, Neo is absolutely amazing, yet he cannot hit Morpheus. So Neo has been given all the rules and principles of Kung Fu, which allows him to go beyond the limitations and judgmentalness of cause and effect thinking, but that is just the preparatory stage. Now he must go beyond the knowledge. He knows the rules, but his teacher has given him a chance to see that some of the rules can be bent, while others can be broken all together. In contrast, the linear mind doesn't want to do that. Like Neo, it wants to just struggle harder and harder trying to make the rules and laws work. We all know the feeling!

Yet, on the other hand, as Nephi said, letting the law become dead does not mean we ignore the law, i.e., the commandments. **"Wherefore the law hath become dead unto us, and we are made alive in Christ because of our faith; YET WE KEEP THE LAW BECAUSE OF THE COMMANDMENTS."** (2 Nephi 25:25) So what has changed? Motive has changed! The "should," "got to," and "have to" are replaced by a very different, though subtle "choose to," "get to," and "want to."

This is called the liberty in Christ in which salvation is accepted as totally free, which means no "earning" is required. If this release from the bondage of worthiness is experienced by the *unprepared*, it leads to *permissiveness and anarchy*. It is for this reason that the Tree of Life is protected by a Flaming Sword so that one can be prepared for taking free choice responsibly and not foolishly. That is the purpose of being prepared through this difficult chastising process.

So if the Church is our sparing room, what does it mean that some of the rules can be bent and others can be broken? Is it that we can start doing most anything we want? The surprising answer to that question is YES, BUT — and this is a very great "but"— because it is NOT ABOUT THE DOING, it is about the ATTITUDE BEHIND THE DOING! That is what is transformed. As Morpheus concluded, **"I am trying to free your mind, Neo. But I can only show you the door. You are the one that has to walk through it."**

### ALL THINGS ARE LAWFUL BUT NOT EXPEDIENT

Believe it or not, this is the greatest of the mysteries of godliness. The Christ-man is not compelled to do anything and, therefore, CAN FREELY CHOOSE! Notice how Paul described his liberty in Christ when he said, **"All things are lawful for me, but all things are not expedient. All things are lawful for me, but all things edify not."** (1 Corinthians 10:23) Paul was free of the fear of displeasing God because he had faith that there was nothing that could **"separate us from the love of God, which is in Christ, Jesus our Lord,"** yet there were many things that he did not *choose to do* because they were not *expedient, meaning appropriate*.

Nephi, in his statement about the law being dead while still keeping the commandments, also used the word "expedient" when he counseled his children, that they, **"by knowing the deadness of the law, may look forward unto that life which is in Christ...And, inasmuch as it shall be EXPEDIENT, ye must keep the performances and ordinances of God..."** (2 Nephi 25:27 & 30)

By necessity, the law allows no room for expediency to justify breaking the law. The liberty in Christ opens the door to choice apart from the rigidity of the law, and, as Neo was finding, this can be very disorientating.

What does all this symbolize in the process of transformation? First Neo had to be given a whole new set of information. Next, he is given the opportunity to put the information to use. In becoming a true student of the way, this is called running experiments to discover the illusions of our old way of seeing. The new way of seeing is the result of discovering the foolishness of asking *the three questions of eternal torment*, which will be discussed in the next chapter.

### SUMMARY

Kung Fu, in contrast to Karate, uses circular thinking instead of linear thinking. Integration

requires that we discover the illusion of thinking in cause and effect, since what appears to be the cause is only the effect of another cause, all the way back to the beginning. In contrast, circular thinking means that we see everything as an eternal round, perfectly designed, to accomplish exactly what it was designed to do. In this way, everything in life becomes a training room, like a school, where we can go beyond our judgmental, linear thinking to discovering God's intention to create value in this particular way. In this way, Church, home, business and personal study can be a way to see that even in failure, everything is working out perfectly, right on schedule.

## Chapter XIV

### PREPARING FOR THE JUMP — HOW TO FREE THE MIND?

Following Neo's strenuous ordeal in the Kung Fu simulation, he is given no break. Immediately he is taken to his next exercise. Whereas he has now experienced his failure to compete successfully with his teacher, now he is going to fail in his own right. This involves conducting his own experiment.

#### RUNNING THE EXPERIMENT OF THE JUMP

From the fight simulator room, Morpheus calls to Tank in the spaceship control room, "*Tank, load the Jump Program.*"

The scene changes to another computerized training program called The Jump. The two are suddenly on the roof of a tall building. Morpheus, with dark glasses back on, introduces Neo to his next experiment. "*You have to let it all go, Neo. Fear. Doubt. Disbelief. Free your mind.*"

Morpheus steps to the edge of the roof, takes a giant leap and lands on the roof of a building almost a hundred feet away. To Neo, it looks amazingly easy. As he prepares to make the same awesome jump, he walks back so he can make a running start, rubbing his hands and saying under his breath, "*Okey-doke!*"

Back at the control room, Mouse whispers, "*I hope he makes it.*"

Tank assures him in the negative, "*No one has ever made the first jump!*"

Mouse replies, hopefully, "*I know. I know. But what if he does?*"

Tank tries to bring Mouse back to reality by assuring him that Neo won't make it. But Trinity, even though she knows Tank is right, finds herself urging Neo's success, exclaiming, "*Come on!*"

Meanwhile, back on the roof, Neo is quietly reviewing the principles of circular thinking, trying to self-talk himself into the right state of mind with positive affirmations, "*Free my mind! Right! No problem!*"

As he runs full speed and jumps, he sails out two thirds the distance, but screams out as he falls twenty stories to the concrete below, which becomes fluid enough to absorb him, and then ejects him back up, but when he comes back down again from a much shorter height, he lands with a painful thud, exclaiming, "*God! Ugh!*"

Mouse, obviously very disappointed, asks the group, "*But what does that mean?*"

Switch, matter-of-factly, answers, “*It doesn’t mean anything!*”

Cypher explains, “*Everybody fails the first time, right, friend?*”

As Neo comes back into his body consciousness in the spaceship, shaken, he feels his mouth and finds blood. As he wipes it away, he comments inquisitively, “*Ugh! I thought it wasn’t real.*”

Morpheus, smilingly reminds him, “*Your mind makes it real.*”

As Neo realizes that even the simulated training programs can be dangerous, he asks, “*If you are killed in the Matrix, do you die here?*”

Morpheus answers, “*The body cannot live without the mind.*”

## AN EXPERIMENT IS TO SEE WHAT HAPPENS

It is interesting to notice that every one of Morpheus’ students have been taken through The Jump and all of them have gone through the terrifying experience of falling to what looks like their death. As Tank reminds Mouse, “**No one ever has made the first jump!**” Neo is no different. As he sails out between the buildings, gliding so beautifully, and then as he loses momentum and starts plunging to the street far below, he screams in horrified, agonizing panic. As he hits the concrete, it becomes liquid, absorbing the energy of his fall, allowing him to disappear into the rubbery-like cement, then ejected back up a little ways into the air. But this time, when he lands, the cement is hard as a brick.

Of what is this symbolic? The jump is the next step after Neo found that it was not a life and death matter to fail to beat his teacher. Now, he is given the opportunity to fail to beat himself. He is told what this process is about. Morpheus says, “**You have to let it all go, Neo. Fear. Doubt. Disbelief. Free your mind.**” So Neo, thinking he knows how to do that, tries to empty out his mind and fill it with positive affirmations.

## THE THREE QUESTIONS OF ETERNAL TORMENT

On the Tree of Knowledge, we are taught to continually evaluate our actions by asking *three questions* about those actions. In turn, we frequently ask the same three questions about others who are close to us. We will find that these three questions create all of our continual struggle, conflict and resistance, which is the source of all the torment in our lives. So we can say that these three questions, when we ask them of ourselves, are the source of guilt, depression and frustration on the negative side when we think we are wrong, and pride on the positive side when we think we are right. When we ask them of others, they are the source of anger, blaming and complaining on the negative side, and adoration and approval on the positive side.

Yet to our Western minds of linear thinking, these three questions are the most logical and sensible things we can ask. They are based on the assumption that time is real, and since “this” preceded “that,” therefore “this” caused “that.” Yet in the circular thinking of space/time reality, these three questions are not answerable. The whole concept of cause and effect breaks down for the simple reason that what appears to be the cause is actually the result of another cause. This becomes an infinite chain which, like all infinity, has no beginning. It just IS!

As I covered the question in Chapter XXVII in *Book II, Finding The Mark*, what are these three questions? When we ask them of ourselves, they are:

1. **Did I do the right thing?**
2. **Am I doing the right thing?**
3. **Will I be doing the right thing?**

When we ask these questions of others, such as our spouse, children, boss, employees, neighbors, friends, relatives, Church leaders or politicians, they are:

1. **Did they do the right thing?**
2. **Are they doing the right thing?**
3. **Will they be doing the right thing?**

## WHY THESE QUESTIONS ARE NOT ANSWERABLE

We have a beautiful song called “*Choose the Right,*” in which we sing, “*There is right and wrong to every question.*” Don’t we wish there were? The truth is that when we judge past decisions, the only thing we really know for sure is what actually happened after we made the choices

we did. When we ask, “Did I or they do the right thing?” we are trying to compare what happened with what we assume would have happened if different choices were made. But we all have heard of what an assumption is, for “*to assume*” makes an “*ass*” of “*you*” and “*me*.” Those assumptions are not fact—they are only guesses, so there is no way we can answer the question FOR SURE. Struggling to do so is trying to make the Tree of Knowledge work, and the joke is that *it was designed not to work*.

In turn, when we ask about our decisions for the present or future, we have the same problem. All we will ever know is what happens with the choices we do make. Well, don’t we want to ask ourselves which choice we might make that would work out the best? Yes, but there again, what may appear to be the “best” in the short range may turn out to be the “worst” in the long term, or vice-versa. What we see eventually happening is the only thing *we will ever know for sure*. If we keep asking those three questions, there will never be freedom from struggle, conflict and resistance.

### HOW DO WE FREE THE MIND?

Morpheus asked Neo, “**How did I beat you?**” Neo answered by giving a logical reason that it was because he was faster.

**“Do you believe that my being stronger or faster has anything to do with my muscles in this place? Do you think that is air you are breathing now? What are you waiting for? You are faster than this. Don’t *think* you are. *Know you are!*”**

As the fight continued, Morpheus yelled, “Come on. Stop *trying* to hit me. *Hit me!*”

Neo acknowledges, “I know what you are trying to do.”

**“I am trying to free your mind, Neo. But I can only show you the door. You are the one that has to walk through it.”**

Neo is in difficulty when he tries to go from answering the second questions of eternal torment, “*Am I doing the right thing?*” to the third, “*Will I be doing the right thing?*” In the Kung Fu practice room, Neo was continually asking himself, “*Am I?*” That thinking is in present tense. But now, in the jump simulation, as he watches Morpheus do what he must do, he is asking himself, “*Will I?*” Like Neo, this is when students are given their next great lesson of higher consciousness, which is the state of being in the NOW. When we ask the third question, we automatically take ourselves “out of time.” Being “out of the now” creates conflict, struggle and resistance.

### THE FIVE LIES OF THE MIND

Agent Smith explains, later in the movie, how the Matrix of our mind keeps us enslaved. As he said, “**Human beings find their reality through misery and suffering.**” Not only are we afraid to fail, our very failures are what we use to feel a connection, a kindredship to each other. I call it the “Lifeboat Syndrome,” where we rejoice in being mutual survivors of all kinds of diverse and frightening threats.

The “natural mind” is designed to assure *our* survival, and our “survival” includes anything *that we identify as being*. If we identify ourselves as the family jewels, our mind will allow us to perish trying to save them if we can. Well, since we primarily identify ourselves as the conscious mind, and for the mind to be wrong is the same as its death, the mind works 24 hours a day to prove that it is not wrong, or, if by some strange reason it is wrong, then why our being wrong was not our fault and was totally justified in our only “slightly” incorrect conclusions. Just watch how our minds work overtime justifying and explaining our decisions and choices. It will go to any lengths to shield itself from the truth, the very truth that would set it free. The easiest way, of course, is to simply blame others, which is Decision No. 6 on the Picture of Man. One way to undercut these lamebrain excuses of blaming is to ask ourselves an interesting question—

***Who has to be proven wrong  
for my life to work?***

Obviously, the mind would like us to believe it being wrong is certainly not its fault, so the reason must be outside of our mind somewhere. So it must blame him, her, them, it or whatever. So, like the computer Hal in 2001 Space Odyssey, the mind lies. It doesn’t lie all of the time, of course, but it lies more than most of us have recognized before. And although there are thousands of carefully crafted,

self-serving distortions, there are five particular lies that keep us in a state of struggle, conflict and resistance. The conditioned mind claims to KNOW —

- 1. Why others are doing what they are doing.**
- 2. What is happening at a distance.**
- 3. What is going to happen in the future.**
- 4. What is to my advantage or disadvantage.**
- 5. What ought to be different than what is right now.**

Let's discuss them briefly.

#### **1. The mind *claims* to know why others are doing what they are doing.**

This lie becomes particularly active when the mind senses that others have it in for us because they are jealous. But this lie about other people's motives can also be wrong even when we feel loved and admired, i.e., which is why, as we observe others, *love is blind*. The truth is that the mind can only guess about the true motives of others. Sometimes, of course, those guesses can be at least partially correct, but the mind is really only guessing and does not know for sure. How forgetful or surprised the mind claims to be when future events prove it wrong, but it can quickly explain away the error as being caused by miss-information given to it by others.

#### **2. The mind *claims* to know what is happening at a distance.**

This lie can play havoc with our inner peace when we "sense" that things are happening some other place and what others might be doing that threatens our tranquility. The mind likes to remember those rare times when it sensed that bad things were happening some place else, and, as things turned out, they really were. On the other hand, the mind likes to forget all of those many times its "sense" of things turned out to be wrong. So the mind can lie, claiming that what it assumes is the same as fact.

#### **3. The mind *claims* to know what is going to happen in the future.**

There are few areas that this lie about knowing the future cannot create anxiety, worry and stress. Prophets of doomsday have promised the *end times* for the last 2,000 years and they have not been right yet. During the Fifties, it was the depression that was going to return. During the Sixties, we were going to run out of oil, putting the world back to the Stone Age. During the Seventies, the world was running out of money and we were all going to be slaves of the state under Communism. In addition, what if we were to become really ill, lost our job, or a loved one was hurt, killed or kidnapped. So the mind won't let us enjoy the now because it might deteriorate into all kinds of terrible conditions. Like the old man said, "*My life has been filled with a great multitude of incredible disasters, most of which never came to pass.*"

#### **4. The mind *claims* to know what is going to be to my disadvantage.**

Of all of the lies, this is the most subtle and nerve-racking because it combines all the other lies into a great big bucket of worry about our future physical, financial, social, emotional and spiritual safety or survival. This is the greatest lie of all because the mind really has no idea what would be for our ultimate disadvantage, especially in the emotional and spiritual area. We have all lived long enough to remember those events which were viewed, at the time, as catastrophic, yet turned out to be landmark points of change for the better. What the mind does know, and falsely equates it to be the same thing, is that it knows what would be to our COMFORT. But many things which might make us feel good are not necessarily to our advantage, just as many painful things are not necessarily to our disadvantage.

There was a time, when working with my teacher, that I was sure that I understood and agreed with this concept that the mind claims to know but *does not know* what is to our real, ultimate advantage or disadvantage. But then, one day, much to my surprise, I actually GOT IT! Instantly, *belief* in the concept shifted to the *experience* of the concept. Yes, I could actually SEE that all anxiety is based upon our believing what the mind is telling us about the possible future events will certainly NOT be to our advantage. But, of course, the mind does not know that, not for sure. So ever since that time, in those rare occasions when I might get a glitch in my solar-plexus about the dire future possibilities of a present development, I am now able to recognize that its source is this lie, thus acknowledge that I really have no idea what is to my real, ultimate advantage, and the glitch immediately goes away. Then I can deal with the situation with calm, one step at a time.

#### **5. The mind *claims* to know what ought to be different than what is right now.**

This lie is the most constant program underlying all of the other components of the natural mind, the slavery of the Matrix. It is the illusion of the IDEAL. Strange as it may seem, struggling to attain the “ideal” is what is used by mankind to justify all of the violence in the world. Although it certainly is worthwhile to choose projects in which to participate, when our motive is dire *need* rather than mere *choice*, anxiety and zeal can push us away from love, joy and peace to struggle, conflict and resistance.

### **LEARNING WHAT IT MEANS TO RUN AN EXPERIMENT**

The alternative to asking the three questions of eternal torment is to stay in the “now” by *asking the question of eternal aliveness*. What is that question? It is simply this—

## **WHAT DO I WANT TO EXPERIMENT WITH?**

An experiment always works because we get to see what happens, and that is what an experiment is. Instead of being out of the *now*, worrying about what is going to happen in the future, we run an experiment to see just what does happen in the future. The beginner finds it difficult to see the difference, but “*trying to do the right thing*” and “*running an experiment*” are worlds apart.

Once we see that “all things work together for good,” we move from linear thinking of cause and affect to circular thinking of seeing every experience as a divinely crafted gift of a wise and loving Creator. Only circular thinking, seeing everything as having value, can we BE THANKFUL FOR ALL THINGS, as we are commanded to do and have covenanted to obey. There is no other way to free the mind.

To run a true experiment, one must come from a NOT KNOWING MIND. In linear thinking, not knowing what to do and how to do it is disconcerting. In circular thinking, it is living with the true reality of what is, since we stop listening to two of the lies of the mind which claims to know the future and to know what is supposed to be to our advantage. When we do, we discover that WE DON’T NEED TO KNOW. The reason is, remember, that although we may have a pretty good idea as to what is to our comfort, we do not know what is to our real, ultimate, spiritual advantage, which really is the only one that counts.

So as Neo got ready for the jump, what was his alternative to trying to do the right thing? How could he have run an experiment instead? As he learned later, for example, when he and Trinity went to rescue Morpheus, after calmly making adequate preparations, they took each moment, one at a time. So for the Jump, Neo could have stood on the roof top and realized that he had a not-knowing mind, i.e., that he did not know how to do what he had just seen Morpheus do. So when he would have realized that he had a “not knowing mind,” then he instantly would have known what to do. And what is that? It is this—

**WHEN YOU KNOW YOU DON’T KNOW WHAT TO DO,  
THEN YOU IMMEDIATELY KNOW WHAT TO DO!**

## **IT IS TO GATHER INFORMATION AND STAY IN MOTION**

Neo thought he had a problem. He was challenged by his teacher and could not admit to himself that he did not know, even with his knowledge of Kung Fu, how to make that great a jump. Let’s remember that Neo has just discovered that if you are killed in the Matrix, even the simulated Matrix, your body in the spaceship dies too. In addition, he was just told, in order to make the jump, to free his mind of all “**fear, doubt and disbelief.**” So in his pride of over-confidence, he went into self-

talk. But he had just been shown in the sparring room that the problem is not in the technique, but in his way of being. So he could have asked Morpheus, which is what gathering information is all about. Another alternative would have been to take his time, walk around on the rooftop, breathe deeply, calm down and turn to his inner truth. When we do that, ideas will come. When they come, the mind wants to analyze the ideas with the third question of will I be doing the right thing? Instead of falling for that mental trap, the mind can stay relaxed and notice what other ideas come to mind. So when we realize we have a “not-knowing-mind,” and as we gather information from asking outwardly and inwardly, we notice that life is presenting us with an interesting menu of options. The question becomes simple when we say to ourselves, “Of all these options, *which one am I most interested in experimenting with at this time.*” Since the mind is not asking about which one will be the right one, it calmly CHOOSES ONE OF THE OPTIONS and the experiment begins.

If Neo had done this, we can only guess whether he would have been the first one to succeed on his first jump. But even if he failed, it would have been a very different experience than the one he had of almost, literally, being scared to death. But the main reason he probably would not have failed is that by taking time and listening to his inner truth, he would have realized what Morpheus was not about to kill him, which was to remember that this was their own simulation exercise. As such, he could be sure that it was set up not to kill any student, regardless of the dangers. He would understand that there would have to be built-in safeguards. And there were. The cement was set up to turn into soft rubber on his first bounce.

Once we experience our not-knowing-mind within the abstraction that the whole Matrix is a divine Construct which we, as infinite beings, helped plan and initiate, we do relax, calm down, and get ready to again see that whatever we chose to experiment with, it is all working for our good, regardless of the challenges and discomfort. That is the way we live life in the now—choosing to conduct one experiment after another.

### **NEEDING TO BE HAPPY IS WHAT CREATES UNHAPPINESS**

As we have previously mentioned, most students of the way of higher consciousness are not really interested in waking up. What they really want, even though they will deny this, is to find release from the tyranny of their slavery so they can finally be HAPPY. Actually, the joke the mind plays on us is the NEED to be happy, which is the surest way to experience being unhappy. As a wise man once said:

**If all we really wanted was to be happy—  
this could easily be arranged.  
But our problem is that we want  
to be *as happy as others*—  
and this is very difficult  
because we believe others  
to be *happier than they are.***

People are continually looking for things that will solve their pesky “problems.” But as it turns out, concentrating on the principles of problem solving only keeps making room for more problems. The “problem” with problem solving is that there are NO *REAL PROBLEMS*. What we think of as problems are only self-created illusions out of situations which present *challenges*. We interpret a challenging situation as a “problem” only when we resist what is! We resist when we blame *what is* for our negative feelings about it by comparing it to *what ought to be*. Then we are sure we have a problem. Simply put, we are upset because we compare *what is* with an IDEAL of *what it ought to be*.

Understanding the principles of liberation is not for the purpose of *solving problems*. But what it does do, over time, is enable the so-called problems to just clear up in the process of living, as we run one experiment of discovery after another.

## SUMMARY

The Jump was to give Neo a chance to see that clearing the mind of fear, doubt and disbelief is not the product of self-talk, but seeing the illusions of trying to answer the three questions of eternal torment, which are “did I,” “am I,” or “will I,” do or be doing the “right thing?” The mind claims to have the answers to these questions by five major lies. They are lies because, although the mind claims to know for sure, it is only guessing. It guesses about other people’s motives, what is happening someplace else, what will happen in the future, what ought to be instead of what is, and the most anxiety producing lie of them all, that what is happening now will create events in the future which *will not be to our advantage*. But since everything works out for the “good of all,” we can dismiss the lie and calmly, trustingly, see that we have a “not knowing mind,” gather information and stay in motion.

## Chapter XV

### DISCOVERING THE TRAPS IN MATRIX RELATIONSHIPS

Let’s remember that the crew of the Nebuchadnezzar represents those more enlightened aspects of our “fallen” inner self which are involved in the process of integration. Two-thirds will not make it, but all will be helpful. Neo is now ready to begin to be a regular, accepted member of the crew. Yet life on the spaceship is anything but easy. As we will find, there is some grumbling at the hardness and inconclusive aspects of the path.

#### CYPHER’S LOST LOVE

The scene shifts to Neo sleeping in his bed on the spaceship. Trinity quietly comes in the door and leaves him the meal he has missed. As she steps outside the door, Cypher is there and offers a “pity poor me” complaint by saying, *“I don’t ever remember you bringing me dinner. There is something about him, isn’t there?”*

Trinity responds indignantly, *“Don’t tell me you believe in him now.”*

Cypher challenges her, *“I just keep wondering. If Morpheus is so sure, why hasn’t he taken him to the Oracle?”*

Trinity’s answer is to the point, *“Morpheus will take him when he is ready.”*

#### THE DANGER OF COMPARING OURSELVES TO ANYONE

Cypher is caught up in one of our favorite past-times, which is comparing ourselves to others. If we think we are better than others, we get a little dose of vanity. If we think we are less than others, we get a good case of self-pity.

The joke is that each and every one of us is superior to everyone else in this world in at least some things. And each and every one of us is inferior to everyone else in this world in other things. For example, I may not even know where you live. So I am just plain ignorant of something that is very important to you. Oh woe is me! But on the other hand, you don’t know where I live, but I do, so I know something very valuable to me of which you are just plain ignorant.

Now that little monologue sounds silly, but it really is no more ridiculous than our comparing ourselves to anyone else. Each of us is unique and special, but so is everyone else. Scientists tell us that, biologically speaking, there is only .001% of our bodies that are different from each other, even whether we are male or female. And in turn, what differences there are were given to us without our mortal-self having much to do about it, whether it is our looks, temperament, intelligence, personality

or character. In addition, once we factor in what Christ told Moroni, “**That I give unto men weaknesses so that they will be humble,**” we begin to see our individual differences, weaknesses as well as strengths, as special gifts for our growth and experience.

### MY OWN DISCOVERY OF HOW OFTEN I COMPARED MYSELF

Many years ago when I was first working with my teacher, I was making some comment about my not being able to do what some others could do. He interrupted me and asked if I would be willing to do an experiment. “*Max, for the next twenty-four hours, I want you to count how many times you compare yourself to anyone.*” I confidently accepted the assignment because I already knew that comparing ourselves to others was, at the least, non-productive, and at the most, destructive. So, since I understood the principle, I was confident that I did very little of it.

However, within a few minutes I counted three times I compared myself to someone else. I was so shocked to see how pernicious and unobserved my habit was that I burst out laughing. I GOT IT! And truly, as far as my conscious left-brain is concerned, I have never done it since. If I even start to do so, I laugh about it and walk away from the thought.

As we now continue with Neo’s next lesson, we will deal with his problem of understanding what is REAL by being taken back into the simulated training program of the Matrix.

### NEO EXPERIENCES THE ILLUSION OF BOTH THE REAL AND THE SIMULATED MATRIX

The scene now changes to going back into the Matrix with Morpheus and Neo walking against the pedestrian traffic on a busy sidewalk in a large city. Notice that although Morpheus is also walking against the traffic, he does not bump into anyone. Neo, on the other hand, is bumping into one person after another.

Morpheus, wearing dark glasses again, explains cryptically, as though they were really in the Matrix, “*We are inside the system, Neo. That system is our enemy. When you are inside, you look around. What do you see? Businessmen, teachers, lawyers, carpenters — the very minds of the people we are trying to save. But until we do, these people are still a part of that system, and that makes them our enemies. You have to understand that most of these people are not ready to be unplugged. And many of them are so inert, so hopelessly dependent upon the system that they will fight to protect it.*”

As Neo watches a beautiful, blond woman in a red dress walk by, he turns his head momentarily to watch her. Morpheus calls out, “*Are you listening to me, Neo, or were you looking at the woman in the red dress?*”

As Neo turns and starts to answer, Morpheus says, “*Look again.*”

As Neo turns back to look, he sees Agent Smith pointing a pistol in his face

Then Morpheus calls Tank in the spaceship control room, “*Freeze it.*”

As Neo sees he and Morpheus moving among all of the people frozen in their tracks, he asks: “*This...this isn't the Matrix?*”

Morpheus answers, as he looks at the frozen form of Agent Smith, “*Neo. It is another training program designed to teach you one thing—if you are not one of us, you are one of them,*”

### IS EVEN THE MATRIX REAL?

This brief trip into a training simulation of the Matrix was also to achieve another objective—to teach Neo that neither the simulated Matrix nor the actual Matrix IS REAL. They both look the same, yet this simulated Matrix is totally a product of the spaceship’s Construct through its crew of programmers, just as, in this story, the world-wide Matrix is a product of the Artificial Intelligence Machines.

One of the most incomprehensible aspects of reality is the *unreality of reality*. Naturally, any sane individual would declare that the “idea” of reality not being real is, at best, a serious form of delusion, and at the worst, insanity, saying, “*If this isn't reality, what is?*”

Well, of course, everything we experience in life, by touch, sight, hearing, and smell seems very real. But remember what Morpheus asked Neo in the Construct. “**What is real? How do you define real? If you are talking about what you can feel, what you can smell, what you can taste and**

see, then “real” is simply electrical signals interpreted by your brain.” As the Eastern religions say, “*The universe is an illusion, not that it isn’t real, but it is totally different than it appears.*”

### SEEING THE MATRIX OF DARKNESS AS THE ENEMY TO LIGHT

Neo is being prepared to become more than just a Zion warrior to weaken the Matrix. As the One, he is to become capable of destroying the Matrix, one agent at a time. He can only do this by becoming conscious of being LIGHT, which means Spirit, rather than mere flesh, actually being that which is “Source” rather than being the “effect.” To do this, he will discover what is beyond the illusion—that although we are IN the world, we are not OF THE WORLD!

Morpheus explains: “**We are inside the system, Neo. That system is our enemy. When you are inside, you look around. What do you see? Businessmen, teachers, lawyers, carpenters; the very minds of the people we are trying to save. But until we do, these people are still a part of that system, and that makes them our enemies. You have to understand that most of these people are not ready to be unplugged. And many of them are so inert, so hopelessly dependent upon the system that they will fight to protect it.**”

It is very natural for all of us to see in others what we tend to be in ourselves. People who are trusting by nature tend to trust others easily. Untrusting people usually tend to distrust most everyone else. Those who are true seekers of enlightenment find it easy to see others as being just as eager and hungry as they are. But, actually, very few are true seekers. In fact, most are easily frightened and will disparage those who are seeking. Have you noticed?

In Lehi’s vision, the great host of beautifully dressed and civilized mockers in the great and spacious building are par for the course. In fact, they provide an essential part of the process in our own chastening. They make it possible for us *to give up our life for His sake*. To most of us, our life consists, primarily, of our relationship with others. Very few are willing to walk the path with us. When we really understand the principle that Morpheus is teaching Neo, that this is the way the Matrix is set up to serve us in “our giving up our life,” then we become more aware and relaxed in allowing others to play their role in serving us through their opposition.

### WAKING UP TO OUR FALSE EXPECTATIONS

In this simulation, Neo is being taught to see beyond appearances. What does this represent? Have you noticed that we are never disappointed except when our *expectations fail*? When we expect others to be spiritually open and hungry as we may be from time to time, we can feel very hurt and rejected when others are not. This loss can fill us with a deep sense of loneliness. False expectations that others will fulfill our “ideals” of what they ought to be is the result of our foolishly asking one of the three questions of eternal torment — *did they do the right thing? Are they doing the right thing? Will they be doing the right thing?*

Morpheus is giving Neo the key to letting go of his natural tendency to see some in the Matrix as real kindred spirits, i.e., *soul mates*. Yes, others may be wonderful, talented, successful and available, yet they are set up so they can also be our opposition. Therefore, when others oppose us, there is no need to hate or fear them. Whether they are for or against us from time to time, they are doing the only thing they know how to do. That is what Neo is being taught and that is the essential ingredient to loving those who despitefully use us. The **key** is to not become caught up in the expectation that others are our permanent allies in our spiritual growth of liberation.

Since there must be opposition in all things, the Matrix is designed to create blindness, called “darkness,” to keep all of us from discovering prematurely *who we really are*. It is for this reason that the crew members always wear dark glasses when visiting the Matrix so they will not be hypnotized by the natural seductive enticement of the Man-Made World. Even the agents have to do the same.

### SEEING OTHERS, NOT AS MATURE ADULTS, BUT AS REACTIONARY CHILDREN

Instead of looking at what is wrong with others who disappoint us, we might notice how we usually set ourselves up with unrealistic expectations. So would you like to discover a little mental gymnastics as to how you can decrease these painful disappointments in others? All it takes is to realize that we have been *assuming* that the world is made up of *both* children and adults. We expect children to sometimes act like reactionary children and adults to act usually like responsible, mature

adults. But when our expectations in others fail because adults act childish, acting like victims, we are disappointed and hurt. The real truth is that the whole world, being a Matrix, is populated by immature children, *even though many of them are in grown up bodies*. Yes, like children, they may be sweet and cooperative at times, but basically they are programmed to see the world through immature eyes of being victims and react accordingly. So what would happen if we based our expectations on the view that most everyone is but an immature child?

Try it. If we realistically expect all our relationships with others to be with children, we will seldom be disappointed again. When those who look like grownups act frightened, greedy, compulsive and reactionary, we will understand who and what they really are. Now, there may be a few times when we might be *wonderfully surprised* when someone in a grownup body acts like a real grown-up, but not disappointed.

### **THE WOMAN IN THE RED DRESS AND THE ILLUSIONS OF ROMANCE**

Probably the greatest mine field for expectation is created by what is called romance. In this training simulation, there is a quick scene when Neo is distracted by a very lovely, smiling woman in a tight, red dress.

As Morpheus is talking, Neo turns his head momentarily to watch her as she passes by. Instantly, he is challenged, "**Are you listening to me, Neo, or were you looking at the woman in the red dress?"** When Neo turns to face Morpheus, he is told to look again. As he turns back to look, he sees Agent Smith pointing a pistol in his face. What does this represent?

The scene is brief, but very significant. One of our greatest yearnings in life is to receive and express love. The Matrix, bent on protecting us from the reality of who we are, provides us with romantic experiences and calls it love. Romance provides us with unexplainable pleasure. When it sours, however, it can be the source of excruciating pain, and when that occurs, we blame it on love. We begin with what is called a beautiful "love affair," which in truth is a romance, a living dream, a fantasy. Romance is great — it's the dance that includes infatuation, lots of compliments, candy and flowers, picnics in the park, moonlight strolls, lots of kissing and possibly some skin-to-skin body contact.

When two people are hopelessly embroiled in romance, the world declares that they are "in love." But let's look closer. Remember, our automatic, conditioned self has a mountain of subconscious guilt and negative feelings from which we so desperately want to be free. Furthermore, the Matrix has taught us that there are two ways to get rid of guilt, neither of which works. First, repress it by putting it out of our mind, i.e., pushing it down below the level of awareness. Then, second, if someone comes along and makes us aware of it again, we can simply project it on to the other person who becomes our guilty one and we become victims.

### **CHANGING THE PURPOSE OF A RELATIONSHIP**

If we enter a personal relationship for what we can get out of it, which we all seem to do, initially, the most valuable thing we think we can do for each other is help repress our inadequacy by making each other feel acknowledged and worthy of our love. The golden era of romance does this perfectly. Each makes the other feel happy and carefree. Songs constantly go through our minds such as, "Close To You" and "You Light Up My Life." Wow! This works better than a double Valium. Each of us makes the other feel good about ourselves, protecting each other from our guilty feelings of inadequacy and vulnerability.

However, neither of us is really in love with the other. Rather, each of us is in love with the other's ability to keep us feeling good about ourselves. So we say, "Darling, I love you!" Actually, that statement is only half spoken. There is another part to it that is left unsaid. Implied in the wonderful declaration is a "therefore." Therefore what? What we are really saying when we use those tender words is:

**I love you, therefore,  
since I have given you my most precious gift,  
the least you should do is to reciprocate  
by making me happy.**

Each of us has assigned to the other the responsibility for giving us happiness. The romance lasts as long as we can succeed. We do our very best, but the Matrix out there is always looking for ways to remind us how inadequate we really are. Each of us has become dependent upon the other as the source of happiness. Dependency breeds contempt. So when either of us becomes unhappy, the seemingly obvious reason is that the other is at fault.

Instead, if we were to realize that love is who we are, harmonious relationships follow naturally. The relationship we are in right now is possibly the best tool imaginable. To find the value in a present relationship, we simply change the purpose. We enter every relationship initially looking for wholeness because we believe, subconsciously, that since we are incomplete, we need wholeness. Our ego urges us to seek for what we want outside ourselves. Our false purpose is to get our happiness and our wholeness from the other person and this we can never do because our wholeness is not in the other person. It is never "out there." It can only be found within.

So when we change the purpose of the relationship from one in which *we try to find our wholeness in the other* to one in which *we share our wholeness with the other*, we will think in terms of what we can give to the relationship. The amount of wholeness we can give to a relationship is unlimited. We can remember that whatever we give, we have! We can only have by giving. The result is that we find our wholeness within by giving it to another. But what do we do when others treat us as their enemy? That is our next subject.

## SUMMARY

This chapter has to do with the Matrix of relationships which enslaves us. Cypher was comparing his relationship with Trinity to her relationship with Neo. Neo was caught up in being distracted by the appeal of the beautiful blond in the red dress. The trap we lay for ourselves is our attempt to find the illusive feeling of completeness outside of ourselves, either in comparing ourselves to others or drawing from a mutually admiring relationship, called a romance. By expecting others to fulfill our need for feeling whole, we set ourselves up for more evidence that we are not whole. Our healing can come from two directions, one is expecting others to react to stress like children and the other direction is to recognize that we are, actually, eternal spirit beings who have never been and will never be anything but COMPLETE, called the pure love of Christ. When we come from our completeness and share it in our relationship, we demonstrate what love is all about.

# Chapter XVI

## THE MYSTERY OF NOT RESISTING EVIL

As the simulated Matrix scene is frozen in place by Tank, Neo realizes that the beautiful woman in the red dress that he had just seen a moment before had now become Agent Smith who was totally dedicated to his destruction. So he asks Morpheus who and what are these agents.

*Neo asks, "What are they?"*

*Morpheus explains, "Sentinel programs. They move in and out of any software still hardwired to their system. That means anyone we haven't unplugged is potentially an agent. Inside the Matrix, they are everyone and they are no one. We are survived by hiding from them and running from them. But they are the gatekeepers. They are guarding all the doors. They are holding all the keys, which means that sooner or later, someone is going to have to fight them. Neo, I won't lie to you. Every single man or woman who stood their ground, everyone who has fought an agent has died! But where they have failed, you will succeed."*

*Neo asks, "Why?"*

*"I have seen an agent punch through a concrete wall. Men have emptied entire clips at them and hit nothing but air. Yet their strength and their speed are still based on a world that is built on*

*rules. Because of that, they will never be as strong or as fast as you can be.”*

*“What are you trying to tell me? That I can dodge bullets?”*

Morpheus answers, “*No, Neo. What I am trying to tell you is that when you are ready, you won’t have to!*”

## EVERY PERSON IS A POTENTIAL AGENT

When Neo sees Agent Smith, it is the first time in this episode that he realizes he is in a training simulation instead of the real Matrix. He is told the purpose of this program. **“It is another training program designed to teach you one thing — if you are not one of us, you are one of them.”**

Potentially, every person in the Matrix can be taken over by one of the incredibly powerful and murderous agents. So when Neo asks what are the agents, he is told, **“Sentinel programs. They move in and out of any software still hardwired to their system. That means anyone we haven’t unplugged is potentially an agent. Inside the Matrix, they are everyone and they are no one.”**

This fact is another part of the lesson Neo is being shown that if we expect to find ultimate security outside of ourselves, we are set up for bitter disappointment. The agents are “sentinel programs.” What does that mean? A sentinel is a guard, like a sentry. The Matrix is designed like a prison. Partaking of the Tree of Knowledge and coming under the Fall was not designed to be an innocent, temporary detour. The Fall is for real! It was designed to function like an imprisonment that lasts, as it is made to appear, *forever*. There was to be no escape by resisting it for as the saying goes, what *we resist, persists*. Escape had to come another way, but that other way can only be discovered by failing to make resistance work.

So Neo is told, **“We are survived by hiding from them and running from them. But they are the gatekeepers. They are guarding all the doors. They are holding all the keys, which means that sooner or later, someone is going to have to fight them.”**

## RESIST NOT EVIL!

Christ said in the Sermon on the Mount, “Resist not evil.” (Matthew 5:27) Then what do we do with evil? We stand up to evil, but not contend. One way to stand up to evil without resisting it comes from understanding and love, the other comes from anger and hate. Outwardly, the two actions may look the same, but inwardly they are worlds apart. That is what Neo was going to finally learn.

As Morpheus warned, **“Neo, I won’t lie to you. Every single man or woman who stood their ground, everyone who has fought an agent has died! But where they have failed, you will succeed.”**

Neo wanted to know how he could succeed where others had always failed. Morpheus explained, **“I have seen an agent punch through a concrete wall. Men have emptied entire clips at them and hit nothing but air. Yet their strength and their speed are still based on a world that is built on rules. Because of that, they will never be as strong or as fast as you can be.”**

What does Morpheus mean that because of the Man-Made World being built on rules, the agents will never be as strong or as fast as he can be? The reason is that the rules are based upon absolute knowledge of right and wrong, true or false, good and evil. Since this knowledge is seen as self-evident reality, it is rigid and inflexible. It cannot be bent when the need arises. That is why Jesus compared one who is born of the Spirit to the wind in contrast to the inflexibility of the law. As Morpheus had explained in the simulated Kung Fu room, **“This is a sparing program, similar to the programmed reality of the Matrix. It has the same basic rules, rules like gravity. What you must learn is that these rules are no different than the rules of a computer system. Some of them can be bent. Others can be broken. Understand?”**

But Neo, even now, has yet to truly understand. As he remembers his failure in the Kung Fu experience and the frightening failure of the Jump, he found it hard to believe his mentor. Almost jokingly, he asks, **“What are you trying to tell me? That I can dodge bullets?”**

Morpheus answered, simply but definitely, **“No, Neo. What I am trying to tell you is that when you are ready, you won’t have to!”**

It took Neo some time to become *“ready”*, for he had to die first. He had to get his fill of resisting evil to finally see that evil, like beauty, is only in the eye of the beholder.

## SQUIDIC MACHINES ATTACK

At this point, Morpheus receives an urgent call from Tank in the spaceship. There is a serious problem. Morpheus and Neo return to their bodies in the control room. The ship is under attack by a small but powerful fleet of enemy crafts from the A. I. Machines. As Dozer, at the spacecraft's controls, spins the ship down a series of narrow tunnels in an effort to escape, Morpheus asks him, "Has Zion sent word?"

Dozer answers that another Zion ship alerted them to the danger of a roving packet of squidic machines being in the area. This emergency confuses Neo, so he asks what "squidic" means. Trinity answers him, "*They are killing machines looking for one thing.*"

Morpheus adds, "Search and destroy." Then he instructs Dozer to land the spaceship. "Set her down right over there."

As the spaceship lands, Morpheus asks Tank who is operating the computer systems, "How are we doing, Tank?"

Tank, after a few moments, as the lights in the room and on the monitor screens darken, answers, "We're offline. "EMP off! Get ready."

Neo quietly asks about the meaning of EMP. Trinity explains, "Electric Magnetic Pulse. It disables any electric system in the blast radius. It is the only defense we have against the machines."

As Tank turns the EMP on and it begins to take effect, the squidic machines start losing their power. Then Neo notices that the spacecraft is resting in a darkened, congested space, and ask, "Where are we?"

Trinity answers, "We are in a sewer, a waste system. There used to be cities that extended hundreds of miles. Now these sewers are all that is left of them."

Morpheus sternly interrupts, commanding them to be quiet. Gradually, we watch the squidic machines, without power, drift off.

### GOD DOES NOT PROMISE US A ROSE GARDEN

This critical scene has an important message. Even in the spaceship, the crew knows that the agents have allies in the form of marauding killing machines. However, we are shown that the spaceship has an effective defense, called the EMP, Electro Magnetic Pulse. By landing the craft, converting it from a hovercraft to a sitting dud, they can turn all systems off and then activate a powerful electro magnetic pulse field that deactivates all electronic systems in the blast area, including their own. At the conclusion of the movie, we see how powerfully destructive these machines, which look like giant squids, can be when the EMP cannot be used. So what does all of this represent?

It symbolizes that, no matter how enlightened we might be, none of us are immune from attack by elements of the Man-Made World in which we live. The life of Christ and many other prophets of God demonstrate this fact. The world is a dangerous place. Circumstances often arise when difficulties compound, either by natural catastrophic events, mechanical failures, financial disruptions, health complications or a variety or combination of many others. But probably the most potentially disturbing situations arise when other people become frightened and feel it is necessary to turn the world against us. So in this scene, Neo is going to learn an interesting lesson.

As Morpheus explained when he and Neo were walking on the busy sidewalk in the simulated Matrix, "What do you see? Businessmen, teachers, lawyers, carpenters — the very minds of the people we are trying to save. But until we do, these people are still a part of that system, and that makes them our enemies. You have to understand that most of these people are not ready to be unplugged. And many of them are so inert, so hopelessly dependent upon the system, that they will fight to protect it."

### THREE WAYS TO DEAL WITH NEGATIVE ENERGY

When people are under attack by negative forces, there are three types of responses:

1. RETURNERS, who return the negative force by resistance.
2. ABSORBERS , who absorb the negative force by submission.
3. NEUTRALIZERS, who destroy the negative force by Agape-Love.

Generally speaking, there are two kinds of people in the world, those who frequently fight back and those who usually give in. The first, by returning negative energy with negative actions are the **RETURNERS**. To them, it is a dog-eat-dog world and no one is going to get away with being mean or unfair to them. These kinds of people are usually very healthy because they do not suppress their anger. They let it out, but because of that, most people have a hard time living with them.

Then there are those who seldom show their anger because they stuff it inside, keeping a sweet, peaceful exterior. They are the **ABSORBERS**. Usually, their lives seem so Christ-like because they usually are so congenial, with a relatively high flash point. Yet, they are often sick because their suppressed anger is tearing them apart on the inside.

Some psychologists have caught onto this game and create a very profitable practice. When the “Returners” come to them with their sad tales of how their personal relationships are such disasters, the therapy is to teach them to become “Absorbers.” As the therapy takes hold, their clients discover a wonderful new life. Their relationships with others soon become transformed. People are amazed at how they have become reasonable and kind. But these transformed Returners are often getting sick. So eventually, a number of years later, they may return to the therapist, who solves their health problems by teaching them how to fight back, stand up for their rights and show the world. Of course, this is also the therapy offered to the milk toast clients, the Absorbers, who first come to them with their health problems. By making them Returners, their health improves but few of their friends can stand them any more.

### **DESTROYING NEGATIVE ENERGY THROUGH UNDERSTANDING**

Fortunately, as demonstrated by the use of EMP by the Nebuchadnezzar, there is a third alternative, which is neither to return nor to hold the negative energy, but to neutralize it. How do we do this? Simply by Agape-Love, which is defined on its functional level as *true understanding*, or more grandly, as *spiritual or Christ understanding*. The concept of Agape “understanding” on the functional level is so simple that it is deceptive. Just as each of us believes, down deep, we are a loving person, so each of us believes we really do understand others. In fact, that is what is behind all the five lies of the mind. Each lie claims to be the true understanding—(1) what is really not to my advantage, (2) why others are doing what they are doing, (3) what is happening at a distance, (4) how things ought to be different than they are, and (5) what is going to happen in the future. We can see the foolishness of these conclusions in others, but they are very hard to see such foolishness in ourselves. A wise man once said that there are only two kinds of people in the world.

**Those we love, and  
those we don't understand.**

What is it we fail to understand about others when we do not love them? We fail to understand that what the “others” are doing, in the way they are seeing their universe, is exactly what we are doing in ours, and to them, what they are doing looks just as justified to them as what we are doing looks to us. So let's look again at the way we are confused in our ordinary concept of what we think “love” is all about.

### **ONE KIND OF LOVE CREATES FEAR, ANOTHER KIND OF LOVE DESTROYS FEAR**

To review, *Phileo*, one of the Greek words we translate as “love,” describes the feelings of approval, adoration and sympathy. But *Phileo* does not cast out fear, but actually enhances it because of the *fear of loss*. *Agape*, another Greek word we translate as “love,” is not a feeling at all, but a depth of understanding by which one discovers that all of us, in our natural, human state, are really very much alike because we are all doing, basically, the same thing. That identical thing is that whatever we are doing, at the time we do it, we feel that *it is either right, proper or at least justified*. It is for this reason that, once we truly understand ourselves, we can truly understand others. It is a simple fact that we cannot really understand another person without sensing a unity and oneness with that person. *That sense of oneness is called agape.*

In the New Testament, as we have it in the Greek language, we are never commanded to “phileo” God or our neighbors as ourselves. We are commanded to “agape” God and our neighbors as we agape ourselves. Those who are OF the Man-Made World, since it is built on the knowledge of absolute, non-compromising right and wrong, cannot have a perfect love, try as they may. Only perfect love, agape, casts out fear. Let’s read the profound words of John again:

**God is love [agape]; and he that dwelleth in love [agape] dwelleth in God, and God in him. Herein is our love [agape] made perfect, that we may have boldness in the day of judgment because as He is, so are we in this world.**

**There is no fear in love [agape]; but perfect love casteth out fear; because fear hath torment. He that feareth is not made perfect in love [agape]. (I John 4:16-18)**

So, as a Neutralizer, how do we destroy negative energy? *We zap it with agape!* We understand that what others are doing to us, that from their position, from the way they are experiencing us, what they are doing they feel is very appropriate and necessary. Of course, from our point of view, we may totally disagree with them, but we cannot hate them when we understand that what they are doing in their way is exactly what we are doing in our way. Thus it is that we cannot truly understand another person and still hate them. Instead, through understanding, we have a sense of empathy and compassion. But this is different than sympathy. Sympathy is identifying ourselves and others as victims. As infinite beings, we are anything but victims, for we are Life, and Life is Source.

### **TRUE CREATION TAKES PLACE ONLY IN AN ENERGY VACUUM**

So we see that when negative energy comes our way, we do not have to return it as anger or revenge. Nor do we need to hold it, stuffing it down so that we do not offend or fail to please. Instead, we can neutralize it by agape-understanding, simply recognizing that the situation is the result of the other people expressing their fears and needs.

Once we have destroyed the negative energy, then, and only then, are we free to create a response that is not based on fear. What we do may be different or the same as the Returner would do, or in contrast, what the Holder would do. From other people’s view, we might appear to be just like them. But because we are coming from an entirely neutral space, what we do will usually have very different results. The reason is that our true reality is never what we DO, but the SPACE we are in when we DO IT. What we are BEING is the critical factor. When we are in the light, everything about what we do is different, even though it may appear to others as the same. The reason is that we are not coming from negative energy, called the darkness, but from positive energy, called the Light.

We cannot create Light out of darkness by either type of reacting to negative energy. If we do, all we are doing is stirring up by returning or holding more of what it is. That is why Christ said not to resist evil.

### **WE NEUTRALIZE NEGATIVE ENERGY THROUGH THE UNDERSTANDING OF AGAPE**

We destroy negative energy by perfectly acknowledging it for what it is, that it is a totally “right, proper or justified” action from the sender’s point of view. ZAP! It no longer exists as negative energy in our universe. As for this particular event, we have stepped out of the Matrix. When we destroy negative energy, a vacuum is left. It is only in a vacuum that we can truly *create* anything.

This is what is being symbolized in the spaceship’s response to the attack. Instead of fighting back or taking the deadly blows, Morpheus has the spaceship land and turn everything off, including the activity by the crew. Then they turn on the EMP, the electro-magnetic pulse, symbolizing the neutralizing power of *understanding*. Let’s remember, doing so is neither good nor bad, in and of itself. It just is. Everything in the blasting radius ceases to function, i.e., ceases to have the capacity to really destroy who we really are, for we are infinite, eternal beings. So the squidic machines become passive and gradually drift away. When that happens, the spaceship can get back on its mission and deal with the Matrix on its own terms again.

### **SUMMARY**

To resist evil is not only a natural result of the Tree of Knowledge of Good and Evil, it is considered one of the higher virtues of the natural man. Yet, what we resist does persist, thus the world continues to be covered in the darkness of contention, confusion and fear. However, those who

try to copy Christ by accepting abuse through trying to ignore it, usually become ill. The former are the Returners, the later are the Absorbers, and each pays in their different ways. The alternative is to destroy that energy through Agape-Love, which means to see that what others are doing, they believe is either right, proper or justified, therefore the energy is destroyed through understanding, or as we have learned, circular thinking. Once a person has neutralized the negative energy in this way, that person is free to create a response that is truly appropriate for the situation.

## Chapter XVII

### CYPHER'S ROLE AS AN INNER SABOTEUR

The next two scenes involve Cypher. He plays a critical role in the story. Even in the very first scene during his phone conversation with Trinity, he is Neo's enemy who wants him dead. Yet, in contrast to the agents, he is an active, tested member of the Morpheus' crew. His part in the story is that of a traitor, which is an essential role someone must fulfill if Neo is finally to face the Matrix alone.

#### NEO'S CASUAL VISIT WITH CYPHER

After the battle with the squidic machines, Neo is free to wander around the spaceship. He happens to walk in on Cypher who is sitting at the massive computer systems that are tied into the Matrix programs. He is watching a group of monitors. The screens show computer strings of numbers and letters, rapidly moving down like a waterfall. Neo innocently comes up behind Cypher who lets out a startled cry. *"Whoa! You scared the bejeebies out of me."*

As Neo apologizes, Cypher replies, "Okay." As Neo looks at the streams of data flowing down the display, he asks, "Is that the..."

Cypher, anticipating his question, interrupts, "*The Matrix?*"

Neo asks, "*Do you always look at it and decode it?*"

"Well, you have to. The imaging translators work for the Construct program. But there is way too much information to decode the Matrix. You get used to it. I don't even see the code. All I see are blondes, brunets and red heads."

Then Cypher plays the role of a gracious host and suggests, "*Hey, do you want a drink?*"

Neo accepts the offer. As he pours Neo a drink, Cypher takes this chance to make a very personal inquiry. "*You know, I know what you are thinking. In fact, I have been thinking the same thing. In fact, I have been thinking it ever since I got here. Why, oh why didn't I take the blue pill?*"

As Neo takes a drink, he coughs and gasps for air.

Cypher laughs with glee, "*Good shit, isn't it? Dozer makes it. Good for two things; degreasing engines and killing brain cells. Can I ask you something? Did he tell you why he did it? Why you are here?*"

When Neo acknowledges yes, Cypher exclaims, "*Gee! What a mind job! So you are here to save the world! Wow! What do you say to something like that?*" After a pause, he adds, "*A little piece of advice. You see an agent, you do what we do. Run! Run your ass off.*"

As Neo starts to leave, he politely says, "*Thanks for the drink.*"

Cypher adds, "*Sweet dreams,*" and turns to finish Neo's drink

#### CYPHER REPRESENTS OUR TRAITOR FROM WITHIN

What startled Cypher so much when Neo entered the room? Very likely it was because he was secretly making arrangements to transmit himself back into the Matrix as crew members frequently did, but Cypher had a secret agenda which was to meet and make a deal with Agent Smith. Yet,

interestingly, his parting words to Neo are to advise him to have nothing to do with the agents. His counsel was not to fight them nor serve them, but just run away from them. Cypher knows better than to fight them but, at the same time, he has become tired of running from them. So now he is getting ready to join the agents by betraying Morpheus. In the short range, his betrayal resulted in a terrible disaster. But looking at the larger picture, if he had not done so, Neo and Trinity would never have had the opportunity to face their critical climax of separateness in Neo's death and thereby break through to higher consciousness.

There is a part of each of us that plays that role of saboteur. It is that part of our inner program that becomes impatient for the final, utopian breakthrough we believe we are to achieve. But this too is right on schedule. Without that impatience, we could never be set up to fall flat on our faces, an essential step to gaining a truly "*broken heart and contrite spirit*"

As the story progresses, we see that all of the group, including Morpheus, are unconscious of the real significance of Cypher's betrayal, but possibly not the Oracle. Consciously or unconsciously, she played her part in setting all of them up to experience blindly their essential individual roles. But let's also remember that Cypher symbolizes one of our inner personalities, which is a traitor

### THE DISTRACTIONS WE FIND TO SOOTH THE PAIN

As Cypher answers Neo's questions about the computer display as to whether he was busy decoding the Matrix transmission, he admitted that the Matrix is far too complex for anyone to fully understand the Man-Made World. But what has Cypher done over his nine-year enlistment? As his anxiety gradually increased, he distracts himself by dreaming about the girls, as he described, "**You get used to it. I don't even see the code. All I see are blondes, brunets and red heads.**"

There are many ways to find artificial peace of mind, and Cypher represents one of them, which is to give up caring. But he also symbolizes the danger of that indifference. Since the problems don't usually go away by just ignoring them, our inner saboteur is tempted to join the enemy. There are many ways to do this. One is laziness, but Cypher is not that. More likely it is something he offers Neo when he asks him if he would like a drink. Evidently, alcohol is one of the ways Cypher has used to get away from the tormentor of believing he made the wrong choice. He assumes Neo has been going through the same torment, as he explains, "**You know, I know what you are thinking. In fact, I have been thinking the same thing. In fact, I have been thinking it ever since I got here. Why, oh why didn't I take the blue pill?**"

This is the number one question of eternal torment — "Did I do the right thing?" Of course, he is ignorant of what kind of life the blue pill would have provided. It's the old illusion that "ignorance is bliss," which is what Cypher says to Agent Smith a bit later. It is the old adage, "What you don't know won't hurt you." But these are the lies of the Man-Made World. Ignorance keeps individuals chained to the Matrix

But Cypher has learned to run from the pain. He assumes Neo must be going through the same thing, so notice how he tries to console what He believes is Neo's frustration. He asks, "**Can I ask you something? Did he tell you why he did it? Why you are here?**" When Neo acknowledges he has, Cypher exclaims, "**Gee! What a mind job! So you are here to save the world! Wow! What do you say to something like that?**"

### WE ALWAYS HAVE AT LEAST TWO FEELINGS ABOUT EVERYTHING

Let's face it. Neo must have also had those times when he wondered why he had walked into this new world. Sometimes he was so grateful and other times he was not so sure. Neo has not stayed in doubt for very long at a time, but Cypher has gradually been overcome with doubt and, consequently, was getting ready to abandon ship. So let's look at this question of a double mind. It has to do with one of our greatest ideals, that of being *sincere*.

Of all the positive qualities we want to be known for is the one of being a truly sincere type of person. We do not want people to think we are a hypocrite, one of those obviously two-faced people who is an insincere pretender. The reason is that hypocrisies in others can bug the daylights out of us when we get caught up in comparing what is with what it ought to be. But at the same time, most of us have a problem about our own insincerity. We believe that to be sincere about something, we should only have *one feeling* about it. So we assume others have only one feeling about things, so why don't we. When we have more than one feeling about something we care about, we judge

ourselves for failing to be sincere.

Would you like to get rid of that “problem” forever? You can, simply by remembering that because of our many different inner personalities, *we will always have two or more conflicting feelings about EVERYTHING*. Having different feelings about things is the very nature of the natural man’s double mind. The natural mind always works with opposites. That is what the Tree of Knowledge is all about, i.e., is this good or is this bad? Is this right or is it wrong? Is this going to be to my advantage or disadvantage? The truth is that there are ADVANTAGES and DISADVANTAGES to every question! The Man-Made World is not a black and white world as advertised. What we learn on the Tree of Life, the pure love of Christ, is that everything is relative to each person’s individual perception. So as we discover that we will always be aware of the two sides to every question, we stop worrying about opposing feelings about them and enjoy the show.

### **REAL SINCERITY HAS TO DO WITH CHOICES**

Actually, sincerity has nothing to do with feelings. *Sincerity has to do with a commitment to a CHOICE!* As the conscious mind becomes “the not knowing mind,” we realize that our conditioned mind has no idea, for sure, how things will work out, but since it sees interesting possibilities, it can choose to run an experiment. Sincerity is choosing to run the *experiment*. That “choosing” is the *making up the mind*. There is no workable substitute for making up the mind. Once the choice is made with determined commitment, the individual is truly on board. He is sincere. That doesn’t mean that as more information is gathered, he will stay on board. He is not a slave today for a commitment he made yesterday. A conscious person is a spontaneous person. That can create great consternation among his neighbors who are stuck to fixed positions in an attempt to prove their “sincerity,” even though they too have more than one feeling about their involvement.

The Matrix demands unyielding consistency, even though one person’s consistency will be in contradiction to the consistency of other people. The enlightened person is not concerned about being wrong at times and freely admits to recognizing error. He is at peace with a mind that has many feelings about everything, seeing that there are advantages and disadvantages to every choice, such as the price to *pay* and the *rewards* he might receive if he does. So instead of asking the three questions of eternal torment like Cypher, he asks the question of eternal aliveness. “*What am I interested in experimenting with today?*”

### **BEING ANOINTED TO SAVE THE WORLD**

Cypher has identified for Neo the major hook that traps the students into a double bind on the Spiritual Level of the Tree of Knowledge. On the Spiritual Level, as persons begin to receive more personal inspiration, even visions and possibly angelic visitations, they may gradually begin to believe that they are being given such great knowledge because they are being called to, first *help*, then finally *lead* the introduction of this greater light to transform the world.

Finally, they begin to realize, ever so “humbly,” that they have been “anointed” to a great mission. Undoubtedly, when Cypher had first come aboard, he too felt that he was an important part of releasing the world from the Matrix, but gradually he has moved further and further away from the “impossible dream of reaching the unreachable star.” So even though he probably was never told that he might be the “One,” he can sympathize with what he thinks Neo must be going through.

### **DO YOU WANT TO HAVE A DRINK?**

As Neo had been wandering around the spaceship day after day, he could have become a little bored. Now, nothing seemed to be happening. So when Cypher asked him if he wanted to soften his senses with some desensitizing alcohol, he said yes.

Whereas Cypher had learned to tolerate the strong drink, Neo almost choked, coughing and gasping for air. Cypher laughed, “**Good shit, isn’t it. Dozer makes it. Good for two things; degreasing engines and killing brain cells**” Although he must have been kidding, he was probably about right. The many distractions available to us in life do have some practical applications, but they are deadening to the joy and exhilarating awesomeness of seeing the Man-Made World as the masterpiece of the divine planning that it is.

Yes, we are in the Man-Made World where we make a living, raise a family, participate in Church, watch the six o’clock news, and the many other functions of life. Being committed to a

productive life, all of us can and do easily forget that this is a divine Construct and our mortality is not really who we are. But that is okay too. That is what we came down here for. Yes, and distractions are useful too. They are all part of the wonderful game of life. And we can all fall off the wagon of consciousness occasionally by thinking we are victims of unkind circumstances. But as we grow in *objective consciousness*, the delight in the great dramas going on the stage of life becomes so entertaining and interesting that distractions serve less and less value. So as Neo recovers from the drink, he thanks Cypher for it and leaves. Soon, Cypher does the same, which is the movie's next scene.

### CYPHER MAKES A DEAL WITH AGENT SMITH

The next scene takes place in a very lush restaurant in the Matrix, with Cypher Reagon having a steak dinner with Agent Smith.

Agent Smith, with dark glasses, asks, “*Do we have a deal, Mr. Reagon?*”

Cypher, without dark glasses, responds philosophically, “*You know, I know this steak doesn't exist. I know that when I put it in my mouth, the Matrix is telling my brain that it is juicy and delicious. After nine years, you know what I realize?*” As he pauses to take a bite of his medium-rare steak, he chews and sighs delightfully, “*Ooooh! Ignorance is bliss!*”

Agent Smith smiles and confidently declares, “*Then we have a deal!*”

Cypher, also speaking with a confident smile on his face, lays out his conditions. “*I don't want to remember nothing. Nothing! You understand? I want to be rich. You know, someone important, like an actor.*”

Agent Smith assures him, “*Whatever you want, Mr. Reagon.*”

“*Okay. Give my body back to the power plant; reinsert me into the Matrix. I'll give you what you want.*”

Agent Smith replies, “*Access codes to the Zion mainframe.*”

“*No. I told you. I don't know them. I can get you the man who does.*”

Agent Smith, satisfactorily replies, “*Morpheus.*”

### SEEING CYPHER'S BETRAYAL FROM HIS POINT OF VIEW

Although this is a very short scene, it demonstrates a critical aspect to the story. Here is a talented, dutiful member of Morpheus' crew, a nine year veteran, who is not only going to betray the spaceship and all of its crew, but will open the door to the total destruction of Zion in the process. Why? Is he crazy? No! Anything but insane. He knows exactly what he is doing. Then what is he doing? He has reached the point where he sees the whole struggle of Zion as not only a lost cause, but also a worthless one at that. He has finally decided that there really is nothing wrong with the Matrix after all. If Zion would just leave it alone, the Artificial Intelligent Machines can do a much better job of running the world than frail and visionary human beings can. Besides, he has concluded that the Real World is never going to win over the Matrix anyway. The odds are too great.

So Cypher feels he has become the only sane member of the crew and will receive a sweet life in the Matrix by cooperating with the agents. There will be no regrets for there will be no memory. He will be rich and famous, so what would be wrong with that? That is why Cypher is not wearing dark glasses. He wants to be hypnotized by the Man-Made World. But, interestingly, Agent Smith is wearing his dark glasses. Does he know something that Cypher does not? Yes, and he confesses his agony when he has captured Morpheus and has him under his control. A hidden black-hole is something inherent in the Matrix because it is built around a world of opposites.

Yet, Agent Smith is promising Cypher that he could have anything he wants. Well, Cypher wants to be rich and famous. Yes, wealth and fame can be provided in the Matrix with no problem — but such is not the real treasures of life. The real treasures are *infinite and pure love, joy and peace*. As Agent Smith had observed, “**I believe that as a species, human beings** [as created in the Matrix] **find their reality through misery and suffering.**” That is the nature of separateness, living in opposites, functioning as an automated stimulus-reaction machine, which is continually struggling for the non-disturbed state of the Four Dual Basic Urges — to gain comfort and escape pain on each of the four levels; physically, emotionally, intellectually and interpersonally.

## CYPHER'S BETRAYAL IS NOT SUDDEN

There is always a part of us, actually a very key part of us, that would often be willing to give anything for the utopian ideal of comfort and peace. In fact, like Cypher, this is the part of us that would like to destroy the “Neo and Trinity” parts of us which are the seekers of our true purpose. Yet this Cypher-part of us is not the part that is functioning as the Luciferian trinity — the Accuser, Blamer and Complainier. Cypher represents the zealous-seeker part of us. He is a hard worker and is filled with zeal and determination. But he is still caught up in the *ideals* of the spiritual level of the Tree of Knowledge, comparing what is with what it ought to be. Failure to reach these ideals creates a sense of frustration and discouragement for not being able to consistently enjoy the spiritual highs we may have experienced from time to time.

So the Cypher part of us would rather do anything that will help us have those emotional highs more continually. After all, our *feelings* are still what we see as our *real self*, so to feel good remains our top priority. Searching for more satisfying feelings may take many different directions, depending upon the choices available.

## HOW WE WORSHIP SPIRITUAL FEELINGS

There is a temptation to go back to the exciting magic in the Second Level on the Spiritual Law instead of our continuing to work through the obstacles of seeing our idealistic illusions. So we may increase our meditations, affirmations, spiritual visualizing or energy work. As far as inter-personal relationships, we may become fascinated with “romance,” enjoying a feeling of oneness in ways we have never known before — such deep sensations of pseudo-completeness. Romance, as discussed earlier, is what the world calls “love.” Then as our feelings of romantic union are sometimes deepened by spiritual experiences, “romance” is interpreted as divinity itself.

Some people find great comfort in doing intensive dream interpretation. Others may go deeply into knowing the future, like everything from astrology and numerology to taro cards and fortune tellers. Also, as we experience spiritual manifestations, visions and other forms of peak experiences, whether spontaneously or induced through fasting, chemistry or going without sleep, we tend to see them as evidence of our spiritual attainment. Even harmless activities such as reading novels and watching many forms of sports and entertainment can be effective distractions from holding onto the Iron Rod of the chastening Christ. Not that any of these activities are bad, in and of themselves, but their use as distractions can be compelling if we are trying to find relief from the ever-increasing “not knowing mind.”

So Cypher has finally accepted the superiority of the so-called glory of the Man-Made World reality and the futile struggle of the Real World reality, the infinite world of Spirit. Even though he admits that the Matrix is merely a construct, that it exists only in the computer programming of our brains, he wants Agent Smith to know that he is to remember nothing about the Real World. So he says, “**After nine years, you know what I realize? Ooooh! Ignorance is bliss!**”

## WHAT IS MEANT BY THE ACCESS CODES TO THE ZION MAINFRAME?

Remember, Agent Smith represents that part of our conditioning which creates all of our struggle, conflict and resistance because he keeps telling us that there is something very wrong with the world.

The access codes to the Zion Mainframe are the ultimate antidote to the Matrix. But what does Zion’s Mainframe have that limits the destructive power of the agents? Symbolically, Zion’s Mainframe computer is infinite intelligence of the light of Christ, which gives life to all things.

Those codes represent the discoveries of the many dimensions of who we are. Those discoveries are plural because we are multi-dimensional individualizations of Infinite Spirit, the Light of Truth. This can only be revealed experientially and progressively by “Zion’s mainframe,” i.e., the *heart’s inner knowing*. The source of this inner knowing (not thinking) is our Heavenly Father. This teaching-function of the Father is called His covenant, even His New Covenant. This is His promise to all of those in the Matrix that there is a way to escape even while we are here, but it can only be known experientially, directly rather than conceptually. I cover these ideas about the New Covenant in greater detail in Section II, *Book II of A blessing Hitherto Unknown*, Chapters XV to XX.

## THE THREE PHASES OF DISCOVERING THAT EVERYTHING IS RIGHT ON SCHEDULE,

Just as Judas needed to betray Christ, Cypher needed to betray Morpheus. It is easy for us to see that fact when we look at the movie as a whole. The same thing is true about our own lives, which we can discover in three steps or phases.

**FIRST PHASE** We can see how our valleys were the way we found the peaks. We begin to break the chains of fear when we see how everything in our life was necessary to bring us to where we are at this time.

**SECOND PHASE** Then we can begin to realize that what was true in our past must certainly be true in our present. So we gradually begin to realize that this too must be working out perfectly, right on schedule in our present, moment by moment. When we are able to live in the present this way, we have entered the Second Phase of inner peace.

**THIRD PHASE** The Third Phase of Inner Peace is next. We begin to realize that if the Lord's careful, loving hand was in our life in the past and is in our present life, then He will certainly be in charge of our life in our future. So the future will be perfect, just the way it is, with nothing to fear.

Cypher believed his cleverness would set him up for eternal happiness and let the others, being less brilliant than he, fall into oblivion. His justification for his betrayal is certainly logical, even though it is grossly flawed. It demonstrates the fallibility of all "conclusions" based on logic. Remember, logic always starts with an *assumption* and then ends with a *conclusion*. The assumption is only a guess, at best, so the conclusion is nothing more than that, even though it is taken as "fact." We can see how God's hand was even in this as well.

In the next scene, which is in the dining room of the spaceship, Cypher is not present. We learn later that he is working on his job with Morpheus helping lay the groundwork for Neo's visit with the Oracle. It must have been then that Cypher could see his chance to fulfill his promise to Agent Smith of betrayal.

## SUMMARY

Cypher demonstrates how the zealous, impatient part of our being a seeker can make spiritual feelings more desirable than staying the course of discovering the illusions of our conclusions. Just as Cypher has been taking shortcuts all along, and now totally betrays the cause of Zion, there is a part of us that falls into spiritual traps. One is to believe that having two feelings about anything is a failure to have the ideal of sincerity. Another is to find ways of inducing more glorious spiritual feelings. The other is to abandon the search all together and find a way to surrender to the Man-Made World. But the true antidote is to move beyond the illusions of feelings and progress through the three phases of recognizing that since the past can now be seen as perfect, the present and future will naturally be the same. It is then that we understand the nature of the codes of Zion, which is to infinite peace to be resident in the heart.

# Chapter XVIII

## DAY TO DAY LIFE IN THE SPACESHIP

Neo is now an established member of the crew. Little do any of them know that Cypher has already set them up for destruction. While the crew is eating breakfast, Cypher is in another part of the ship working with Morpheus in making arrangements for Neo's visit with the Oracle.

### THE BREAKFAST OF CHAMPIONS

The crew is eating what looks like soupy but lumpy Cream of Wheat cereal. On the right side of the table are Neo, Mouse, and Trinity. Those across the table are Tank, white haired Switch, her buddy Apoc and big, quiet Dozer. All the men have knit caps on to ward off the cold, showing that life in the spaceship is not luxurious.

Tank, one of the two naturals, is at a dispenser pouring the thick liquid into a black dish for

Neo, and says, as he hands it to him, “*There you go buddy, the Breakfast of Champions.*”

Mouse, one of the programmers, sitting next to Neo, smilingly comments, “*You can close your eyes and it almost feels like you are eating scrambled eggs.*”

Apoc, from across the table, sarcastically interjects, “*Or a bowl of snot.*”

Mouse, ignoring Apoc’s negative comment, speaks to Neo, “*Do you know what the meal reminds me of? Taste-O-Wheat. Did you ever eat Taste-O-Wheat?*”

Switch, interrupting, answers for Neo, “*No, but technically, neither did you.*”

Mouse responds, “*No, but that is my point. Now how do machines really know what Taste-O-Wheat really tasted like? What I thought Taste-O-Wheat tasted like may have tasted like oatmeal or tuna fish. That makes you wonder about a lot of things. Take chicken, for example. Maybe they had a lot of trouble figuring out what to make chicken taste like, which is why chicken tastes like everything. Maybe they just figured out....*”

Apoc, losing patience with Mouse’s constant chatter, quietly tells him to shut up.

But then Dozer, from the end of the table, adding some servility into the discussion for Neo, says quietly and professionally, “*It is a single celled protein combined with synthetic aminos, vitamins and minerals, everything the body needs.*”

Mouse, leeringly contradicts Dozer, “*It doesn’t have everything the body needs.*” He turns to Neo to ask him a question on a different subject, “*So I understand you have run through the Agent Training Program. You know, I wrote that program.*”

Apoc, interjects again, disgustingly, “*Here it comes!*”

Ignoring Apoc, Mouse enthusiastically asks Neo, “*So what did you think of her?*”

“*Of who?*”

“*The woman in the red dress. I designed her. She doesn’t talk very much, but if you would like to meet her, I could arrange a much more personalized inner visit.*”

Switch, sneeringly referring to Mouse, “*Visual pimp, hard at work!*”

Mouse, not being deterred, says, “*Pay no attention to these hypocrites, Neo. To deny our very impulses is to deny the very thing that makes us human.*”

## THE INNER TENSIONS OF THE AWAKENING PROCESS

The first thing we notice at this breakfast scene is that, although they are all living and working together, there is considerable hostility among the members of the crew. In any group, there will always tend to be clicks, gossiping, disagreements and even overt or covert jealousies. But what is often very surprising to students of enlightenment is that so much of this worldly contention is still going on in their own spiritual group. Remember, even at Christ’s Last Supper, “**there was also a strife among them, which of them should be accounted the greatest.**” When I was working with my teacher and his extensive group, I found the same thing going on among even his most, so called, advanced students.

This example of sarcastic and competitive interplay among the crew is also symbolic of our own inner tensions between those different aspects of our growing consciousness. Remember, part of the crew, as the movie opened, wanted to kill Neo, either because he was a threat to their superior status or they thought Morpheus was wrong in thinking Neo might be the One. Trinity was not a part of their conspiracy and, probably, neither was Mouse. We notice that Morpheus does not try to control the attitudes of his crew, nor does he expect them to give up their individual differences, but he does expect them to follow his specific orders. But, whether he knows it or not, he has a rebellion among three of his crew because their old Matrix conditioning still wants to claim preeminence. As we discussed earlier, these same kinds of inner contentions are the reasons why we have two or more feelings about everything, including our spiritual, religious or social activity.

## IT IS ALL IN THE EYE OF THE BEHOLDER

We notice that whereas Mouse sees the food as a good opportunity to use his imagination, Apoc sees it only in the most negative association, comparing it to snot from a running nose. Whereas, one of the crew is finding the meal great, another is having a hard time even swallowing it. Yet the food is the same food. As we have observed, not only is beauty in the eye of the beholder, but what is seen as ugly and distasteful also is in the eye of the beholder. So in whatever way we see the world, it is of our own creation through our own individual interpretation. So actually, since we all see the world

differently, none of us live in exactly the same Man-Made World of the Matrix. Yet, the natural, mechanically conditioned mind believes that the way it sees things is the way, and the only way, they REALLY are.

### **OUR “INNER SHOW” IS ONE OF THE BEST SHOWS IN TOWN**

What do we do about inner turmoil and conflicting feelings which we all have from time to time? Well, the last thing we will want to do is to try to force inner harmony by trying to *control* our thoughts. Why? For the simple reason that *what we resist, persists*. In contrast, the way to solve our inner conflicts is by the same process through which we “neutralize” the negative energy aimed at us by others. We can quickly vaporize those inner conflicts, not with condemnation and struggle, but with Agape-Love, i.e., *understanding*. Instead of judging and resisting them, we just understand them. When we do, we can’t help but smile and accept the fact that we are always going to have some conflicting feelings about many things. So what! Without them, we would still not know how many idealistic illusions we are still believing to be true. So instead of judging and resisting those feelings, which makes them stronger, we can just notice them for what they are, *marvel* at the drama and *chuckle*. If we are not laughing at ourselves, we have gone back to sleep and forgotten the cosmic joke.

With Third Level understanding, we can see how each conclusion which produces inner conflict is a survivor of the ideals we previously harvested from the Tree of Knowledge. We merely remind ourselves that it was the confusion of the Tree of Knowledge we came on earth to experience. Instead of condemning the conflicts that are the fruit of that Tree, we acknowledge the inner struggles of our programming with appreciation and gratitude. Each of these negative feelings is part of *our getting our money’s worth from our pilgrimage into mortality*. In other words, we don’t need to make them bad. We experience them as interesting and useful, a continual reminder of our purpose on earth. As we do, these negative feelings just automatically resolve themselves. The circumstances do not have to change for the anxiety to disappear.

### **THE AUSTERE LIFE ON THE NEBUCHADNEZZAR**

As we mentioned earlier when Neo was taken into the Construct, we noticed that although the crew could use the Construct to create anything they needed in the Matrix, they apparently could not do the same for their life in the spaceship. The ship seems to be made of rusting iron where even the clanking doors squeak. In an earlier scene, Trinity was taking off her welding helmet, so she must have been doing some critical repairs. The plainly furnished ship is crowded with a vast array of complex computers and other devices. Yet the temperature is so cold that the men wear knit caps and Tank, as the main, computer keyboard operator, has to wear gloves with only the fingers exposed. We observed from seeing Neo’s bedroom that the beds are narrow, hard slabs. Worst of all, probably, was the simplicity and monotony of the “snot-like” food, as Apoc called it. When they would beam themselves into the Matrix, they could use the Construct to enjoy fine food, good transportation, and excellent, appropriate clothing. As Morpheus had said, **“This is the Construct. It is our loading program. We can load anything from clothing, equipment, weapons, training simulations. Anything we need.”**

So what does all this mean? To me it represents that as we grow in consciousness, we are living in the same Man-Made World, but we begin to see the world and everything in it as manifestations of a perfect plan. Once we discover that we are not victims of the Matrix, but joint creators of it, the Matrix of the outside world appears in our life as one miracle after another. At the same time, our inner life can take a lot longer to experience the same sense of wholeness and abundance that we are able to observe on the outside. Following the “Iron Rod,” going through the Flaming Sword, experiencing the chastening of the Lord, is not designed to be a painless, luxurious inner process.

### **MOUSE, THE ROMANTIC**

For the first time we get acquainted with Mouse, one of the main programmers of the simulated training software. He is excited about having a new person to talk to about the Artificial Intelligence Machines that create the Matrix. Most of the crew think his intellectual speculations are just a waste of time, but Mouse is actually asking some interesting questions about life in the Man-Made World. We are all so conditioned by our life in the Matrix that we seldom wonder about the standards, ideas, ideals and machines that dominate our ordinary view of reality, like what is pretty or ugly, in or out,

right or wrong, good or bad. The Man-Made World is a structure of reality as created by the mechanical nature of our minds. Without realizing it, we believe that what we think is true IS TRUE, i.e., *to think a thing really does make it so*. Since adulthood, we have usually accepted our values as *self-evident facts*, like the old Dogberry cartoons, “As any fool can plainly see, *see!*”

So Mouse is not rejecting what is, just very curious. He wonders about the taste of the food, noticing how one’s imagination can make it taste like anything. He is not convinced that their food is the perfect food as Dozer claims, but instead, he believes it lacks many of the essential ingredients for health and vitality. Yet we notice how quickly he changes the subject with Neo by asking about his experience with the woman in the red dress. He eagerly brags to Neo that he can set him up in a romantic date with this luscious blond of his own creation. When Switch disgustingly calls Mouse a “visual pimp,” he defines her and other members of the crew as *hypocrites*. Why? Because he thinks that “**to deny our human impulses is to ignore the very thing that makes us human.**”

Whereas Cypher, Switch and Apoc seem to be taking the austere life on the spaceship too seriously, Mouse believes that it should be a lot more about fun and games, especially sexual games. In a later scene in the Matrix at the Bellview Apartments, just after Neo’s visit with the Oracle, Mouse is upstairs by the transit phone, printing big red kiss-marks on his colored picture of the blond woman, evidently having an imaginary, romantic interlude.

### THE PATHWAY OF SENSUAL DESIRES

So what does Mouse represent in our inner life? He is talented, playful, and believes that to deny our natural human impulses would be to continue the slavery of the Matrix. He believes in being free. He represents a playful part of each of us that wants to do the same. As we gradually move from a fixed knowledge of right and wrong, there is a powerful part of us that has been denied, not because we are that “good,” but because of our fear of being “bad,” thus “worthless.” As such fears diminish, the Mouse-part of us may begin to see many previous taboos as denied opportunities. Sexual feelings become more alive and limitations become less severe. This is a critical juncture, sooner or later, that most of us seem to go through. It is a part of the old way of being controlled by fear that will weaken and die. In this shift from religious rigidity to spiritual spontaneity, a new way of living by free choice will come more and more alive. In and of itself, it is inevitable in one way or another. This awakening is designed to provide greater aliveness. At the same time, it can provide powerful temptations that can unnecessarily mess up our lives. Marriages can break up, relationships can be damaged, activity in the Church can diminish and many old values can take a beating.

### UNDERSTANDING THE URGE TO GO BEYOND THE BOUNDS THE LORD HAS SET

As we have discussed, the Greek language used very specific words to define the different kinds of human feelings. They did not call sexual feelings phileo or agape, but the word they used was EROS. We use that Greek root in our English word “erotic,” meaning sexually stimulating. But we have no common word for sexual desire other than to call it love, i.e., “Let’s make love.”

The old constraints of our sexual feelings were, justifiably, largely based upon fear. Since perfect love casts out fear, there is an inevitable transition that must occur. As in the case of the first group in Lehi’s vision who reached the Tree of Life, even then, the journey can be disorienting. Remember, they had already been victorious in penetrating the mists of darkness on the strait and narrow path by following the Iron Rod. Yet, even after partaking of the Tree of Life, they still wandered off on a spiritual detour. Why? Perhaps they justified following their natural impulses like Mouse was suggesting. Yet, they would have to learn, sooner or later, that as their self-awareness became more liberated, their “very impulses” of “love” did not need to be the basis for sexual license.

Paul pled for the true believers in his day to be wise in their use of the liberty in Christ. He wrote:

**Ye have been called unto the liberty, only use not liberty for an occasion in the flesh, but by love serve one another...But if ye bite and devour one another, take heed that ye be not consumed one of another. This I say then, Walk in the Spirit, and ye shall not fulfill the lust of the flesh. For the flesh lusteth against the Spirit...Now the works of the flesh are manifest, which are these, adultery, fornication, uncleanness, lasciviousness, idolatry, witchcraft, hatred, variance, emulations, wrath, strife, seditions, heresies, envyings, mur-**

**ders, drunkenness, revelings, and such like...that they which do these things shall not inherit the kingdom of God** [continue partaking of the fruit of the Tree of Life]...**Let us not be desirous of vain glory, provoking one another, envying one another.** (Galatians 5:13-26)

So we see that Paul was warning his fellow Christians, those who were already risking their lives by belonging to the illegal Church of Christ, to refrain from using their “liberty in Christ” for costly libertarian detours. In the same way, Mouse, being the first crewmember killed, can remind us that as we throw off the chains of slavery, we need not throw away the armor of righteous. As Nephi said, even when the law was dead, he chose to keep the commandments. Why? Was he afraid not to? No, but because he respected God’s wisdom in asking us to follow reasonable and responsible guidelines, not out of fear of punishment nor for the promises of rewards, but out of love and respect for the wisdom of our Master.

### SUMMARY

The austere life on the Zion spaceship, where the food is poor, the clothes are worn out, the temperature is cold, and the relationships among the crew is hardly harmonious, symbolizes that passing through the Flaming Sword is not designed to be one of comfort, convenience and harmony. So it is with our inner process of moving from the rigid structure of the Tree of Knowledge to the fluid, spontaneous Tree of Life. There will be conflicting feelings, opinions, distractions and new kinds of temptations going on in both our mind and heart. The choice becomes easier when we allow ourselves to be fascinated by the show, and at the same time, choose to stay in activity and harmony with the Church’s guidelines. Detours may come up from time to time, but since they usually come at a heavy price, we do not need to throw the baby out with the bathwater.

## Chapter XIX

### LEAVING THE SPACESHIP TO ENTER THE MATRIX

At this point in the story, we are better acquainted with all the members of the crew. We were already acquainted with Morpheus, Trinity and Tank. Now we see that Cypher is taking on the Judas role. Apoc and Switch are quiet dissenters. Dozer is the studious, serious type. Mouse is the lively, curious romantic. But when does Neo get to see the Oracle? As Trinity told Cypher, Morpheus will take Neo when his student is ready. That time has arrived.

#### “WE ARE GOING IN”

Morpheus enters the dinning room, with Cypher right behind him, and says, “*Dozer, when you are done, bring the ship up to broadcast depth. We are going in. We’re taking Neo to see her.*”

Neo, puzzled, asks the group, “See who?”

Tank answers, with a twinkle in his eyes, “*The Oracle.*”

Trinity looks puzzled at Cypher who is standing silently behind Morpheus. He has a strange, awkward look on his face. He knows, probably with a great deal of inner anxiety, that he is about to betray his friends. He alone believes that the crew has just had their last breakfast.

We see the group locking themselves into their transition seats to make the mental transferal to the Matrix. Only Tank and Dozer are staying behind to run the ship. Tank, at the controls, playfully announces, “*Everybody observe. Fasten your seat belts. The no smoking sign has been turned on. Seats back.*”

The scene immediately changes to the same apartment building in the Matrix, the Bellview, where Morpheus first met Neo. As we find later, their headquarters rooms are on the eighth floor. As the six become present, the telephone on the table is ringing. Morpheus picks it up and reports to Tank in the spaceship, “*We are in.*”

All but Neo are wearing dark glasses. Mouse is left to stay in the back room by the exit phone. Since the building does not have an elevator, being a walk-up, the other five members of the crew

walk down the open stairwell of the eight flights of stairs, moving across the black and white tile on each floor. They exit the back of the brick building where an older, black Lincoln is waiting. With Cypher driving, Morpheus, Trinity and Neo join him in the car. Switch and Apoc are left waiting on the ramp at the back door.

We notice that as Cypher goes to the car, he secretly turns on his cell phone and throws it into a trash bin to provide a beacon so the agents can locate Morpheus' base of operation in the Matrix and trap him on his return. Morpheus instructs Switch and Apoc, who are left on guard on the platform, "We'll be back in an hour."

### GOING FROM SAFETY INTO DANGER

This scene is the beginning of the movie's climax, all of which takes place in a period of only a few hours. First, with help from the Construct, Morpheus and Cypher have made adequate preparations in the Matrix. Once they are up to broadcast depth, secure their physical bodies, they can transmit their digital identities into the Matrix. For the first time in the movie, we are shown more of the details of how the transition takes place. We see the team locking themselves into the restraints on their transition chairs so their bodies will be secure while they are, literally, going consciously out of body. Then we see them materializing in a relatively safe place, a room on the eighth floor of an old, abandoned apartment house, the Bellview.

As soon as the materialization is complete, Morpheus uses the exit phone to report that they are in. As we find later, they have used the Construct to provide a chest of fully armed guns that is left in the room with Mouse. A car, an older, well-preserved Lincoln sedan, is waiting outside. The hotel is located at least several miles from the place where the Oracle resides. We notice that two of the crew, Switch and Apoc, are armed and function as rear guards in this very dangerous, environment. Mouse is left at the exit phone, which is a safe communication link to the space ship, and he in turn can be in local cell phone contact with the rest of the crew. Now they are in enemy-held territory and the dangers, as we soon see, can be immense.

### MORPHEUS DID NOT NEED TO PROVE ANYTHING BY TAKING NEO INTO THE MATRIX

Morpheus knows that Neo must be taken from the *Third Vibratory Level* of living in the spaceship back into the Matrix of the *First Vibratory Level* in order to visit the *Oracle*, who is, believe it or not, on the *Second Vibratory Level*. If that surprises you, wait a bit and we will discuss that possibility in the next chapter.

So Morpheus did not choose to stay in the safety of the hovercraft, but chose to re-engage in the Man-Made World of the Matrix to take Neo on the dangerous mission of seeing the Oracle. Moving up out of the deep, calm realms, he has Dozer bring the ship up to broadcast depth and then take him and the crew into the Matrix. Spiritual awakening goes beyond needing to prove anything, especially being worthy. It is to see more and more clearly that we are already "worthy" because of His infinite love for us as His children.

Let's remember, there is nothing wrong about any of the first three levels, for they are essential preparation for the *Fourth Vibratory Level*. And, in turn, we do not need to leave a level to reach a higher level. Instead, we are freed from a level merely by seeing the illusions of that level, thus becoming free from the bondage of its needs, but we also continue to see the values of that level as free choices rather than needs. This is particularly true when we come to the Fourth Level, for if we then try to withdraw from participation on these other levels and to stay serenely on the Fourth Level, we would miss the real purpose of possessing God's greatest gift, the pure love of Christ.

### HOW THE FOUR LEVELS ARE INTEGRATED INTO ONE EFFECTIVE WHOLE

No one level is complete within its self. It is only when one stays involved in all the levels that we truly experience being complete. So let us look at how each level is integrated into the whole.

The First Level, which has to do with self-improvement by all of the natural abilities we have been blessed with, is the level at which we learn how to function more successfully in worldly affairs, whether it be family, church, business, sports, education or social activity. There is never a time when we cannot benefit by some personal self-improvement. Of course, if the ideals of self-

improvement are all we know, then we are stuck on that material and intellectual plane of life. Although that can be very satisfying and fulfilling at times, it limits our capacity to experience only our natural abilities, marvelous as they might be.

**The Second Level** has to do with spiritual empowerment using all of the spiritual gifts we can receive and manifest. There is never a time when we cannot be blessed and bless others by experiencing spiritual gifts. But if we try to do this exclusively and ignore the affairs of life on the first level, we can easily become off-balance. If we concentrate on spiritual gifts and make them our primary purpose and exclusive center of our life, the results can be costly. Those who continue to focus their life on the rich food of the Spiritual Level more exclusively will be depleting the strength of their mind and body. Historically, many who have given their lives to their spiritual gifts have eventually become seriously ill, either physically, mentally, or both. The reason is that even this Second Level is still on the Tree of Knowledge and, let's remember, it is the tree of conflict and separation, and it is not the tree of union, oneness and eternal life that it advertises itself to be. It was designed to fail eventually or we would never leave it in order to go to the Tree of Life. That is why we cannot have both trees at the same time. One is the tree of judgmentalness and anxiety; the other is the tree of non-judgmentalness and the peace of Agape-Love.

**On the Third Level**, where we begin to see more and more of the illusions of our conclusions, gradually moving past our ideals of what ought to be to a greater appreciation of the perfection of what is, just the way it is. Again, that does not mean that we ignore things that could use a lot of changing. But instead of asking the three questions of eternal torment about these things, needing to do the right thing, we choose what experiments we want to run and go to work with energy, commitment and enthusiasm. The difference is giving up the *bondage of "need"* and experiencing the *liberty of "choice."* These experiments may take us to activity on the First Level, Second Level or Third Level, or a combination of all three. That is what makes the Third Level work, providing greater and greater love, joy and peace.

**On the Fourth Level**, this principle of combining all levels is especially critical. Instead of trying to stay in the serenity, satisfaction and accomplishment of the Fourth Level, we *come* from that level into activity on the other three levels. Doing this, there are no burdens, only opportunities. There are no problems, only situations. There are no sacrifices, only contributions.

This is the REST OF THE LORD we can enter into from this day forward until we rest with Him in heaven. That rest does not mean everyday is a day of bliss and spiritual highs. Remember, *agape is not a feeling, it is understanding.* It is having the *mind of Christ*, seeing from His point of view. After all, if He contemplated, in the eternal "now," all earthly events, from beginning to end, and then ordered them into existence, is He not satisfied with how it is working, even when he is pained by the suffering that He is experiencing through our bodies and minds in which His infinite Self dwells?

So remember, even the Fourth Level will not work in isolation. It is only through continuing to experience all levels, yet coming from the Fourth Level, that we manifest the true spirit and presence of our Lord and Master.

### THE PRINCIPLE OF STAYING INVOLVED ON ALL LEVELS

This is what Morpheus' taking his crew into the Matrix represents in the life of a person going through the flaming sword? True balance in life requires more than just spiritual growth. In contrast to many of the ideals found on the Tree of Knowledge, such as the need to flee from "Babylon," true balance also requires staying involved and committed in worldly things. As we are told, "**the Spirit enlighteneth every man THROUGH THE WORLD, that harkeneth to the voice of the Spirit.**" (D&C 84:46) It is easy to become off balance by having both feet planted too exclusively in either the material world or the spiritual world. For most of us, balance seems to require one foot solidly planted in each.

Although there is a time to withdraw and enjoy repose and meditation, there is also value in keeping involved in the worldly activities around us. But becoming off-balance is what sometimes happens when spiritual seekers begin to experience closer alignment with the Spirit and, at times, feel the fire of God's love surging through their bodies. It is very natural to want to have those feelings and spiritual experiences more constantly by focusing almost exclusively on the Spirit. Some may tend to withdraw more and more from worldly activities in an effort to reduce distractions. In fact, they may soon start receiving revelations to do so. Such revelations are consistent with the spiritual

law, which tells them “what ought to be,” but such knowledge is still from the Tree of Knowledge.

Don’t forget, the preparatory gospel includes all kinds of spiritual gifts, including even “the visitation of angels.” (D&C 84:26) As long as we want to be servants, even holy servants, and to be given more knowledge of what ought to be, God will certainly oblige. It is the old adage, a master teacher is willing to “give students enough rope to hang themselves.”

### **IS SPIRITUAL HUNGERING THE SAME AS SPIRITUAL LUST?**

Although such hungering and thirsting for spiritual attainment is believed to be pure and holy desires, and they are valuable in the preparatory stages, they will hold us to the Tree of Knowledge forever unless we begin to let them go. Why? Simply because they are actually a form of *spiritual lust*. Surprised? Well, remember, lust involves more than mere sexual desires. Broadly defined, lust can also include obsessive hunger for other, non-sexual feelings of gratification, such as those we receive from a sense of authority, success, recognition, respect, being right, being helpful, or just truly making a difference in the world. In the same way, desires to enhance spiritual manifestations are part of the advantages, but also the disadvantages of the Second Level, the Spiritual Level of the Tree of Knowledge.

Yet, when individuals move from the Temporal Law to the Spiritual Law, they begin to experience deeper love and spiritual attunement they have only dreamed about before. So to suggest to those spiritual seekers that their hunger is a form of lust would sound absolutely ridiculous, if not cruel and unfair. Nor do we want to discourage those who are enjoying such blessings. One cannot go from First Level to Third Level without going through the Spiritual Level. However, until they see the nature of “need” in their hungering and thirsting, they will not advance fully to the next level.

### **THE STRAIT AND NARROW PATH IS FLAWED BY NEED**

We have the example of the people in Lehi’s vision who were joyfully and confidently treading down the “strait and narrow path” which represents the Spiritual Law. Although they knew the path, itself, was not the Tree of Life, they were satisfied and thrilled that it led to their precious goal. What they did not realize, of course, is that there was a problem with that wonderful path. Lehi saw that these hungry, spiritual seekers were being blinded by mists of darkness covering the path, thus were becoming lost from the very path they thought they were following. The mists of darkness, let’s remember, were the temptations of the “devil,” tempting them, I suppose, to do what he got Adam and Eve to do, which was to eat from the Tree of Knowledge. In other words, as blessed and as excited as these seekers may have been for believing they were on the strait and narrow path, they were still comparing “what is” with “what ought to be,” trying so hard to keep things in the “strait and narrow,” i.e., to be spiritually **RIGHT**.

Even with what appears to be totally righteous intent, spiritual seekers seem to have a “need” to gain continual evidence of their spiritual growth and attunement. Need creates greed, another name for lust. In contrast, as individuals move further into Third Level, they see the vanity of their obsessive need to “*do good and be worthy*” in order to merit these coveted blessings. They discover the illusion of the belief that anyone can or does become “worthy” by keeping the law, even the spiritual law.

### **BY THE SPIRITUAL LAW WE PARISH FROM THAT WHICH IS “GOOD”**

Lehi, as an old man, made an amazing statement in which he declared, “**By the Spiritual Law we parish from that which is good.**” Why is that so? The statement seems to contradict itself. We would assume that the Spiritual Law was the ultimate “good.” Well, one has to get to the very end of the *Book of Mormon* to find the answer to that question. It is the talk given by Mormon and recorded by his son, Moroni. As I mentioned in my Preface, this Seventh Chapter of Moroni is one of the most amazing chapters in the entire *Book of Mormon*. In this sermon to faithful members of the Church, Mormon made a categorical statement that most of us *do not believe to be true*. He said that an *evil man cannot do that which is good*.

Most of us would not agree with his statement because, in our language, we define “good” as that which “does good.” Based on this definition, people could “do good” even if, they, themselves, are bad, even very bad. But Mormon not only said that our worldly definition of “good” is not spiritually true, he even became more specific. His point was that “good,” in the true spiritual sense, is not defined as that which “does good,” but is defined as that *which is done with absolutely real*

*intent.* As we read his words, notice that his authority is the word of God.

**I remember the word of God which saith by their works ye shall know them; for if their works be good, then they are good also.**

**For behold, God hath said a man being evil cannot do that which is good; for if he offereth a gift, or prayeth unto God, except he shall do it with REAL INTENT it profiteth him nothing. For behold, it is NOT counted unto him for righteousness.** (Moroni 7:5-7)

So, by this definition, “good” requires that the act be done with real intent, but what does “real intent” mean? Real means genuine, authentic and true. What is pretended or only partially true would not be *real*. So if one were to give a gift that is real, it would be a total gift, a gift with absolutely no strings attached. If the receiver of the gift would be expected to do anything in return, then the gift is not totally a gift, but a deal of some kind. Mormon also said that it is evil *to pray without* real intent. If one is thanking the Lord for blessings, and the person thinks he has earned it in anyway, to any degree, then he is not thankful for a *gift*, but for a reward for blessings earned. In turn, if the prayer is asking for a “*gift*,” while believing that God is asking us to do something in return for that blessing, then it is a negotiation, not a true prayer. That is what real intent means. In other words, “real” means “pure,” with no hidden motives or agenda for personal gain. This is something the natural man, being an enemy to God by his very nature, cannot do.

### **IN SEPARATENESS, WHICH CREATES “NEED,” THERE IS NO PURE INTENT**

As long as we are feeling the separateness that comes from the Tree of Knowledge, even at the Spiritual Law Level, we will still be coming from a feeling of lack, which creates the sense of need. Therefore, there will always be an element in our giving or seeking, whether we are conscious of it or not, of “*what’s in it for me.*” So, fundamentally, that is *impure* intent. That is why Mormon so categorically declared the truth that an “evil” person, who the natural man is by nature, “CANNOT DO THAT WHICH IS GOOD.”

Mormon does not stop there but gives more details on what is “true good” and what is not.

**For behold, if a man being evil giveth a gift, he doeth it grudgingly; wherefore it is counted unto him the same as if he had retained the gift; wherefore he is counted evil before God.**

**And likewise also is it counted evil unto a man, if he shall pray and not with real intent of heart; yea, and it profiteth him nothing, for God receiveth none such. Wherefore, a man being evil cannot do that which is good; neither will he give a good gift.** (Moroni 7:8-10)

What does it mean to give a gift grudgingly? It means more than selfishly, like “Well, I will if I have to, but I don’t really want to.” It really goes deeper than that. The conditioned, natural man feels a connectedness with things he thinks he owns, whether they are tangible things like property, loved ones, positions, or intangible things like duty, knowledge, honor and goodwill. Before the natural man can separate himself from what he owns, he has to see that it is of some advantage to himself, even if it is no more than a good feeling he gets from having provided good feelings for others. Until he can see such a personal benefit, his nature is to hesitate and hold back. Again, until he can feel there is a personal benefit, he is not really interested. I think that is what “grudgingly” really means.

But that is only the beginning of Moroni Chapter Seven. This subject follows immediately after Mormon invited his audience of true seekers, whom he believed had sufficient hope in Christ and were peaceable enough followers of the Savior to enter into the *rest of the Lord* from that very day. His talk ends five pages later with his famous description of the pure love of Christ which the Father faithfully BESTOWS upon ALL WHO ARE TRUE FOLLOWERS OF HIS SON.

### **SUMMARY**

Morpheus’ willingness to leave the safety of the spaceship and re-enter the dangerous Matrix represents the willingness of students who have moved to higher levels to remain active in lower levels, since no one level is complete within itself. This is especially true of those on the Second Spiritual Level where they want to magnify their gifts, and even the Fourth Level of the pure love of Christ where they do not want to be distracted from the serenity of being in the rest. Thus, another name for zeal is lust, even spiritual desires to manifest more and more of the fruits of the Spirit. This

is the powerful message of the sermon by Mormon, Moroni 7, on “*entering into the rest of the Lord from this time henceforth until we rest with Him in heaven.*”

## A SET OF FIVE TAPES COVERING MORONI SEVEN

As I mentioned in the Preface, I was originally going to write this whole book about entering into the rest by using Moroni 7 as my basic text, like I used Jacob 4:14 for Book I and Alma 32 for Book II. Since I am using the Matrix movie instead, I strongly encourage the reader to call on my toll free number and order my set of audio tapes which cover, extensively, the entire chapter and the many scriptures related to it. In those discussions, I cover many points that are not included in this book, such as what is “good and evil” on the Tree of Life, and how does the pure love of Christ automatically give us “every good thing? The tapes are inexpensive and helpful. My phone is 1-800-600-7327. Besides, if I am home at the time, we can visit.

## Chapter XX

### ON THE WAY TO SEE THE ORACLE

This is the first time, since his being rescued from the birth experience, that Neo has been taken back into the real Matrix. All of his other experiences in the Matrix were only in the spaceship’s simulated training programs. It has probably been several months since he was not only living in the Matrix, but was of the Matrix. During that time, both his body and mind have been transformed. He now understands from direct experience many things that Morpheus could only point the way about the difference between the Man-Made World of the Matrix and the Real World of Zion.

We recall that at one point during the weeks that his body was being regenerated, he asked Morpheus why his eyes were hurting so much. He was told, “**You have never used them before.**” Now for the first time, even without dark glasses, he will use his regenerated eyesight to see the Matrix through the eyes of one who is an alien to it.

#### SEEING THE MATRIX FOR THE FIRST TIME

Cypher, driving, sits in the front of the car with Morpheus, while Neo and Trinity sit in the back seat. As they drive through the city, even Morpheus is fascinated, exclaiming to Neo, “*Unbelievable, isn’t it?*”

As Neo recognizes some of his old neighborhood, he exclaims, in surprise, “*God!*”

Trinity inquires as to what is happening to him. Neo explains that he is literally blown away by seeing the world that he used to think was real, “*I used to eat there. Really good meals. I have these memories from my life. Whoof! None of them happened. What does that mean?*”

Trinity, remembering her own bewilderment in her first return to the Matrix, comments, “*The Matrix cannot tell you who you are.*”

Neo, responding to her remark, asks in the form of an inquisitive statement, “*But the Oracle can?*”

Trinity replies, “*That’s different.*”

## THE INCREDIBLE MIRACLE OF THE MATRIX

As far as we know, during these past several months, Cypher is the only one who has been out of the spaceship. So even Morpheus is amazed to see it first hand again, saying to Neo, “**Unbelievable, isn’t it?**” The seemingly absolute reality of the Matrix makes it difficult for even their minds to realize that this world is a digitalized, computerized construct by the Artificial Intelligence Machines. That is why all of the crew are wearing dark glasses to keep from being hypnotized into believing that it really is real. Yet they cannot help but marvel.

We remember what Cypher said to Agent Smith about the meal he was eating, “**You know, I know this steak doesn’t exist. I know that when I put it in my mouth, the Matrix is telling my brain that it is juicy and delicious.**” Then he confessed to his host that perhaps it might be better to remain hypnotized by the Matrix, “**After nine years, you know what I realize? Ignorance is bliss!**” What he had forgotten was that, in the Matrix construct, ignorance was not bliss. In that dream of the Man-Made World, there was a fair share of real nightmares.

So let’s imagine for a moment what Neo is going through when the old familiar sights along the street remind him of his previous life in the Matrix. He exclaims, “**I used to eat there. Really good meals. I have these memories from my life. Whoof! None of them happened.**” It is as though he is remembering a dream that, in the dream, seemed so real, yet in actuality, it never really happened except in the mind. But is that really what this world we are living in is all about, just a dream?

### AS ADAM WAS PUT TO SLEEP, ARE WE STILL DREAMING?

As impossible as that thought may be to the natural mind, the experience Neo is having in this scene is actually duplicated in our own experience as we begin to wake up as to who and what we really are. As we discussed in an earlier chapter, we are cosmic spiritual beings pretending that we are frail, vulnerable, human animals, marvelous as that may be, confined to our heavy body covered with skin. As such, we are experiencing bodies that can die in an instant, minds that cannot comprehend the infinity that is actually all around us, and lives that have a critical need for air, food, water, shelter and clothing. Yet, none of these things are what we really are. We are not physical beings, but spiritual beings, belonging to a dimension so different from this that it is like comparing dark night to the brilliant light of day. And as we are told, the natural man walks in darkness even at noonday.

### THE MARVEL OF SEEING THE MAN-MADE WORLD AS A PERFECTLY DESIGNED CONSTRUCT

Of course, all of this is incomprehensible to the finite mind until it is awakened to some degree by what is called the LIGHT. The obstacle to seeing the “Light” is the darkness, i.e., confusion, which comes from our Tree of Knowledge. That Tree gives us a double mind because it divides everything up into separate, opposing parts. As long as we see part of God’s creation as good and part as bad, we will never have an eye single to His glory. When we experience that it is ALL a perfect design, including the darkness and the light, we can see how His hand is certainly in *all things* and, thus, we can be in *gratitude for all things*. *Gratitude is the key to comprehending the Light, even through the darkness.* As we are promised so clearly.

### “THE MATRIX CANNOT TELL YOU WHO YOU ARE”

Ordinarily, the events of the world and even the circumstances in our own individual lives seem so random, so accidental, that it seems impossible that it is all a complete master plan that includes every detail. For this reason, most people live their lives in only *subjective consciousness*, meaning that their inner state is subject to the ever changing circumstances of the material world. As Neo marvels at the experience of being again in the surroundings of his old life, which now feels like a dream, he asks Trinity, “**What does it mean?**”

Her answer is straight to the point, “**The Matrix cannot tell you who you are.**” Since they are on their way to see the Oracle, he ponders out loud, “**But the Oracle can.**” Trinity does not agree or disagree, but merely replies, “**That is different.**”

When we begin to see that we came from being co-creators, and, therefore, we can recognize that there is a purpose for all things being exactly the way they are, our consciousness begins to change from being subjective to *objective*. Being “*objective*” describes our inner state in which we

understand that we are not the victims of circumstances as it appears. Instead, we see that we are all, in true actuality, aligned in Oneness with the Source of these circumstances.

## WANTING TO KNOW MORE ABOUT THE ORACLE

Neo asks Trinity if she had also been taken to the Oracle. When she acknowledges that she had, he asks the natural question, "*What did she tell you?*"

Trinity starts to answers, "*She told me....*"

As she hesitates, Neo prods her to continue, "*What?*"

Obviously, she wonders if Neo is ready to hear what she was told because it has to do with him and, apparently, his death. But there is no time for her to answer at this point for Morpheus informs them that they have arrived. As Trinity and Cypher are to be left in the car, Morpheus commands, "*Neo, come with me.*"

As the two go into a fairly orderly but dated lobby of an apartment house, we see graffiti on the walls and on one of the chairs, with some trash pushed to one side. An old, but very clean, gray-bearded man wearing dark glasses and with a white cane, indicating that he is blind, is sitting there, saying nothing. His neat, black suit, white shirt and black bow-tie makes him look almost like a minister. He finally nods his head as they enter the elevator as if to acknowledge permission to go up stairs. In the elevator, Morpheus pushes a button for the Thirteen Floor. While they are riding up, Neo asks, "*Is this the same Oracle who made the, aaah, prophecy?*"

*"Yes, she is very old. She has been with us from the very beginning."*

*"Beginning?"*

*"Of the resistance."*

Neo's curiosity is further intrigued, so he asks, "*And she knows what? Everything?*"

Morpheus, smilingly brushes the question aside by saying, "*She would say that she knows enough.*"

*"And she is never wrong?"*

*"Try not to think of it in terms of right or wrong. She is a guide, Neo. She can help you to find the path."*

Neo probes further, "*She helped you?*"

*"Yes."*

*"What did she tell you?"*

Morpheus smiles again and answers just as the elevator stops, "*That I will find the One.*"

They come out of the elevator into a long, dingy hall with more graffiti on the walls, finally stopping at one of the apartment's doors. As Morpheus points to the door without attempting to open it, says, "*I have told you that I can only show you the door. You have to walk through it.*"

## WHERE DO WE FIND THE ORACLE?

It is so easy to get caught up in the story that we can miss some of the symbolic lessons in this trip to visit the Oracle. As Neo believes, he is finally being taken to the source of the ultimate wisdom. But notice where he is taken. Does Morpheus take him to the hidden City of Zion? No. Does he take him to another Zion spaceship? No. Instead, he takes him into the enemy's stronghold, the Matrix. But, even in the Matrix, where in the Matrix does he go? To a high mountain retreat? No. To a hidden center of the Masters? No. To a beautiful temple of enlightenment like the Greeks built for their oracles? No. Or how about a great church or cathedral? No, not there either. Instead, he takes him into a slum area of Chicago to an old, high rise, apartment building. So what does all this symbolize?

Just as we emphasized the value of keeping all four levels in motion, this part of the movie symbolizes the principle that enlightenment will often be found in the nitty-gritty of life, not so much on the mountain peak. Again, "**the Spirit enlighteneth every man through the world,**" even the world covered in darkness and sin that we came into mortality to experience. After all, this is the world we helped create. When we see it as "our own" world, we can begin to see more clearly what we may choose to contribute to it — what is in front of us that could use more support, more harmony, more appreciation. We choose, not to answer the three questions of eternal torment, but realizing that since one thing is about as useful as another, we CHOOSE which project we want to run

an experiment of consciously being a contributor.

## WE KEEP THINKING THAT WHAT WE NEED IS MORE KNOWLEDGE

For Neo, being taken to the Oracle is a fascinating and exciting development. He is naturally curious. We certainly can't fault him for that. So while on the way, he wants to know what the Oracle has told Trinity and Morpheus. But Trinity has a problem telling him because she was told something that Neo should probably not know prematurely. What she was told, we learn later, is that she would fall in love with a dead man, and that he would be the One. Even at this time, even though they are taking Neo to the Oracle, she has difficulty with what she was told. If he will be dead when she falls in love with him, then how can he be the One? She has no way of knowing that it is her becoming Agape-Love, losing all fear, that will bring his body and mind back to life.

So this is the great paradox of knowledge. We all want to know how things are going to work out in the end. Yet, we have several problems with knowing such things. One is that until we go through the process of getting there, we wouldn't really understand the end even if we knew. The other problem is that if we knew the end before the end, the process would not produce the full benefits of the end result. Another way to say it, TO KNOW THE END BEFORE THE END RUINS THE BEGINNING.

There is a way, however, to know the future without knowing the end. We do this when we come to the realization that everything is working out perfectly for what we previously chose to experience in this life. Finally, since we see that everything has been for our "good" in the past and the present, then *that reality must also be true for our future*. So, we have nothing to worry about in the future. In this way, WE KNOW THE FUTURE. The future is going to be as perfect as the past was and the present is. Do we really need to know more? We don't lay back, but we do relax as we confidently and gratefully stay in motion. Even when things seem to crash all around us, we can recognize the possibility that if "I," individually, helped plan and create my life movie, then I am sure "I" helped make a movie that will *come out all right in the end*.

## NOTICING THE ORACLE'S ENVIRONMENT

As Morpheus takes Neo into the Oracle's home apartment building, we find that she has not chosen to live in a mansion on a beautiful estate. Of course, she too is hiding from the agents, but this place could be described as rather depressing. Although everything is fairly tidy with only a little trash around, the graffiti has not been cleaned up, even on one of the chairs. As they walk in the lobby, there is a full, slightly bent trash can and a small pile of litter nearby. Obviously, this apartment is no luxury, but neither is it a slum like the subway station Neo and Agent Smith will fight in later.

We notice the very dignified black man sitting in the lobby. He appears to be blind. His long beard is neat and trimmed. He is dressed in an immaculate, black suite, with a white shirt and black bow tie. He is motionless until they start moving into the elevator, then he nods his head, apparently in approval of their presence. We are left to wonder. Is he just part of the scenery or does he have some relationship to the Oracle? In fact, he could be a guard who can contact the Oracle if there is an approach of danger. In that case, his apparent blindness would be a carefully crafted disguise. If so, what would he represent?

Remember, all parts in the movie are aspects within us. The Oracle represents the open channel we have to higher guidance. She lives in the Man-Made World, so she is not without great danger. Just as she stays secretly away from public notice, she might have this dignified and innocent looking man as a guard against intrusions from the outer world. Since her guard appears to be blind, he would not tip off intruders that he could be able to warn the Oracle of their approach. In the same way, the inner visionary part of us must usually be kept out of the public eye and, to the outside world, be represented like a harmless dove whose secret job is to sound the alert if the need arises. Most of us, as these inner channels of communication open up, find it hard to resist the temptation to go public, to let others know. This example of how the Oracle might be protecting herself can remind us that instead of our hunting for other seekers, they will usually be brought to us.

## THE THIRTEENTH FLOOR

If we quickly count the buttons on the elevator's control panel, we find that Morpheus has pushed

the button for the Thirteen Floor. That superstitious number is so deeply ingrained into our modern culture that many high-rise buildings do not list that floor at all. The number represents bad luck for many people, yet some have thirteen as their most lucky number, like a baker's dozen. But as we become more objectively conscious and see everything as part of an infinite design, we no longer choose to believe in "luck." The concept of luck is the opposite to the concept of "fate." The Oracle will remind Neo that he does not need to worry about what she has told him because, he is asked to remember, he does not believe in all "**that fate crap.**" She must have known how Neo had answered Morpheus' question, when they first met, as to whether he believed in fate. Neo had said he did not, so he was asked why not. He answered, "**Because I don't like the idea that I am not in control of my life.**"

Prophecy implies that the future is already determined, at least to some degree. That being the case, luck, even bad luck, is not an option. So the Oracle has chosen to have her apartment on the Thirteenth Floor. She is not concerned about good luck or bad luck, for both are illusions.

### THE SYMBOLISM OF THEIR CLOTHING

The Wachowski brothers were working on this movie project for thirty years. Making the movie was their dream come true. As artists in their own right, and successful movie makers, they put hidden meaning in many places that one would hardly expect. For example, the symbolism of each person's unique type of clothing. Only three of the crew, Morpheus, Trinity and Cypher, are dressed in shiny, black leather coats. Morpheus' coat always goes down to his shoes. Trinity's coat is shorter, going down only to her knees. Cypher's coat only goes down to his hips. However, when Cypher was visiting Agent Smith, he was wearing a regular coat made of cloth. All the rest of the crew that would go into the Matrix wore coats made of cloth. Switch had a white cloth coat that went to her knees, like Trinity's leather coat, but Apoc and Mouse had regular jackets made of cloth.

In visiting the Oracle, Neo is still wearing his cloth jacket. However, in the scene where Neo and Trinity are attempting to rescue Morpheus, they walk into the lobby of the military building wearing long coats like Morpheus.' However, although Trinity's coat is still made of shiny, black leather, Neo's is made of black cloth. Why is that? Well, Trinity is on the rescue mission out of her care and concern for both Neo and Morpheus. She is there out of love, a love that is losing much of its old fear. In contrast, Neo is there out of the need to save Morpheus, even at the cost of his own life, as he was programmed to do by the Oracle.

Trinity, when needing personal action, takes off her leather coat which allows her easier movement. Under her coat, Trinity is dressed in a bare shoulder, leather pants suit. She removes her long coat before entering the wet wall to escape from the agents, leaving her coat in a pile on the lavatory floor. Trinity, also later in the elevator when she and Neo are rescuing Morpheus, again takes off her coat and leaves it behind as she prepares to activate the complex bomb,

It is also interesting that at the end of the movie when the transformed Neo steps out of the telephone booth, the Construct is still giving him the long, black coat made of cloth, indicating that he is still coming from some degree of need. It looks like the brothers are all set up for the two sequels, Matrix II and III, they are now filming in Australia where they made this movie.

### CLOTHING REPRESENTS ONE'S LEVEL OF UNDERSTANDING

Symbolically, clothing represents one's level of understanding. Different colors and the nature of the material are both significant. White usually stands for purity and innocence, as in our Temple clothing. Black, which is often identified with evil, also stands for very deep, spiritual understanding. Cloth material is man-made and represents understanding on the conceptual level, the milk of the gospel. Leather is natural and represents a deeper understanding on the experiential level, the meat of the gospel. As in the story of the Garden of Eden, Adam and Eve, representing all of us, were embarrassingly naked until God dressed them in *coats of skin*, i.e., leather, for their protection. To me, this inner shield that we symbolize by wearing the "garment" represents the inner presence of the Spirit of Christ given to all mankind in our fallen state as a natural guide to shield and protect us in the confusing darkness of the Man-Made World.

Morpheus, representing the higher self, the Holy Spirit, is clothed in black leather from head to foot. Trinity, being covered to her knees, represents a deep mixture of Phileo and Agape-Love. When she goes with Neo to save Morpheus, she has now become a much deeper level of agape-love,

being with less fear, so she is dressed in a leather coat which reaches her shoes. Cypher, an advanced enough student to play the Judas role, is dressed in leather only to his hips, representing that he has deep understanding, but a significant part is still missing. But when he visited Agent Smith in the restaurant, he was dressed in a regular cloth jacket.

### HOW MUCH DOES THE ORACLE KNOW?

Of course, at this point, Neo is filled with curiosity. At last he is going to meet, face to face, with a prophetess. He assumes there is nothing she would not know, so he asks, "**And she knows what? Everything?**" Since the natural mind believes the key to solving all problems is *more* knowledge, Neo wants to confirm the fact that he is about to meet the final authority. Man constantly looks for certainty, to an absolute connectedness, the very thing we felt during that first month in the womb. So that is why we attempt (and fail) to find that connectedness by believing and doing what we are told by our authorities, whether they be our parents, older friends, teachers, or leaders. When we find that they are not infallible, we look for something that is. Many religious people take the Bible as the absolute source of certainty. We Mormons expand that to include the other Standard Works. We too, like the Jewish scholars, want to ask, "Where is it written?"

In response to Neo's question, Morpheus gives a very wise answer. Slightly smiling, he says, "**She would say that she knows enough.**" Of course, that is not what Neo wanted to hear. So he thinks to himself, "Okay, she may not know everything, but at least what she does know is absolute." So he asks his mentor, "**And she is never wrong?**" Yes, he wants certainty, absolute infallibility. After all, the Tree of Knowledge promises nothing less. But Morpheus knows better. So he quietly counsels Neo, "**Try not to think of it in terms of right or wrong. She is a guide, Neo. She can help you to find the path.**"

### THE ANTIDOTE TO MAKING CONCLUSIONS

In spite of this counsel, Neo is going to listen to the Oracle with full confidence that she would never say anything to him that would not be the truth and the full truth. The natural mind, looking for certainty, wants to convert everything into stone. We call that process making a conclusion. The word conclusion means to conclude, to end, to close the door to further possibilities. A conclusion eliminates the possibility of incompleteness on one hand or even error on the other. That is the set up, the very plan that makes the escape from the Matrix a tumultuous journey. The antidote to that temptation of converting inspiration and revelation into a conclusion is to choose to see such new information ONLY AS INTERESTING POSSIBILITIES. We do not ignore the insight, nor do we fail to act upon it, if we choose. The difference is that a conclusion creates the "need to obey." But holding the information only as an interesting possibility creates the opportunity to choose to run an experiment with the information.

However, Neo made one last try to see if Morpheus accepted the Oracle as a final authority by asking, "**She helped you?**" Morpheus acknowledged that she certainly did. So Neo asks, "**What did she tell you?**" Morpheus answers, "**That I will find the One.**"

When they come to the door of the Oracle's apartment, Morpheus stands to one side. He used this opportunity to symbolically remind Neo about the limitations of his role as a teacher, "**I have told you that I can only show you the door. You have to walk through it.**" Even before Neo's hand can reach the shiny, chrome door knob, the door suddenly opens. That is often just exactly the way it works.

### SUMMARY

On this first actual visit to the Matrix since his rebirth into the Real World, Neo is amazed at the memories it brings back. We have mentioned that on the Third Integrative Level, everything, more and more, becomes a miracle, including the Matrix. As Neo is on his way to see the Oracle, he will be getting his chance to seek his ultimate desire of more knowledge, and what he will get is very significant miss-information in the magic of the Second Level. Even here, the Oracle has taken protective measures by the "blind" guard in the lobby, reminding us to be willing to be as "wise as serpents" in the Man-Made World. The creators of the Movie give us many tips, such as the symbolic meaning of the various types of clothing worn by the crew. Just as Neo is counseled about not thinking of information as "right or wrong," but merely information about possibilities, we too are

to see the illusions of our conclusions.

## Chapter XXI

### VISITING THE ORACLE

As we sing in the Hawaiian Wedding Song, “*This is the moment.*” Everything has been building up to this critical turning point. We might recall what Cypher said to Trinity about Morpheus believing that Neo is the One. “**I just keep wondering. If Morpheus is so sure, why hasn’t he taken him to the Oracle?**” Trinity answered, confidently, “**Morpheus will take him when he [Neo] is ready.**”

Now that Trinity is seeing that event happening, we can well imagine how much she would have also enjoyed coming upstairs and having a few precious moments with the Oracle, but she is asked to stay downstairs in the car with Cypher. In turn, even Morpheus is not invited to enter her living room. The reason — this is for Neo and him alone.

#### MEETING THE OTHER POTENTIALS

As the door to the Oracle’s apartment opens, a lovely, young woman, acting as the receptionist, welcomes him by saying, “*Hello, Neo. You are right on time.*”

As Neo is entering first, Morpheus is taking off his dark glasses and follows behind him. She says, “*Make yourself at home, Morpheus. Neo come with me.*”

As Morpheus takes a seat in the hall, Neo is led into the Oracle’s pleasant living room. As they enter the room, another lovely, young woman walks by holding a baby in her arms, and with a fleeting, smiling glance, she acknowledges Neo’s presence. Behind her are two girls sitting on the couch. The younger is working on a project of some sort on the coffee table in front of her. The other, an older girl with long, black hair, is working on a lap-top computer. In the wide screen version shown in the theaters, there is another girl sitting in the corner, evidently playing chess by herself. The receptionist explains, “*These are the other potentials. You can wait here.*”

Neo’s attention is drawn to two young girls sitting on the floor floating blocks. A TV is playing behind them but no one is watching it. On the screen, there are rabbits running around. Neo next notices two boys. One is reading a large book and peeks over the top of it to observe the visitor. The other boy is sitting on the floor. He is baldheaded, with bright eyes and is dressed like a monk, with a collection of bent spoons on the floor in front of him. Neo watches as the boy picks up a tablespoon and gazes intently at it. It begins to bend over and around and then, with a jerk, straightens up, becoming solid again. The boy, with an inquisitive look on his face, hands the spoon to Neo. As Neo sits down, taking a good look at the spoon which is now very solid and rigid, wonders how it could have been so flexible just a moment before. Then the boy says, “*Do not try to bend the spoon. That is impossible. Instead, only try to realize the truth.*”

Neo asks, “*What truth?*”

The young boy, with an intent look in his eyes, replies, “*There is no spoon.*”

“*There is no spoon?*”

The boy adds, “*Then you will see that it is not the spoon that bends, it is only yourself.*”

Neo holds the solid, stainless steel spoon upright and starts concentrating on the possibility that the spoon is only an illusion. As it suddenly begins to bend, Neo follows it by bending his head. Just then, the receptionist comes back in the room with the announcement, “*The Oracle will see you now.*” Neo turns his head to acknowledge her message. As he turns his head back toward the boy, he is surprised to see that the spoon has returned to its solid, upright position. He hands it back to the boy.

#### THE RABBITS AND ALICE IN WONDERLAND

Neo did not seem to notice during the few minutes he was waiting to see the Oracle that the

movie playing on the television was showing several rabbits scampering about. It reminds us that Alice followed a rabbit down its hole and had the incredible adventure in "Wonderland." Early in this movie, Trinity communicated to Neo on his computer monitor, telling him to "follow the rabbit." When he was invited to a party by the group at his door, he was turning them down until he noticed the painting of a rabbit on the girl's shoulder. Remembering his mysterious instructions to follow the rabbit, he accepted their invitation and, consequently, met Trinity.

Later, when Morpheus first met Neo, he smilingly commented, "**Come and sit. I imagine that right now you feel like Alice tumbling down the rabbit hole, humm?**" Neo agreed, saying, "**You can say that.**" At the conclusion of their conversation, just before Neo made his choice about which pill to take, he was told, "**Now, take the red pill and you stay in Wonderland and I show you how deep the rabbit hole goes.**"

Most people think of *Alice in Wonderland* as a cute story for children, since Lewis Carroll, ostensibly, wrote it for a daughter of the dean of Christ Church School. However it may well be one of the finest examples of the hidden, allegorical writings put out with the cooperation of a Wisdom School in that day. Just as this movie, *The Matrix*, is a parallel to the process of waking up, so is Alice's great adventure. The rabbit hole she goes down is into her own inner-self and all the wonders she discovers are the crazy aspects of her subconscious, *Matrix* personalities. Lewis Carroll introduced a sequel, called *Through The Looking Glass*, which continued the theme of self discovery by going through the mirror to see what is on the other side of the reflection of herself. These two books are the most famous children books in the world.

### **THE RABBIT HOLE GOES AS DEEP AS SPIRITUAL MAGIC GOES UP**

So how deep does the rabbit hole go? Ironically, it goes all the way up to the TOP of the Tree of Knowledge, to those thrilling experiences of spiritual power of the mind and the heart to produce what appears to be a thrilling empathy with God's universe and, in turn, some effective control over the *Matrix*. These can be the most exciting of times, since some parts of the natural mind, knowing that it is a slave to the *Matrix*, dreams of being able to be the master of the *Matrix*, making it a slave. The life of Christ, through the accounts of His many miracles, certainly seems to demonstrate that principle. Remember how Morpheus described the original One. "**When the Matrix was first built, there was a man born inside who had the ability to change whatever he wanted to remake the Matrix as he saw fit.**"

In fact, there are those psychic powers inherent in all of us. Some people are born with them close to the surface. Others manifest them through great effort. Others begin to experience them spontaneously, sometimes seemingly well deserved, but other times without any apparent merit or special worthiness. These powers are not confined to any particular religion or culture, but are experienced by many throughout the world, yet these gifted people are still a relative small portion of mankind. As individuals begin to discover these gifts, whether in things like mind over matter, ESP, clairvoyance, precognition, automatic writing, channeling, visions, tongues, visitations or other forms of wonderful manifestations of unseen powers, they justifiably equate these amazing abilities as evidence of progression toward their spiritual "potential." At some point, their experiences often reveal a special divine anointing by God to help Him save the world.

### **SEEING THE WONDERFUL MAGIC OF SECOND LEVEL**

So Neo has now been brought to what he believes is the summit of spiritual attainment so, as he thinks, he can be given the ultimate light and knowledge that will break him through. In other words, he has come to be "*initiated*" into the inner circle. As we see, it will turn out to be the opposite of what he expects, but it is done so cleverly that he will not see how ingeniously it is designed to work on him in reverse until his real breakthrough, which is shown at the very climatic end of the movie.

The first step of his initiation is the Oracle's living room. He is being impressively introduced to the world of magic as demonstrated by the potentials. Floating blocks and bending spoons are simple but still rather dramatic demonstration of the power of the mind over matter. All Neo needed was a simple clue and, bingo, he could do what the little boy was doing. All he had to do was to remember that there really was no spoon, only his mind, and *it worked*. Yes, he really was a true potential, just as they were. Even the boy seemed impressed. At this point, Neo has just completed the First Degree of the Initiation.

## MEETING THE ORACLE

As Neo enters the Oracle's kitchen, bending down to pass under strings of glass beads, he is a little perplexed as he sees a woman with her back to him. While busy at her stove, without turning around, the woman raises her right hand in welcome and, in a pleasant voice, says, "I know you are Neo. I'll be right with you."

Neo, somewhat surprised, inquires, "You are the Oracle?"

Without turning around, she answers, "Bingo!" Then with a big smile on her face, she briefly turns to face him and joyfully remark, "Not what you were expecting, right?"

She is a pleasant, friendly woman of Spanish-American appearance. Although, as Morpheus said, she is very old, she looks middle-age, wearing regular glasses and an apron. As she turns back to the stove, she exclaims, "Oh? Almost done. They smell good, don't they?"

When Neo enthusiastically agrees, she puts on thermo gloves, takes the tray of cookies out of the oven and carries them to the other side of the kitchen, saying, "I'd invite you to sit down, but you're not going to anyway. And don't worry about the vase."

Surprised, Neo asks, "What vase?"

As he looks behind him to see what vase she is talking about, he accidentally hits the large bunch of flowers in a vase, knocking them over. Instantly, the vase crashes to the floor, breaking into many pieces and scattering the flowers. As the Oracle removes her gloves and casually takes off her apron, she smiles mischievously and says, simply, "That vase!"

Truly embarrassed, Neo apologizes,: "I'm sorry!"

"I said, don't worry about it. I'll get one of my kids to fix it."

Neo, more puzzled than ever, asks, "How did you know?"

As she lights up a cigarette, she answers, "Ooooh. What is really going to bake your noodle later on is—would you still have broken it if I hadn't said anything?"

## BEING MADE A CHILD AGAIN

Keanue Reeves is such a talented actor that he lets his face tell us so much of Neo's inner experiences. Entering the living room and being left on his own, he appears a bit self conscious. We can see it on his face, but he soon experienced relief as he became fascinated by the things going on among the potentials.

Now, having just made the spoon that "didn't exist" bend as he tilted his head, he walks into the inner sanctum of the Oracle and finds that it is nothing but a kitchen filled with the sweet smell of cookies being baked. On top of that, this friendly, kidding woman is not even taking him seriously. Then, horrors of horrors, he does exactly what she told him not to do, unintentionally destroying the vase full of flowers. But as she covers for his clumsiness, his curiosity comes to the fore and he wants to know how did she know? He was back at his old game of trying to understand the Oracle, but she did not oblige. Instead, she piled on just another mystery by saying, "**Ooooh. What is really going to bake your noodle later on is—would you still have broken it if I hadn't said anything?**"

Yet Neo realizes that he has destroyed a vase and made a mess all over the floor. But she assures him that with all of the magic going on in her place, he didn't have to worry a second. "**I said, don't worry about it. I'll get one of my kids to fix it.**"

Neo is facing another concern. The Oracle seems to be far more interested in the cookies than she is in him. So he must wait. But when she asks him to participate in appreciating the wonderful aroma of her cookies, he warms to her homey friendliness. He realizes that it is an amazing situation of being treated just ordinarily and friendly by this amazing and ancient Oracle.

## BEING HELPED DOWN OFF HIS PEDESTAL OF BEING THE ONE

As the Oracle begins to give Neo her undivided attention, she takes a careful look and observes, with a big smile and twinkle in her eyes, "You are cuter than I thought. I can see why she likes you, Neo."

Neo, now fully relaxed again, is confused by the who is the "she" that likes him, so he stupidly asks, "Who?"

The Oracle immediately acknowledges his typical male blindness by saying, matter of factly, “*Not too bright, though.*” After pausing for a moment and looking very seriously at him, she comes right to the point of his visit. “*You know why Morpheus brought you to me? So, what do you think? Do you think you’re the One?*”

Neo answers in appropriate modesty, “*Honestly, I don’t know.*”

As the Oracle raises her glass to point out a sign above the door behind Neo, she asks, “*Do you know what that means? Latin. It means know thyself. I’m going to let you in on a little secret. Being the One is just like being in love. No one can tell you that you are in love. You just know it. Through and through. Balls to bones.*”

With these cutting words, she is letting Neo know that if he doesn’t know, then he really knows already that he is not the One. So then she treats him like a little kid being taken to the nurse’s office at school, saying, “*Well, I had better have a look at you. Open your mouth and say, aahh.*”

Neo, without hesitation, obediently complies. After she looks in both of his ears, she continues mocking her role as his care-taker and fortune teller, holding his open hands and saying. “*Now I’m supposed to say, Oomm. That is interesting but... Then you say....*”

Neo accepts his little kid’s role, saying, “*But what?*”

Now the Oracle is ready to confirm all of Neo’s doubts, “*But you already know what I am going to tell you.*”

Neo acknowledges, “*I’m not the One.*”

Oracle sadly agrees, “*Sorry, kid. You’ve got the gift, but it looks like you are waiting for something.*”

As Neo looks curiously at his hands, wondering what they reveal that he is missing, asks, “*What?*”

“*Your next life, maybe. Who knows? That’s the way these things go.*”

### THE THREE WAYS TO LOOK AT A TEACHER

In contrast to Morpheus, the Oracle is a “mirror-teacher.” Morpheus teaches by helping students see where they are falling short. A mirror-teacher merely acts like a mirror, reflecting back to the students their own self to see if they can discover for themselves their own blind spots. The teacher that I had for many years was like that. If people came to him complaining, he would complain for them even more. If they came boasting, he would boast for them. If they came complaining about their aches and pains, he would tell about his aches and pains. Not many would catch on, at least not for a long time.

Working with him almost constantly in the beginning, I think I caught on rather early for I could see how different he was with different students. So when he would be talking to me, telling me, over and over, about some controversial fact, I would listen carefully, pondering in my mind which of three contradictory things he was really doing with me. Here they are:

- He could be making a point by over-emphasizing a point of view.
- He could be setting me up by getting me to react, a trap.
- Or the darned fool could be believing totally everything he was saying to me.

As long as I worked with him, I could never be sure, from time to time, which of the three he was doing. But which ever roll it was in a given incident, I could never get him to admit, as long as I knew him, as to which of the three he was playing at any given time. In fact, he never admitted to playing any roll at all. Yet I was so impressed with the commitment he had to this form of waking people up that I tried it myself with those who came to me for counseling. However, as I would go into my mirroring act and the people would be practically mesmerized by my empathy for their position, I would suddenly break up. I could not continue to hold a straight face. Then I would confess, “*Don’t you see what I am really doing?*” Seldom would they understand and would go away disappointed in my failure to appreciate how they were victims of their pitiful situation. So I gave up trying to be a mirror-teacher and went back to the straight-on approach like Morpheus uses.

### WHICH OF THE THREE ROLES WAS THE ORACLE PLAYING?

In the same way that I could not tell which of the three ways my teacher was using on me, neither can we when watching the wonderful Oracle. Obviously, she is using the mirroring approach, but is she (1) just making a point, or (2) is she setting him up, or (3) does she, herself, believe everything she is saying? Although the next scene, which will be the conclusion of Neo's visit, is the most critical part, we can already see the mirroring in these statements.

ACKNOWLEDGING HIM WITHOUT LOOKING:

**"I know you are Neo. I'll be right with you."**

ACKNOWLEDGING HIS EXPERIENCE:

**"(I'm) Not what you were expecting, right?"**

ASKING FOR AGREEMENT:

**"They smell good, don't they?"**

BEING GRACIOUS AND CONSIDERATE:

**"I'd invite you to sit down,  
but you're not going to anyway."**

ANTICIPATION:

**"Don't worry about the vase."**

NOT BLAMING:

**"I said, don't worry about it.  
I'll get one of my kids to fix it."**

GIVING HIM CREDIT FOR WONDERMENT:

**"What is really going to bake your noodle later on is—  
would you still have broken it if I hadn't said anything?"**

COMPLIMENT:

**"You are cuter than I thought.  
I can see why she likes you, Neo."**

WILLINGNESS TO BE CANDIDLY HONEST:

**"Not too bright, though."**

ASKING FOR HIS OPINION:

**"Do you think you're the One?"**

TAKING HIM OFF THE HOOK FOR

NOT KNOWING THE ANSWER FOR SURE:

**"I'm going to let you in on a little secret.  
Being the One is just like being in love.  
No one can tell you that you are in love.  
You just know it."**

SERVING HIM WITH UNDIVIDED ATTENTION:

**"Well, I had better have a look at you.  
Open your mouth and say, aahh."**

LETTING HIM PLAY A GAME WITH HER:

**"Now I'm supposed to say, Oomm.  
That is interesting, but..."**

**Then you say.....”**

**ACKNOWLEDGING HIM FOR KNOWING THE ANSWER:**

**“But you already know what I am going to tell you.”**

**SYMPATHY FOR HIS HEAVY DILEMMA:**

**“Sorry, kid. You’ve got the gift,  
but it looks like you are waiting for something.”**

**SUGGESTING AN EASY SOLUTION:**

**“Your next life, maybe.  
Who knows?  
That’s the way these things go.”**

### **THE ORACLE PROVES HER PROPHETIC ABILITY TO KNOW THE FUTURE**

Subtly, the Oracle is setting Neo up for her warning about his coming dilemma by demonstrating that she knows what is going to happen in the future.

- First, she does not ask him to sit down because she knows he is not going to stay long enough to do so.
- Then she tells him about the vase even before he breaks it.
- Then she shows him that she knows he already has the answer to his own question.
- Last, she acknowledges that she doesn’t know everything, that perhaps he is waiting for his next life, but she, herself, can’t be sure. We all increase our confidence in those who admit that there are critical things they just don’t know.

### **NEO IS UNDER HER POWER OF SUGGESTION**

My teacher also taught me that there was a simple way to get a person to accept a suggestion without question. He said, “*All you have to do is ask a person to do three simple, non-threatening things, and they will accept or do the fourth automatically.*”

This is what the Oracle does. Notice, each step she takes.

- First she asks him to feel all right about being surprised that she was not what he was expecting. He agrees.
- Second, she asks him to smell the aroma of the cookies. He does and likes it.
- The third is having him let her examine his throat by saying aaah, then his ears and hands. He does.
- Neo now has no choice. The Oracle invites him to admit that he already knows the answer to his question of whether he is the One. He does. He is not the One. She agrees!

### **SUMMARY**

Neo’s visiting the Oracle is his being invited back into the Second Level world of spiritual magic. As he watches the potentials exhibiting power of mind over matter, he ignores the rabbits on TV and finds out that he can do what they are doing. The Oracle, herself, is such a down-to-earth sweetheart that he is totally brought into her power of suggestion that he is not the One. By serving him as a mirror-teacher, Neo will later wakeup to discover how well she mirrored his doubts so that he could become an ordinary student finding his own way instead of having to carry the heavy burden of being the One and only divinely appointed savior of the world.

## **Chapter XXIII**

### **THE ORACLE SETS NEO UP**

Neo is ready to be SET-UP! She is ready to pull him into her “awakening” trap. Since he now believes he is not the One, contrary to what Morpheus believes, she is ready to set him up to believe he must sacrifice his life to save Morpheus. Wow! That is a heavier burden than “needing to save the world” because it is more *specific and will end his life. And he buys it, hook, line and sinker.*

### NEO RECEIVES HIS ASSIGNMENT

Neo looks at his hands again. A grin shows on his face, which prompts the Oracle to ask what she, herself, pretends not to know. She says, “*What’s funny?*”

Neo acknowledges, “*Morpheus. He, aah...he almost had me convinced.*”

The Oracle looks at Neo very seriously, saying sadly, “*I know. Poor Morpheus! Without him, we’re lost.*”

Neo is puzzled at the statement and asks, “*What do you mean, without him?*”

“*Are you sure you want to hear this?*” As Neo nods his head in agreement, she continues. “*Morpheus believes in you, Neo. And no one; not you, not even me, can convince him otherwise. He believes it so blindly that he is going to sacrifice his life to save yours.*”

Neo is startled at the thought of Morpheus dying to save his life and declares, “*What!*”

“*You’re going to have to make a choice. On one hand, you will have Morpheus’ life. On the other hand, you will have your own. One of you is going to die. Which one will be up to you? I’m sorry, kiddo, I really am. You have a good soul, and I hate giving good people bad news. Oh, don’t worry about it. The minute you step out of this room, you will remember you don’t believe in any of this fate crap. You are in control of your own life, remember? Here, take a cookie. I promise by the time you have done eating it, you’ll feel right as rain.*”

As Neo steps out into the outer hall, Morpheus gets up from his chair and says, “*What was said was for you and for you alone.*”

Just a note. None of those in the apartment, including Morpheus, were wearing dark glasses. Morpheus had taken his off as he entered the entry hall and now puts them back on as he and Neo head out the door.

### NEO IS NOW TOTALLY UNDER THE POWER OF THE ORACLE’S SUGGESTIONS

Much earlier in this book, we defined suggestion as *anything by which a person forms an image of a desirable or painful condition in the future, thereby causing an anxiousness to gain or escape something later.* It is structured around the Four Dual Basic Urges and the Seven Decisions shown on the Picture of Man.

After getting Neo to buy the suggestion that he is not the One, she is ready for the payoff. By the Oracle playing the roll of a mirror-teacher and prophetess, Neo is ready to buy her most critical suggestion of all.

- First, she suggests that Morpheus might be taken from them, and, if he is, all those in the Zion resistance are lost. But why will he be taken from them?
- The second suggestion is that it will be because he believes the falsehood that Neo is the One, and no one can convince him otherwise.
- Third, she suggests that to save Neo’s life, Morpheus will give up his own.
- The fourth suggestion is that Neo will be able to give up his life, instead, to save Morpheus.
- The fifth suggestion is that the life of Morpheus is far more important for mankind than Neo’s life.

How is that for a load to be anxious about? Neo now thinks he knows that although he is not the One, the fate of the Zion mission will rest in his hands. But, let us ask ourselves a question. How do we think we know anything?

### HOW DOES ONE KNOW ANYTHING?

Primarily, we know in two ways, first, what we directly *experience* and, second, what we *assume*. We know our house, car, friends, streets, etc., because we objectively experience them with our outer senses. We know peaches because we have eaten them. The other way we know things is conceptually. We define these things by how we understand, visualize, imagine and assume them to

be. But underlying all our conscious sense of knowing is how we feel about them. Do we feel good, bad or indifferent. We sense that we know things best when we feel the most about them. That is what the Oracle is saying to Neo. Knowing anything is like love since “love,” as used in English, is a feeling.

But at the same time, the Oracle has laid a very interesting concept on Neo that knowing he is the One would be like knowing when and if he was in love. **“Being the One is just like being in love. No one can tell you that you are in love. You just know it. Through and through. Balls to bones.”** Now this is perfect Second Level logic and certainly seems true from that level, but is it really a truth that holds up eternally, i.e., without failure? Remember, as Mormon assured us in that Seventh Chapter of Moroni, ALL THINGS MUST FAIL except charity, the pure Agape-Love of Christ. Charity, we discussed earlier, is best defined as the Greek word, Agape. Agape is NOT a feeling. It is comprehending, or in a more common sense, understanding.

### **IF ULTIMATE KNOWING IS A FEELING, WHAT HAPPENS WHEN THE FEELINGS CHANGE?**

As we have discussed, the Greek word Phileo, which means approval, adoration and attachment, is a feeling. Ever since we first felt inadequate in the womb, we have been continually searching for those feelings of connectedness which would make us feel complete, i.e., not missing anything. When we feel that completeness from outer acknowledgement and attachment temporarily with another person, there is a joy, empathy and delight that goes with this new found union that we call love. That is Phileo, of course. As we have discussed, another name for it is “romance,” the beautiful feeling of connectedness. But ultimate completeness can never come from the outside. It must come from within, so eventually the other will fail to be successful in covering up our big black hole and the romance is over. Like everything else, it is set up to fail.

So the Oracle is saying to Neo that he does not know he is the One only because he has not yet got the feeling that he is the One. Well, let’s say that he did have the feeling. If he wasn’t so intellectual, he probably would have had the feeling by now. But many people, especially in times of spiritual rapture, KNOW they are the ONE. That is natural because, ultimately, we all are. But the problem with “knowing” based on our feelings is that those feelings, no matter how utopian, will change. So what do we do when we don’t feel it? Then we think something is missing and we are hungering and thirsting again to get back that feeling. The promise of the Tree of Life is that we will never hunger or thirst again. The reason is that the fruit is a deep understanding and comprehension of who we are that does last forever, and this is why the pure love of Christ, which is seeing the world the way He does, stays constant, whether we feel it all the time or not. That is what one begins to learn on the Third Level which enables a person to stop being dependent on the “ideal” feelings.

### **CONVERTING REVELATION INTO A CONCLUSION**

There is another valuable lesson being demonstrated here. Neo is being told about what is going to happen in the future, that Morpheus will try to give up his life to save his life, unless Neo gives his life instead. Obviously, Neo, now that he knows he is not the One, will willingly give up his life, or at least risk his life, to save Morpheus. Since he knows that both Trinity and Morpheus believe so much in the Oracle, and he, himself, has just seen amazing evidence that she knows the future, he seems to be convinced that she is speaking the truth. However, to make the setup even stronger, she does a little negative selling. She reminds him that he really doesn’t believe in prophecy because that would mean that the future is somewhat pre-programmed and he does not believe in that “fate crap.”

Perhaps that was true in the beginning, but after what Neo has been through, he is ready to believe most anything these Zion resistance people have to say. In other words, if she says it is so, *it must be so!* This is called converting a revelation into knowledge, and knowledge belongs on the Tree of Knowledge which leads to death. It is not the Tree of Life even though it promises to be nothing less. Well, shouldn’t Neo believe her? It does get him killed for a bit, but he does save Morpheus, doesn’t he? Yes, since everything works for “good,” Neo’s belief worked to bring his transformation to a head. But at tremendous cost. That is the nature of the Flaming Sword! When its work is done, we can look back and see the great cost of going the hard way, yet that is often the only way it can work. Remember, **“those I love I rebuke and chasten.”** But the point is that there is a way for those coming later to learn from those who did it the hard way. That is what these parables,

this intense symbolism, is designed to provide so that each generation might be able to find more rapid ways.

Well, if Neo had not “believed” her, what would he have done differently? Would he have ignored her amazing information. NO! Emphatically not! But neither would he have needed to make a *conclusion* out of it. Well, if he hadn’t, then what would he have done? He could have held it only as an INTERESTING POSSIBILITY! In other words, he could have held it as a NOTION.

## NOTIONS AND BELIEFS

In Chapter V of my 1977 book, *Christianity and “est,”* now titled *The Four Levels of Transformation*, I wrote extensively about “certainty.” We believe something when we feel certain about it. However, belief always creates an opposite, called non-belief. When we believe something, we must always ward off the problem that others do not believe the same. So we are constantly needing to be right, never wanting to be wrong. This inner conflict is called the double mind. This confusion is strengthened by what we have discussed before about how natural it is to have two or more feelings about almost everything.

“est,” now called The Forum, was a Third Level Transformational Training. Although it was not done in a religious setting, in fact far from it, it was to me very definitely, like this movie, giving many of the deeper levels, the meat levels, of Christian teachings. Let me quote some from the book I wrote, after attending the “est” training, on Notions and Beliefs.

### FROM “CHRISTIANITY AND ‘EST’” “THE FOUR LEVELS OF TRANSFORMATION” Excerpts from Chapter V

In the “est” training, the trainees are asked not to believe or disbelieve any of the data presented. They are asked to just listen to what is presented and get in touch with their experience of the data as a possible point of view. This is very difficult for most of us. Our double mind wants to establish the truth or error of every idea we hear — that is its survival game of being right. So what “est” is asking us to do is balance the data in the middle.

So what do we call something that we hold in the middle? We can call it a notion. “est” does not claim to present any conclusions or beliefs, AND it looks to most people like “est” is presenting NOTHING BUT CONCLUSIONS AND BELIEFS. The reason is that most of us are so very unfamiliar with notions that we make conclusions and beliefs out of them. We assume everyone else is doing the same, and most are.

What is a notion? A notion is an idea which is not held as a conclusion. Beliefs lock us in. Notions allow greater flexibility, remaining open for additional information. Notions are held squarely in the middle of the awareness. You might notice that the middle is ALWAYS SINGLE. There are no two middles, only two sides. This may be the only way to have “an eye that is single.”

To conclude means to end, finish and get done. That which is finished is closed, dead. Aliveness is open-ended, curious, flexible and spontaneous. Conclusions are stuck, fixed, all tied up. Actually, once a person understands how beautifully notions work in one’s life, there is NO NEED to make beliefs out of them. There is not one advantage that I have found in going beyond a notion. There can be many disadvantages, however....

To review, a notion is an idea, an explanation or description, which is not accepted or rejected as fact. It is never a conclusion nor a belief. We never need to stabilize a notion into a belief. Everything we can do constructively with a belief we can also do with a notion.  
(Skousen, *Four Levels of Transformation In The Gospel, Chapter V*)

## THE ORACLE PROPHESIES

One of the most thrilling aspects to the Second Level is the gift of prophecy. Not knowing the future seems to be scary and to know the future is a dream come true — we seem to believe. So the Oracle changes from being a mirror-teacher to being a prophetess.

We have no way of knowing whether she believes in her own revelations, but from all Neo can gather, she really does. She confesses that what she sees is a heavy burden for her. As Neo

comments on how Morpheus almost had him convinced, she says, “**I know. Poor Morpheus! Without him, we’re lost.**” As Neo’s interest is peaked, she confides that Neo might be better off if he didn’t know what she knows, so she asks, “**Are you sure you want to hear this?**”

As she explains, notice the depth of her concern when she declares what she firmly declares to be true. “**Morpheus believes in you, Neo. And no one; not you, not even me, can convince him otherwise. He believes it so blindly that he is going to sacrifice his life to save yours.**”

She acts like she needs Neo to understand and agree because he is her only hope if he will give up his life to save Morpheus. “**You’re going to have to make a choice. In one hand, you will have Morpheus’ life. On the other hand, you will have your own. One of you is going to die. Which one will be up to you.**”

At this point, the Oracle sympathetically acknowledges the heavy burden she has placed upon this fine young man. She apologizes and admits to him that since he does not believe in fate, her message will probably roll off of him like water on duck’s back. “**I’m sorry, kiddo, I really am. You have a good soul, and I hate giving good people bad news. Oh, don’t worry about it. The minute you step out of this room, you will remember you don’t believe in any this fate crap. You are in control of your own life, remember? Here, take a cookie. I promise by the time you have done eating it, you’ll feel right as rain.**”

From these words, it appears that she doesn’t have much hope that Neo will believe enough to give up his life to save Morpheus. But we notice that much of what the Oracle said in his visit did turn out to be TRUE. He did die saving Morpheus’ life. Her prophecy to Trinity that she would fall in love with a dead man also came to pass. Morpheus did find the One. But whether Neo felt “right as rain” after finishing her cookie is another matter. It does seem that he did worry about such a serious prediction. So her promise, probably with tongue in cheek, that he would feel “right as rain” failed to be fulfilled. How could he when the one person he would want to talk to more than any other about it would be Morpheus, but a seal is put on his lips when Morpheus tells him, “**What was said was for you and for you alone.**” And from that point of view, he really couldn’t talk to Trinity, either.

## SUMMARY

At the conclusion of Neo’s visit with the Oracle, he is given the suggestion that it is better for him to die to save Morpheus than the other way around. She does this by setting Neo up to believe that he knows something only when he feels it, i.e., what we feel, we know to be true and what we do not feel, we know is not true. This is the foundation that creates the slavery of the Matrix and the Oracle, functioning on the Magical, Spiritual Level of the Tree of Knowledge, the Tree of What Ought To be, has set Neo up to die for the cause. It turns out to be the perfect “misdirection” that is typical of how one is finally weaned away from the Spiritual Level of the Tree of Knowledge in order to complete the journey through the Flaming Sword to experience the purifying, hunger-satisfying fruit of the Tree of Life.

## PART IV

## SPIRITUAL

# **ARMAGEDDON**

**The process of losing one's life  
for His sake**

## **Chapter XXIV**

### **CYPHER'S BETRAYAL SETS UP A MATRIX AMBUSH**

Part III ended with Morpheus bringing Neo back from his visit with the Oracle. Part IV, titled the Spiritual Armageddon, has to do with the battles involving Cypher's betrayal, the capture and rescue of Morpheus, and the death of Neo. These are the battles that prepare Neo for his ultimate, spiritual breakthrough, so in a way they symbolically represent the great last battle of Armageddon that is prophesied to take place before the Second Coming. Since those prophecies can be seen as allegories of the coming of Christ in the heart, then is there also to be an Armageddon in the heart which would precede that event? Yes, there can be a final, inner battle in which something like two thirds of our inner Matrix personalities are destroyed and the remaining one third are purified with fire.

#### **THE TEAM RECOGNIZES DANGER**

The scene now changes back to the Bellview Apartment building, their Matrix Base. Mouse, up in the transition room on the eighth floor, is day-dreaming, looking at a sexy poster of the woman in red, with big, red XXXs he has marked on it. The phone rings with a message from Tank in the spacecraft who, matter of factly, announces, "*They are on their way.*"

Downstairs, as the car arrives and the four get out, Cypher welcomes Neo with a big, sly grin, outwardly manifesting his inner delight in what he believes will be Neo's immediate destruction. Switch and Apoc lead the way back into the building, quickly walking up the open stairwell toward

the eighth floor. As the group reaches one of the intermediate landings, we get a quick look at Tank at the transition controls back in the spaceship. He is concerned about something strange in the Matrix digital information regarding the Bellview Apartments. As the group continues up the stairs, Neo notices in the hallway a black cat which meows and walks out of sight, and then, a black cat, again in the same place in the hall, meows and also walks out of sight. He mutters, half to himself. "Oh, *déjà vu*."

To Trinity, these words are an alarm signal, so she quickly asks Neo, "*What did you say?*"

"*Nothing. Just a little déjà vu.*"

Trinity, urgently, asks, "*What did you see?*"

"*A black cat went by us, then another just like it.*"

Now, showing real concern, she asks, "*How much just like it? Was it the same cat?*"

Neo wasn't sure, but Morpheus, always on the alert, is now alarmed. He shouts urgently to the pair leading the way up the stairs, "*Switch! Apoc!*"

As Apoc comes down the stairs to take a look, Neo sees them all pull their guns. So he asks, "*What is it?*"

Trinity quickly replies, "*Déjà vu is usually a glitch in the Matrix. It happens when they change something.*"

As we see large cutters slicing one the main electric cables to the building, Morpheus urgently commands, "*Let's go!*"

## THE DANGEROUS NATURE OF THE MATRIX

Let's pause for a bit and familiarize ourselves with what the spaceship crew must do to venture into the Matrix, which is like a mine field of hidden dangers. Although they can use the Construct to create whatever they need in the Matrix, they must always hide from the continual search and destroy surveillances the agents have set up to hinder, even prevent, such intrusions by Zion probes.

Earlier, as preparations to take Neo to see the Oracle were being made by Morpheus, he had chosen the same eight story, Bellview Apartment building where Trinity had first brought Neo to meet Morpheus. This building, called a walk-up, was probably built in the mid eighteen-hundreds and has no elevators. Instead, it has a large, elaborately decorated stairwell that the tenants must use. Large black and white tiles are on each floor. The building is still partially furnished with old, worn out furniture, drapes and dilapidated wall paper, but it seems to have been only recently vacated, possibly scheduled for destruction. Although the building seems vacant, the lights continue to burn in the halls. Obviously, the building has been studied carefully by the crew to determine what escape avenues would be available if their access to the upstairs exit phone was blocked.

This time, because of Cypher's betrayal, their visit has not gone undetected. The agents have been able to follow Cypher's cell phone signal. While Morpheus was taking Neo to see the Oracle, the agents had their digital programmers sealing up hallways with bricks. A heavily armed Swat Team of police has been moved into position. There is to be no way any of these Zion invaders, particularly Morpheus, can escape. Although Apoc and Switch have been carefully standing guard at the rear loading platform, neither of them have seen any of these dangerous preparations. Mouse was busy playing love affair with the lady in the red dress, so he has not noticed the hallway in the next room being silently sealed with brick. Part of the Swat Team has gained access to the roof and is prepared to raid the transition room on the top floor where Mouse is. A large group of police is also stationed at ground level.

## REMEMBERING THAT THE MATRIX IS AN INSIDE JOB

What does all this represent? From Third Level Teachings, let's remember that all of this story is about our inner Matrix of automated, programmed responses. All the characters represent aspects of our inner mechanics. Most of what is on the inside of us is Matrix, the Man-Made World of conditioning created by the illusions of our conclusions. Those four major conclusions consist of (1) the demanding standards that we must conform to, (2) fixed ideas of what reality is supposed to be all about, (3) utopian ideals to compare everything to, and (4) ingenious machines which demand our dedicated attention. This Man-Made World of our own creation enslaves us while we believe it is our liberation, supposedly allowing us to exercise our highly prized "free agency."

Yet, as symbolized by Morpheus and his crew, there is also that part of the inner self which may

be gradually becoming more and more in touch with our true Self, the infinite spiritual reality of who we are. Since we planned and created the inner Matrix to experience the opposite to that infinite, spiritual reality, most individuals are born and die without waking up, without reaching the Tree of Life. After all, we did not come down here, primarily, to wake up. We came down here to experience going to sleep, called the Fall. However, we are invited to wake up while in mortality, but to do so requires that we give up our attachment to and being controlled by the life of the inner Matrix. We are to let it die. The Third Level, the Flaming Sword, is that process and we are now entering the climax of the movie which demonstrates how tough that can be.

### **IT IS DESIGNED TO BE A TOUGH OBSTACLE COURSE**

Why is it so tough? For the simple reason that the intricate construct of the Matrix had to be built strong enough to make it really work, i.e., really enslave us. This reactionary part of our inner self must become so entrenched and devious that it can only be destroyed by intensive, dedicated Awareness. The enlightened aspect of ourselves must be able to dethrone our inner devils in their lair. Otherwise, the liberty which comes from enlightenment might only create self-centered anarchy rather than true, devotional responsibility.

To bring this difficult and maturing conflict to a head, a reactionary part of our enlightened Awareness, the Judas role, can give the Matrix conditioning a critical advantage. Our possible enlightenment must be pushed to the wall where life itself seems to be at stake. So what part of our enlightenment would be the easiest to seduce? As demonstrated by Cypher, it is our *educated brilliance in the path of enlightenment* that believes there is a way to live at peace by a compromise with the Matrix. This role can only be played by that part of us which buys the possibility of a false peace with the Matrix. As Cypher demonstrates, it is easy to get trapped by over confidence in the very enlightenment that is beginning to set us free. In other words, our “near best” wants to defeat the “real best.”

### **THE BLACK CAT GIVES THE MATRIX AWAY**

As incredible as the Matrix is, the crew has found that when something in the intricate system of the Matrix is changed, glitches can very easily occur. Not every “t” gets crossed and every “i” gets dotted. So the crew carefully watches for a glitch where something is run in duplicate. It might be like an old phonograph record that has a crack, forcing the needle to play the same groove over and over. So when Trinity barely heard Neo mumble, “*déjà vu*,” she wondered if he had seen a glitch in the form of a reoccurring event.

It is interesting that the event involves a black cat. We have all heard the superstitious belief that if a black cat crosses in front of us, it means bad luck. Most people will laugh at the idea, yet just to play it safe, they will change their path when it is crossed by a black cat. We might do the same about not walking under a ladder. After all, who wants to ask for bad luck?

But let’s remember, just as “there is no spoon,” neither is there a “black cat.” It is digitalized information which can alert us to pending danger of our inner conditioning which is setting us up to push us through the gauntlet.

### **HOW DO WE LOOK OUT FOR A SPIRITUAL DÉJÀ VU?**

As we gradually reach more advanced levels of our liberation, what is it that can give us clues as to a dangerous trap being developed by our inner Matrix? What aspect, symbolized as the black cat, can tip us off that we are still stuck in a repetitive groove that we thought was no longer a reactionary part of our slavery?

Simply, it is the subtle resentment we can still feel for not getting our way or for being ridiculed by others. Even though we may have gradually moved out of the right/wrong game on many levels, the natural judgmentalness of the mind is still tempted to see another’s disagreement with us as being wrong and unfair. So, thinking we are now wise enough not to be “judgmental” in such “trifling” matters, it is easy to do the very thing we think we are not doing. If and when we repeat these old patterns of hurt feelings, we might suddenly notice that “*oops, we are doing it again.*” In other words, *déjà vu*?

If Neo had not spoken out loud, the crew would not have known in advance about the problem, but they would have still found themselves trapped. All kinds of things in our everyday life can

suddenly turn into irritants if we are making them important. Making things important, especially on higher spiritual levels, is our Matrix still at work. So as we become aware of these recurrences of old, lingering habits, we see an emotional repetition, the *déjà vu*, as an alarm signal that our inner Matrix is ready to strike. The Matrix, totally programmed for its own survival, finds ways to hedge us in and block our way of escape. New levels of conflict are put in our path for us to either run or fight futilely for *our lives*.

### THE ALTERNATIVE TO EITHER FIGHTING OR RUNNING

We notice Morpheus immediately alerts the group to rush up to the exit phone on the eighth floor to escape. This represents our attempt to run from the problem, and when that doesn't work, to fight back as best we can, which can often be against overwhelming odds. This is what creates the inner Armageddon which leads to one disaster after another.

In our Matrix allegory, the exit phone had to be hard wired to the Matrix rather than a wireless cell-phone. We are the same. Our exit phone is directly attached to our inner Matrix. Remember, the instantaneous way back is simply to say, "*Hello Mr. Devil, now you go back to hell where you belong.*" And zap, we are back. Then we can laugh and acknowledge a prayer of gratitude for being reminded again what feeling like being a victim is like. We forget so quickly!

But what happens when, as in this part of the movie, the devils within have become so deeply entrenched that we are not able to get to the exit phone. In other words, the devil doesn't go back to hell where he belongs? This part of the movie demonstrates what we can to do about such an impasse. We can find another way of escape.

### THE BATTLE BEGINS

As the group quickly checks around to see what has been changed, Mouse, upstairs, is answering the call from the spaceship. It is Tank calling urgently, "*The hard-line is tracked. Get out!*"

Mouse, realizing the exit phone will no longer work, steps out toward their planned route of escape. But he finds the way into the hall blocked by a brick wall. Realizing the danger, he quickly goes back and opens a chest of loaded machine guns. As he is attacked by a Swat Team storming into the room from the roof, he opens fire, but is blasted in return and crashes to the floor.

We are given a quick look in the spaceship where the body of Mouse is jerking while he is being shot and then goes silent as his life-signal goes flat. Tank, realizing what has happened to Mouse's consciousness in the Matrix, grimaces in agony.

Trinity, hearing what is happening upstairs, groans, "*Oh no!*"

As the group comes to the other side of the same brick wall, Cypher, pretending not to know why they were discovered by the agents, shouts innocently, "*That is what they changed. We're trapped. There is no way out!*"

Morpheus takes charge, declares, "*Be calm!*" Then to Trinity, he commands, "*Give me your phone.*"

Trinity warns, urgently, "*They will be able to track it.*"

Morpheus answers, "*We have no choice.*"

As he calls the ship, Tank answers, "*Operator.*"

*"Tank! The structural drawings of this building. Find it fast!"*

Tank, after rapidly punching in some information, shouts, "*I got it!*"

Next we get a quick look at the rest of the ground-level Swat Team coming up the stairs with their flashlights, trying to locate the group.

Morpheus, whispering over the phone, "*I need the main wet wall.*"

We get a quick look at Agent Green who learns of their location by being able to tune in on the cell phone conversation, says, "*Eighth floor.*"

Tank, on the phone to Morpheus, starts giving him directions, "*Look straight ahead.*"

As they start moving out, Apoc turns to Neo, handing him a gun, saying hopefully, "*I hope the Oracle gave you some good news.*"

Tank continues giving instructions on the cell phone, "*Now left, that's it.*"

As the group spots a cavity under a sink, they quickly climb into the space between the two walls filled with the building's ancient plumbing.

## FINDING OUR WET WALL

At first, the crew races up to the eighth floor where they know the exit phone is located. When they find the way to the transition room is blocked, and at the same time, they see the flashlights of the police below them racing up the stairwell, they realized they are being trapped. They can't go to the roof and jump because the way is blocked. So he asks Tank to find the wet wall that they can use for an escape back down to street level.

During the Eighteen-hundreds, when indoor plumbing was being invented, tall buildings were constructed with a separation between the two walls behind the bathrooms to provide a water supply and sewer outlets to each lavatory, called the wet wall. Since this narrow space went the full height of the building, Morpheus knew that, although using the narrow space would be risky, it was the only chance they would have to get down secretly and out of the building undetected.

What does this represent? If they could have reached the exit phone, they would have quickly been transitioned back to the space ship. Remember, we all have an exit phone. "*Hello, Mr. Devil, Now you go back to hell where you belong.*" But as in this case, the Matrix is already well entrenched, so it is too late for the usual exit system to work. You may have noticed that if we get too deep into our psychological and emotional negativity, the devil just doesn't leave! In other words, the heaviness of negative emotions does not disappear. At those times, we find ourselves still trapped in the Matrix by sensing impending disaster. We are not talking about physical danger here, but the sense of psychological helplessness and vulnerability. It is time to find and use what is symbolized as the wet wall.

## OUR WET WALL IS THE “NOT-KNOWING-MIND”

In every situation when the world seems to be crashing in around us, with one uncomfortable circumstance piling up on top of another, there is a special solution to the overwhelming stress. As with this building, the very structure of our inner Man-Made World can provide an alternative way of escape. Like the hidden wet wall, this escape is never readily apparent. So what do we do? We do what Morpheus did. He asked for help from the spaceship. So how do we do that?

We start by acknowledging that we are in a state of having a “*not-knowing-mind*” by simply recognizing that we don’t know what to do. As obvious as it sounds, that is often a very difficult first step. It is so easy to believe that we do or should know what to do when, in reality, we do not. We are like the people in Lehi’s vision who were on the strait and narrow path but, unknowingly, lost in the mists of darkness and wandering off the path. Only a few realized they were actually lost, so they stopped, got on their knees and found the end of the iron rod. So how do we do that when we are under the weight of disturbing circumstances?

Just as Morpheus “called home,” it is time to tune in submissively to our own inner guidance and, when we do, it is possible for inspiration to come. Remember, the principle of the “not-knowing-mind.” When you discover that you don’t know what to do, then, instantly, you know what to do. Simply, *gather more information and stay in motion*. Just as Morpheus went back to Tank for the information, we can go quiet and tune into our inner knowing. And just as Tank guided them down halls and into the appropriate room where there was an existing hole into the wet wall, we will find that when we yield to that inner guidance, alternative ways of dealing with the situations will come to our mind. Then, without assuming which one of these alternatives is the “only right one,” we can choose which one we want to use for an *experiment*.

## EMOTIONAL SUFFERING IS NOT SO MUCH ABOUT “NOW” AS IT IS ABOUT THE “FUTURE”

So what is the answer to emotional suffering? Simply, we see the inner glitch for what it is, that it is that aspect of our mind, the Accuser part, that thrives on misery by telling us that what is happening *now* WILL NOT BE TO OUR ADVANTAGE LATER. Remember, those kinds of thoughts are coming from one of the five types of lies of the mind in which it claims to know *what it doesn’t know*. So we can quickly remember that our *mind has no such knowledge* as to what will or will not be to our *ultimate advantage*, even though our believing that it does is behind most of our suffering.

Obviously, the mind does have a pretty good idea about what would or would not be to our future *comfort*, but our lives have proven that what is uncomfortable is not necessarily to our disadvantage

and, visa versa, what is comfortable is not necessarily to our advantage. God is in charge and everything works for our ultimate “good,” right on schedule, but not necessarily for our comfort. Once we see the true source of our inner suffering, that we are believing in a lie of the mind, we can reject the dooms-day predictions and quickly find our way back down to solid ground, i.e., back to the Real World. Allegorically, we have found our wet wall of escape.

We can discover the blessing of the “not-knowing-mind” by several simple steps. First, we notice that we are frustrated and that frustration only occurs when we get *out of time*. We start realizing that what is so threatening about the present difficult circumstances is that we believe they threaten our future. We are out of the NOW and caught in the FUTURE. But the future is not real. It is only assumed. So we are worried because we are assuming some terrible things about the future, like we are going to be deprived of a loved one, or be broke, become homeless, despised, or whatever. That frightening concept of the future may be a worry about conditions that are several hours away or years away. These are the kinds of thoughts that bring discouragement and depression on the one hand, or a panic glitch in the solar plexus on the other.

So what is the second step? We simply remember that we do not really KNOW FOR SURE *what circumstances in the future would be or would not be to our advantage*. Since we know we do not know, we dismiss the feelings that are attached to the lies as “*false feelings of emergency*.” In other words, we see the illusion of the Vicious Cycle that the mind’s lies have created for us. As soon as we accept that we don’t know, then the worry tends to come to a halt. Then, in contrast to being all tied up, we can relax, take stock of what is to be done in the “now” by gathering information, and get busy, i.e., stay in motion.

As it turns out, the wet wall allows all but Morpheus to escape. In the next chapter we will look at some of the allegorical messages we might gather from his capture.

### SUMMARY

As Cypher’s betrayal has enabled the agents to set a trap for the crew, we also will find that our old inner conditioning will be tested from time to time. Our reaction is a reminder, like a *déjà vu*—oh, oh, *I am doing it again*. If we are already deep into the resistance, then the exit of sending the devil back to hell may not work. At that time, we can find an escape through recognizing that we have a “not-knowing-mind,” our wet wall, and turn to our inner and outer truth to gather information and stay in motion. In this way, we see the nature of our trap, that we have been listening to one of the five lies of the mind, particularly the one that claims to know what will be or will not be to our advantage, thus trying to answer one of the three questions of eternal torment.

## Chapter XXV

### THE CAPTURE OF MORPHEUS

Agent Smith’s purpose for Cypher’s betrayal is to capture Morpheus so he can discover Zion’s main frame codes and, thus, destroy Zion. As the Oracle told Neo, Morpheus will be willing to sacrifice his life to save him. Since she agreed with Neo that he is not the One, he is carrying the new burden of believing that if Morpheus gives up his life for an erroneous belief in him, the whole struggle for Zion would be lost.

In this chapter, we will take a little time out to remember what Morpheus can represent in our journey toward the Tree of Life. It has been said that for something new to come into our life, something old must be given up. Until now, Morpheus was the essential ingredient in Neo’s transformation. With his capture, Neo is forced to stand on his own, and in that process, he gives up his life, which in turn, leads to finding his real life. We have some interesting allegorical possibilities to consider in regards to the capture of Morpheus. But first, let us move on with the story.

#### MORPHEUS GETS HIMSELF CAPTURED SO NEO CAN ESCAPE

In the next scene, we see Agent Green asking Agent Smith, sarcastically, “*Where are they?*”

It is rather obvious that neither Agent Green nor Agent Brown are in sympathy with Agent Smith's belief that they can benefit by making a deal with any of the Zion intruders. In fact, when Agent Smith was originally trying to recruit Neo but had to bug him instead, he admitted, "**My colleagues feel that I am wasting my time with you.**" In addition, his colleagues are probably not at all happy with the deal Agent Smith has made with Cypher. So even among the Matrix' elite, i.e., our Accuser, Blamer and Complainier, there is conflict.

What is now frustrating the three agents is that Morpheus and his crew have suddenly disappeared. No one can find them anywhere in the building. Secretly, they are in the wet wall, stealthily climbing down from the eighth floor. But Cypher, realizing that Morpheus has discovered a way to escape the trap, knows he must do something to help the agents. So, with dust falling from Morpheus above him, he sneezes slightly, then sneezes again, loudly. A member of the Swat Team on the other side of the wall hears the sneeze. He shouts, "*In the wall! They are in the wall!*"

The Swat Team starts breaking through the wall with high-powered, machine gun fire. As the escape route is exposed, a great deal of violence takes place. We see the team, including Neo, firing back through the wall at the Swat Team. Agent Smith, who was in another part of the building, takes over the body of the policeman who made the discovery. Then he pushes his arm through the wall, right by Neo's head, grabbing his shoulder. Cypher, warning everyone that they are now fighting the unconquerable foe, shouts, "*It's an agent.*"

Neo, attempting to give his life to save Morpheus, grabs Agent Smith's arm so he can be pulled through the wall which he hopes will give Morpheus time to escape. Morpheus, who is above Neo and seeing that Neo is about to be captured, uses his head as a battering ram to break through the wall and, with his feet, pushes himself out into the lavatory. He lands on Agent Smith in a pile of plaster and dust. Agent Smith, seeing the man on top of him is none other than Morpheus, lets Neo go. Morpheus yells to the group, "*Run! Run! Take Neo. That is all that matters.*"

Neo, who has been released, yells to contradict him, "*No! No! We can't leave him!*"

Trinity, realizing Morpheus has let himself be caught in order to save Neo, shouts, "*We have to!*"

Apoc and Switch let loose and go into free fall down the wall, but Neo hangs on. As Trinity pulls down on Neo's boot which breaks him loose, they both fall and crash to the basement. A fierce gun battle takes place, including canisters of spewing gas. Trinity, seeing Cypher lagging behind, yells urgently, "*Cypher! Come on!*"

Cypher starts to come but, conveniently, stumbles in the thick smoke. The crew cannot wait for him and climb through a floor grate into the sewers.

Back up in the building, as Agent Smith looks at the man on top of him, he says with a sneer, "*The great Morpheus! We meet at last.*"

"*And you are?*"

"*Smith. Agent Smith!*"

Morpheus, with disgust, "*You all look the same to me!*"

Agent Smith starts hitting Morpheus with his head and then throws him, crashing against the lavatory wall. A violent Kung Fu fight takes place, but Morpheus is finally beaten nearly senseless. Agent Smith speaks a command to the Swat Team that has been silently standing by, "*Take him.*"

As Agent Smith walks away, the Swat Team, collectively, starts beating up on Morpheus. As the scene changes to street level, we get a brief look at a manhole in a busy street being opened from below. Trinity is climbing out.

## MORPHEUS ALLOWS HIMSELF TO BE CAPTURED

As Morpheus realizes that Neo is being captured by an agent, he breaks out of the wall to save Neo. Allegorically, Morpheus has given up the safety of the "not-knowing-mind," symbolized by the wet wall. Our inner guide does this when it takes on the Accuser in the mind by claiming to know what ought to be in order to argue. So Morpheus, to save Neo, knows he has placed himself in a no-win situation with an agent. Neo, of course, having been set up by the Oracle, wants no part of being saved and would have gone in with Morpheus to try to rescue him, even at the cost of his own life. But Trinity obeys the order from Morpheus and breaks Neo free from his foothold on the wall. They fall all the way to the basement where they can escape into the sewers. Morpheus, in turn, knows that

he cannot win against an agent but puts up an incredible fight to give the others time to escape. What does this represent?

Neo, who represents our Awareness, is willing to go for broke to save the “truth” of his inner guide. Trinity, who represents our feelings, pulls him loose so they can escape. In other words, Morpheus sacrifices himself. So what does Morpheus represent in this part of the story?

### **MORPHEUS REPRESENTS OUR REVEALED TESTIMONY**

Earlier in this book, I suggested that Morpheus could be seen as representing the role of the Holy Ghost which performs the function of guiding us into all truth. But let’s remember, the Holy Ghost can only point us in the direction of all truth, one step at a time. It cannot give us all truth, only serve as a guide and witness to the partial truths as they are revealed on each of the first Three Levels of the gospel.

As Morpheus said to Neo, he could show him the door but could not take him through it. “All truth,” ultimately centers around the fact that we are the One. And truly *knowing* that truth can only come from *experiencing that Oneness directly*, not vicariously. So in Mormon doctrine, the Holy Ghost is the “guide” to all truth but does not make us one with all truth. That process of finally becoming one with all truth is called the Second Comforter, which is the Infinite Christ Himself.

So if we see Morpheus playing the same role for Neo as the Holy Ghost does to us, then, in a real sense, the role of Morpheus represents our revealed testimony of the Restored Gospel. That testimony includes all that we understand to be true, such as the atonement of Christ, the *Book of Mormon*, Joseph Smith restoring the true Church, our possessing the one and only divine priesthood, and the importance and validity of our ordinances, etc.

We call these many components of our faith “*the firm foundation*” upon which we stand. To us, the miraculous history of the Lord’s work as found in our scriptures, both ancient and modern, when witnessed to us by the Holy Ghost, becomes our *self-evident reality*. With our firm conviction in the Restoration of the true Church of Jesus Christ, it is our testimony that we have the fullness of truth. However, that testimony, of necessity, is exclusionary, for it implies that no one else has the full truth. So, if we are to be set free, that is a part of our life that must be replaced with a newer, more universal realization.

### **THE ONE AND ONLY TRUTH IS REPLACED BY THE ONE AND ONLY LOVE**

When it comes to our spiritual transformation, strange as this may seem, the secure safety-net provided by our revealed testimony can keep us from being exposed to the full, excruciating cleansing of the Iron Rod/Flaming Sword. As I explained in *Book II, Finding the Mark*, in Chapters IX, X and XI, the key process of the Third Level is for us to see the *illusions of our conclusions*, including many aspects of our original, inspired testimony. That sense of security which comes from our firm conviction that we are right and everyone else is essentially wrong MUST FAIL. It cannot coexist with perfect Love.

Again, the Tree of Knowledge, which is about fixed knowledge, is DIVISIVE and the Tree of Life, which is about the pure love of Christ, is UNIFYING. Christ’s pure Love never fails because it is a manifestation of the absolute and infinite Oneness of God in all His creation. Everything else is “construct,” added only temporarily by design.

With charity, as revealed by a direct experience of being in and of the Infinite Christ, EVERYTHING made by and through the light of Christ becomes the TRUTH IN CHRIST, rather than the truth in and of itself. That is why Paul could testify that when one receives the gift of that perfect Love, one is able to BELIEVE ALL THINGS.

The reason is that in that state one sees that each person’s individual truth is his or her *perception* of what is. As we have said, each individual’s truth is believed to be *THE truth*. By this new way of seeing individualized truth, there is no boasting or vanity which often comes by a revealed testimony about there being just the *one and only truth*. Instead, with this new realization, there comes a great humility and awesome respect for the incredible majesty of Christ, who is the light that enlightens *each and every mind*.

Most of us gained a great deal of self-confidence when we finally received a revealed testimony. We felt wonderfully special for having been given assurance that we had found the *one and only truth*. That testimony has served us well, but, believe it or not, it is set up to fail. Yet, it cannot fail

while we cling tightly to our sense of security and confidence that we have arrived and that for us, *all is well in Zion*. We might be like the faithful and zealous Israelites in Lehi's vision who were in the great and spacious building. Because of their false sense of security which came from their abiding testimonies that they had the one and only truth, they were mocking and condemning their brothers and sisters who were following a far more spiritual path.

### FACING THE FALSE SENSE OF SECURITY

Since we as a Church, like Israel of old, are also under condemnation, we might remember how Nephi warned us in these latter-days to beware of being lulled into a false sense of security because of our positive attitude and sense of security about the Church doing so well.

**And others will he pacify, and lull them away into carnal security, that they will say; All is well in Zion; yea, Zion prospereth, all is well—and thus the devil cheateth their souls, and leadeth them away carefully down to hell.** (2 Nephi 28:21)

What might the statement that he "leadeth them away carefully down to hell" mean? Well, to me, that is what this part of the movie is demonstrating. Let's remember that the forbidden Tree of Knowledge creates the chains of fear and bondage, called the chains of hell, i.e., the Fall, by which all mankind is cut off from experiencing their Oneness with God. Thus, death and hell come from a sense of "separateness" and heaven comes from the sense of "Oneness." So Nephi seems to be warning the saints of our day to be aware of Zion's obvious success for it can comfortably distract them from the process of being cleansed and purified through the chastisement of the Lord.

We hear a great deal these days about how well the Church is doing, which in so many ways it certainly is. But those seekers who hunger for higher levels of spiritual Awareness want more than gospel milk, helpful as that may be. They want to personally experience what Paul calls "*the fellowship of the mystery of Christ*." That full, never failing fellowship can only be temporarily tasted on the Spiritual Level of the Tree of Knowledge where, thanks to the Holy Ghost, most of our testimonies rest. In contrast, the full, permanent fellowship of the mystery of Christ rests solely on a singleness of heart and child-likeness of mind resulting from a redeeming and purifying experience of being One with the Infinite Christ

### OUR TESTIMONY OF THE OLD TRUTH MUST DIE FOR A TESTIMONY OF THE NEW TRUTH TO BE BORN

Isn't it true that most faithful members of the Church see their testimony as the *inner core of their lives*? Nothing has greater, basic value for it is the cornerstone of their eternal family, key to exaltation and the grounds for righteous living. So we might ask, is that the *life* we must lose?"

Christ said, "**He that findeth his life shall lose it, and he that loseth his life for My sake SHALL FIND IT.**" (Matthew 10:39) The life we must lose was not to be our physical life as much as it was to be our *old spiritual life*. Remember, when Christ said those words, He was speaking to His fellow Jews who were willing to live and die for their testimonies that they had the one and only true Church. Even today, to faithful orthodox Jews, their testimony is their life. If a family member is converted to another faith, all the relatives hold a heart-breaking funeral for the person who is considered to be worse than dead. In the days of Christ, in order to accept that Jesus was their long-awaited Messiah, they had to *lose their old testimony* that their rigid Law of Moses, with all of its sacred ordinances and performances, along with honoring and following their priesthood leadership, was *the only way they could be saved*.

So it might be with us in modern Israel. The life we must lose may be our proud, inspired *testimony that our Church is also the one and only true Church*, the only way one can be exalted. As long as the "firm foundation" upon which we so proudly stand holds firm, it is very possible that we will refuse to reach up, *helplessly*, to the loving, infinite arms of our Savior, trusting totally and completely in His mercy, knowing that we deserve NOTHING in and of ourselves. But such a surrender is very difficult for most members because of the way we understand the gospel. In our present teachings, we stress the principle that we cannot receive this kind of full sanctifying grace until we have done ALL WE CAN DO.

Yet, if we will be honest enough to admit it, none of us has done all we could have done? So we try and struggle harder, or we convince ourselves that just trying is, ultimately, all that is required. We assume that the miracle of His purifying and sanctifying grace, for most of us, is only for the *next*

life.

My entire *Book II, Finding The Mark, How To Grow The Tree of Life in Our Heart*, emphasizes the fact that this kind of vain belief in our relative worthiness is not only a two edge sword, but a dead end. “**They will say; All is well in Zion; yea, Zion prospereth, all is well.** In contrast, true liberation comes from yielding, not struggling. But our testimony stresses that we must struggle. So *our Holy Ghost inspired testimony, which assures us that we have the only way, must die!*

### TAKE ANOTHER LOOK AT YOUR TESTIMONY

In your past, having a testimony has given you an inner assurance, possibly from a miraculous witness, that not only is this Church true, it is the only true Church on the face of the earth. I don’t think you would be reading this book if that testimony had not already been knocked around a bit. You are probably finding it harder and harder to believe that we, and we alone, have all the answers. Has that been bothering you of late? In earlier years, your testimony, along with its burdens, was a great comfort, but it is probably now more open to question. In fact, it may have already somewhat evaporated, causing great concern by your loved ones. So let’s see if the allegory of this movie can give us some keys about understanding how the flaming sword works in regards to our Holy Ghost inspired testimony.

If our old testimony must fail, WHY does the Holy Ghost reveal that testimony to us? Well, to make the preparatory gospel work in our lives, we must first believe in some specific and limited form of good and evil, right and wrong, truth and error. As Lehi said to Jacob, “**Men are instructed sufficiently [by the Spirit of God] that they know good from evil. And the law is given unto men.**” (2 Nephi 2:5) This is the essential preparation, but it is also a condemnation for the natural man. Even though he can try with all his might, he will still not fully live up to all of his knowledge. In other words, he doesn’t always do that which he knows is the best good and, on the other hand, sometimes does that which he knows is less than good.

So way down deep in our hearts we feel ultimately unworthy. As Lehi said, “**Yea, by the temporal law they are all cut off.**” But what about the spiritual law? The Tree of Knowledge on its Spiritual Level is designed to fail even more painfully. As Lehi adds, “**By the spiritual law they perish from that which is good and become miserable forever.**” (2 Nephi 2:5)

### THAT WHICH IS IN PART SHALL BE DONE AWAY

In his great sermon on charity, I Corinthians, Thirteenth Chapter, Paul spoke very specifically about a vital shift which comes with perfect Agape-Love. Notice the wide scope of his declaration—which in essence explains that the perfection in Christ’s Love comes only after the departure of the incomplete and imperfection of what we have harvested from the Tree of Knowledge.

**Charity never faileth, but whether there be [inspired] prophecies, they shall fail; whether there be [the gift of] tongues, they shall cease, whether there be [revealed] knowledge, it shall vanish away. FOR WE KNOW IN PART, AND WE PROPHESY IN PART, but WHEN THAT WHICH IS PERFECT IS COME [and the gift of the pure Love of Christ is the only thing that is perfect], THEN THAT WHICH IS IN PART SHALL BE DONE AWAY.**

**When I was a child, I spake as a child, I understood as a child, I thought as a child; but when I became a man, I put away childish things.** (1 Corinthians 13:8-11)

No wonder Paul started out that Chapter Thirteen by talking about the inadequacy of one’s revealed testimony of the one and only truth, when he wrote: “**Though I have the gift of prophecy, and understand all mysteries, and all knowledge, and though I have all faith, so that I could remove mountains, and HAVE NOT CHARITY [Christ’s greatest gift of His Love], I AM NOTHING.**”

### OUR TESTIMONY OF OUR FIRM FOUNDATION WILL BE PUT ON THE LINE

As you watch this part of the movie, see Morpheus as your revealed testimony which has guided you so far, but is now willing to give up its existence in order for the Neo part of you to become who you really are, the One.

But why must this be so? Why is our revealed testimony in the way of awakening? Because our testimony, as comprehensive as it was, actually included a very limited aspect of all truth. For one thing, it excluded many other aspects of God's hand being in all things. In addition, there were many parts of that testimony which will fail. In other words, part of our facts can be found to be inaccurate knowledge, just as a child's knowledge must be continually revised, sometimes discarded, to keep up with the growing understanding of the universe.

When I write the last book in *The Blessing Hitherto Unknown Series, Book IV*, titled *Perfection In Christ*, I will tell my own step by step experience of how that happened to me. As I dug deeper into lesser known, Church historical documents, I began to find many serious problems with our history. These documents contradicted some important "facts" that I had "known" to be absolutely and categorically true. These discoveries finally became so insurmountable that I could no longer believe that Joseph Smith was really what he thought he was. Why? Because too many of his short-term prophecies failed, too many revelations had to be revised, too many doctrines ended up gradually being changed, and too many "facts" turned out not to be facts at all. When I write Book IV, it will include more details of what I found.

### **RETURNING FROM DISBELIEF TO A KNOWING**

In 1970, at the age of 49, after a life of enthusiastic and full commitment and dedication to the Church, I left as a non-believer. I want to tell the details of my story of disillusionment because, as in my case, even though it destroyed my original testimony, I ended up with one stronger than ever. In fact, my story has more than a silver lining. It has a golden lining.

Seven years later, in 1977, to my absolute surprise, the Lord gave me a two hour experience in which He let me understand that all of that "foolishness" was His doing, for He created the foolishness, those contradictions, in His Church to CONFFOUND us "wise guys." That incredible reconversion was, to say the least, a shock—actually one of the most inspiring and life changing shocks of my life.

So when I write Book IV, and before I begin telling what destroyed my testimony, the reader will be warned that although this information may be very shocking and discouraging, *it all comes out miraculously wonderful in the end*. However, for me, when I was in the midst of this collapse of my testimony, I did not realize that my course would end up with a stronger, though very different, testimony than ever.

### **A NEW, VIBRANT TESTIMONY THAT GOES BEYOND NEED**

For all of those first 49 years, because of my hard-won, revealed testimony, I had been willing to give up anything and everything, even my life for what I "knew" to be the truth. Then for the seven years that followed, I did not realize that I had become a "wise guy," like the Pharisees of old. However, because of that two hour experience at the age of 56, I was totally *reconverted* to the divinity of the Church in an entirely NEW WAY, a way that had no fear or burden, just a marvelous confidence and a peaceful and exhilarating joy. I was not only shown why the great Jehovah had *created* the Church just the way it has been and is now, including those inspired men He has continually chosen to lead it, but also the miraculous future ahead for "*each child of Zion and the Church*," when vast numbers begin to receive "*a blessing hitherto unknown*" that President Benson told us about.

So I believe that your old testimony, like Morpheus taking Neo down the rabbit hole, will need to go to the death so that it can come forth in a total newness of life. It is nothing to be afraid of, but it may not be without pain and anguish as you give up your many pearls to buy the one pearl of great price. Your testimony, if it has not already, will go from being exclusionary to inclusionary, from finite to infinite, from fear to love.

I see this as being represented in the capture and near death of Morpheus, then his narrow rescue, while Neo is left to fight on his own, which finally culminates in his death. Particularly interesting, surprisingly, is the insider role played by Cypher who sets all of this up. So back to our story.

### **SUMMARY**

If we see that our Holy Ghost revealed testimony is the keystone to our lives, and we are to give up our life for His sake, then the capture of Morpheus can symbolically demonstrate that fact. In seeing Morpheus' voluntary capture to save Neo as a very direct parallel to the shift which must occur

in our exclusionary testimony of the Church, which separates us from the rest of the world, to an inclusionary testimony which unites us with God's hand being in all things, including every other church. In that inclusionary testimony wherein we eventually experience the "mind of Christ, we see our Church being offered the most critical and central role for the latter-days as soon as we humbly come out from under condemnation. Unless we are willing to lose the self-satisfaction of the old, central focus of our life, we will fail to surrender ourselves to the chastisement of the Christ's Flaming Sword.

## Chapter XXVI

### CYPHER SEEKS REVENGE

Let us also remember what Cypher represents. In the awakening process, there is inevitably a part of our growing Awareness, actually a very advanced part, that thinks there is a way to adapt the program to better fulfill our personal desires for comfort by making a deal with the Man-Made World. In his Judas role, Cypher believes that, with his "superior and advanced knowledge," he could have both sides. But to do this, he must take matters into his own hands by getting rid of the other aspects still "falsely" loyal to the cause of Zion.

#### CYPHER CAPTURES THE SPACESHIP

The scene changes to Cypher calling Tank from a phone booth, with a flaming, overturned truck nearby. He explains why he is calling, "*Yeah. I need an exit fast. Yeah, there was an accident. A goddamn car accident. All of a sudden, boom! Somebody up there still likes me.*"

Tank responds, "*Gotcha.*"

Cypher, reemphasizing his urgency, "*Get me out of here fast!*"

Tank responds, "*Nearest exit is Frankland area, in an old TV repair shop.*"

Cypher, as he rushes off to beat the others back to the spaceship, answers, "*Right!*"

Soon after, Tank answers as Trinity calls the ship on her cell phone. Trinity, with a great concern about having left their leader behind, asks, "*Is Morpheus alive, Tank?*"

*"They are moving him. I don't know where they are taking him to yet."*

Trinity tells her group, "*He is alive.*" Then to Tank, she says, "*We need an exit.*"

Tank, confused by Cypher's previous call, asks, "*You are not with Cypher?*"

Trinity, surprised, questions him, "*Cypher?*"

*"He is in the Frankland area."*

Trinity acknowledges the message. While she and her group are making their way towards the repair shop, Cypher is already breaking into it. The phone rings and Dozer pushes the controls to transport him back to his transition chair in the control room. As Tank is busy, Cypher uncovers a hidden electronic gun, comes up behind Tank and electrocutes him in the back. In great pain, Tank makes a lunge at the traitor. Cypher finishes him off with another blast. Then Dozer comes charging, screaming in anger at Cypher but is also killed. His body crashes into the equipment of the spaceship, making a huge mess. Cypher throws the electronic gun down by Tank's smoldering body. He picks up Tank's phone-headset and puts it on. He dials Trinity on her cell phone and says, "*Hi Trinity.*"

Trinity exclaims in bewilderment, "*Cypher! Where is Tank?*"

Cypher ignores the question while he moves over to where Trinity's body is strapped into her transition chair. As he holds his face close to hers, he talks to her body while she listens on her phone, saying wistfully, "*You know, for a long time I thought I was in love with you. I used to dream about you. You are a beautiful woman, Trinity. Too bad things turned out this way.*"

Trinity, realizing what Cypher must have done, exclaims, "*You killed them!*"

Apoc, wondering what must be going on, ask, "*What?*"

Switch, knowing Cypher the way she does, is fully aware of what this means. She groans in desperation, "*Oh God!*"

Cypher, justifying his ruthless betrayal, explains, “*I am tired, Trinity. I am tired of this world. Tired of fighting. I’m tired of this ship, of being cold, of eating this goddamn goop every day. But most of all, I’m tired of that jack-off and all of his bullshit.*”

## THE CYPHER PART OF US WANTS TO KILL THE AWAKENING PROGRAM

To himself, Cypher is not a traitor but a realist. Someone has to bring this futile war to an end, and he has chosen himself to do it, and then come out smelling like a rose in the process. Not only has he allied with the enemy, and got Morpheus out of the way, but he has arranged to take over the spaceship and finish off the crew.

What does this represent? While there is that part of our Awareness that fears losing our firm testimony based on the old paradigm, there is another part that wants to go for broke and throw all the old restrictions and obligations out the window. This is the results of losing the old fears but not all of the old needs, which show up as lust. With the more advanced understanding of freedom in the higher teachings, this can be a very critical part of the process. Forsaking the old restraints can be destructive to the idea of family, career, Church and general morality. This is called crashing and it can happen to those on the path more frequently than any of us would want. So be forewarned. The Cypher-Judas within us is the most powerful tool the Accuser has to save his kingdom.

### CYPHER’S JUSTIFICATIONS

Cypher moves from Trinity’s body and straddles himself on the lap of Morpheus’ body. With a big smirk, he starts talking to the leader he has betrayed, saying, “*Goodbye, asshole. I’ll bet you never saw this coming, did you? God, I wish I could be there when they break you. I wish I could walk in just when it happens so that, right then, you would know it was me.*”

Trinity, hearing Cypher’s boasting on her cell phone, exclaims, “*You gave them Morpheus.*”

Cypher answers in angry disgust, “*He lied to us, Trinity. He tricked us!*” Then speaking again to Morpheus’ body, “*If you had told us the truth, we would have told you to shove the red pill right up your ass!*”

Trinity, interrupting him, strongly declares, “*It is not true, Cypher. He set us free.*”

“*You call this free? All I do is what he tells me to do. If I have got to choose between that and the Matrix, I chose the Matrix.*”

Trinity, warning him, testifies, “*The Matrix isn’t real!*”

“*I disagree, Trinity. I think the Matrix can be more real than this world. All I have to do is pull the plug here and there you have to watch Apoc die.*”

Switch, realizing that Cypher can so easily kill her teammate, screams, “*No!!*”

As Cypher pulls out Apoc’s life-support plug, Trinity, Switch and Neo see Apoc die instantly before their eyes. Switch kneels down over his body in great horror, crying out, “*No!*”

### CYPHER’S ANGER AT MORPHEUS

Remember, Apoc and Switch were originally aligned with Cypher in wanting to kill Neo. So it is interesting that after Cypher blames Trinity for not returning his love and then blaming Morpheus for involving them in a hopeless war, he turns on his own buddies, Apoc and Switch, to destroy them first.

What does this represent? Cypher, who wears a jacket of leather, indicating that he is more advanced than either Apoc or Switch, represents that part of our enlightenment which responds in the extreme to the gradual destruction of the old paradigm of our inspired testimony. It can happen to all of us. As we begin to discover that more and more of our revealed knowledge is incomplete on one hand and inaccurate on another, there can be a part of us that wants to throw the baby out with the bathwater. We can, at times, feel betrayed and deceived, just as Cypher feels Morpheus has victimized them. This resentment, even rebellion, can take many forms, some overt and others covert.

In Lehi’s vision, just like the first group that partook of the Tree of Life and then resented their being mocked, wandered away into forbidden paths, so can those who are on the way. Just as Cypher

felt fully justified, the rebellious seeker will do the same. However, it is a costly detour, even though it may be the only way some will finally wake up.

### TANK, MIRACULOUSLY, COMES TO THE RESCUE

After Cypher has terminated his buddy, Apoc, he gleefully teases Trinity by saying, “*Welcome to the real world, hey baby.*”

Trinity warns, desperately, “*You can’t go back!*”

Cypher contradicts her, “*No? That is what you think. They are going to reinsert my body and I go to sleep. And when I wake up I won’t remember a goddamn thing. By the way, if you have anything terribly important to say to Switch, I suggest you say it now.*”

Trinity pleads, “*No, please don’t!*”

Switch, realizing that she will be terminated next, pleads, “*Not like this! Not like this!*”

She dies as Cypher pulls her support plug too. Trinity explodes in frustrated helplessness, cursing her traitor, “*Goddamn you, Cypher!*”

“*Don’t hate me, Trinity. I’m just the messenger. And right now, I am going to prove it to you.*” He then bends over Neo’s body who is to be next and continues talking to Trinity. “*If Morpheus is right, then there is no way I can pull this plug. I mean if Neo is the One, there would have to be some kind of a miracle to stop me. Right! How can he be the One if he is dead? You never did answer me before if you bought into Morpheus’ bullshit. Come on, all I wanted was a yes or no. Look into his pretty eyes and tell him, yes or no.*”

Trinity, looking at Neo, quietly but firmly answers, “*Yes.*”

Suddenly, before he can pull the plug on Neo, Cypher hears Tank behind him, miraculously struggling to his feet and holding the electronic gun. Cypher shouts in total disbelief, “*No!!! I don’t believe it!!!*”

Tank, with great anger and disgust, shouts, “*Believe it or not you piece of shit, you’re going to burn!*”

Cypher is instantly killed as his body is blown into more of the spaceship’s fragile instruments. Trinity, listening on her cellular phone, is wondering what has happened. Then, suddenly, the transition phone on the table begins to ring. Neo, looking at Trinity and realizing they have been saved, says to Trinity, “*You first.*”

Tank, seeing Trinity’s body come alive, exclaims, “*You’re back.*”

As Trinity finds herself back in her transition chair, she sees the wounded Tank, and exclaims, “*You’re hurt!*”

Tank, with a determined look on his face, assures her, “*I’ll be all right.*”

As they quickly embrace, she asks about Tank’s brother, Dozer! Tank confirms that he didn’t make it. Next, Neo is also transported as his body awakes.

### WHAT DOES TANK REPRESENT?

Remember, Tank is a “natural,” a true product of the Real World of Zion. Symbolically, he is that part of our self that did not get incorporated into the natural man. When the others in the crew go into the Matrix, he sits at the spaceship controls to serve them and then Dozer pushes the buttons to bring them back. In the Garden of Eden story, Adam and Eve were dressed in coats of animal skin. This was to protect them from their nakedness. Symbolically, the coats of skin represent the Spirit of Christ which is given to everyone as they enter into the Fall. We wear the holy garment as a reminder that the Lord has provided His Spirit to be our natural, but hidden, inner guide. So, for example, when Morpheus needed to find the wet wall, he turned to Tank, which symbolized our turning to our inner guide.

For our usurper to take control, the availability of the Spirit must be vanquished. And so Tank was put out of the way for awhile. In fact, he was not only hit once, but twice. And so it is with the Spirit. Just as Tank’s miraculous recovery brought Trinity and Neo back home, so does the Spirit when our detour has run its course. That is why, when looking at Lehi’s vision, those on the strait and narrow path who became confused in the mists of darkness and got lost, it doesn’t mean forever, but more likely, for awhile. In another part of Lehi’s vision, the same would be true about the ones who first reached the tree, then wandered off into forbidden paths and were lost, but, hopefully, only

temporarily. It may take a miracle, but it is wonderful to see how many who wander off are eventually pulled back by the promptings of the Spirit when their wandering has run its course.

## SUMMARY

Because of our many inner-personalities, not all of those few who are a part of our enlightenment have the same determination to stay the course. There may be some, as symbolized by Cypher, who want to throw the baby out with the bath water and just start being free to have their own way for comfort and pleasure. They can make it difficult for the other personalities, especially those who are caught in between like Apoc and Switch. This is how the Armageddon of our heart can put us through the heat that tries our faith, like gold being purified by fire. While it is going on, it is well to remember that Christ is fully involved in our process, that is why it is called the “chastening of the Lord.”

## Chapter XXVII

### THE DECISION TO TRY TO RESCUE MORPHEUS

After the crew of the spaceship has been reduced to three (Tank, Trinity and Neo) the scene now changes to the agent's headquarters in a tall skyscraper. Morpheus is being held in a nearly bare office at about a middle floor of the building where Agent Smith, assisted by Agent Brown, has taken him.

#### AGENT SMITH DOES SOME GLOATING ABOUT THE MATRIX

Morpheus, dazed, bruised and dirty, is sitting in a chair with his arms handcuffed behind him. Agent Smith is looking out the big window, seeing the great city and says to Morpheus, *“Have you ever stood and stared at it. Marveled at its beauty, genius. Billions of people just living out their lives—oblivious. You know that the first Matrix was designed to be a perfect, human world, where none suffered and where everyone would be happy. But that was a disaster. No one would accept the program and entire crops were lost. Some believed that we lacked the programming language to describe your perfect world.”*

Agent Brown, sitting at a desk, is filling a hypodermic needle with a silver fluid from a bottle and injects it into Morpheus' neck. Obviously, Morpheus is only semi-conscious but in great pain.

Agent Smith continues, *“But I believe that as a species, human beings find their reality through misery and suffering. The perfect world was a dream the cerebrum was trying to wake up from, which is why the Matrix was redesigned to provide the peak of your civilization. I say, your civilization, because as soon as we started thinking for you, it became our civilization, which is of course what this is really all about. Evolution! Morpheus, evolution, like the dinosaur. Look out that window. You have had your time. The future is our world, Morpheus. The future is our time.”*

#### SEEING THIS THROUGH THE EYES OF AGENT SMITH

For the brilliant Agent Smith, this appears to be a celebration day. At last, after all these years, he is now on the very cusp of victory over hated Zion. He has a Zion Captain in his grasp, able to be forced to download the secret code of Zion's mainframe computers so the A. I. Machines can forever destroy their last remaining obstacle.

Agent Smith allows himself to enjoy some awe and delight in the masterpiece of the Man-Made World. And we would have to agree. The Matrix is marvelous indeed. No wonder Cypher finally became seduced by its appeal. Actually, Agent Smith is crediting the A. I. Machines, of which he is a superior product, as being our savior, saving us from the original reality which was more feared than the Matrix.

Their only limitation, he believes, for making the new Matrix perfect is battling the last remnants

of resistance, which is Zion. And here in the brain of Morpheus, he believes, is the way to get that done. So in a final boast he says, “**Look out that window. You have had your time. The future is our world, Morpheus. The future is our time!**” His words can remind us of another boaster, who claimed, “**Now is the great day of my power. I reign from the rivers to the end of the earth. There is none who dares make afraid.**”

### WHAT WAS THE PERFECT, FIRST MATRIX?

There are two possible answers to the question about what was the first, perfect Matrix. In one way, the first month in the womb would fit that description. In another way, it could have been the pre-existence.

**1. The first month in the womb.** Remember, matrix means womb, coming from the Greek word for mother. So where was our first Matrix? As we have discussed in Neo’s physical trip back to the womb experience, our first Matrix in mortality was during the first month in the womb when everything was serene and peaceful. But when the hormonal disturbance of the pregnancy kicked in about the beginning of the second month, we could no longer trust our changing universe and started resisting by trying to solve the unsolvable. In this way, all the harmony and peace grown in those first few weeks of our first Matrix in mortality were lost. As Agent Smith declared, it was a disaster as the new, pre-programmed, automatic Matrix of control took over.

**2. The pre-existence.** In another way, we could say that even before that, the first Matrix was in the place of our spirit birth where we were given spirit bodies by our Heavenly Mother. In that pre-existence, we were in a heaven of an incredible spiritual reality. We know very little about it, but is Agent Smith accurate in describing it as a perfect world we also were trying to wake up from? Perhaps not fully, but he may have a very interesting point.

In that pre-existent world, we were surrounded by perfect light and love, experiencing the Oneness of God’s creation. But there was something very vital that was missing. We could not fully comprehend its glory for we had never experienced anything different, i.e., its opposite. As we have said, one cannot comprehend light until one has experienced darkness, love until one has experienced fear, eternal life until one has experienced death.

### AGENT SMITH’S MISCONCEPTION ABOUT THE SECRET CODES OF ZION’S MAINFRAME

Agent Smith has a serious misconception about Zion’s secret codes. He believes they would be similar to the A. I. Machines’ computer programming. If they were, he could download them from Morpheus’ brain. But Zion is of the heart, not the brain. Not only did the agents not understand this, but neither did Cypher nor Tank. Whether Morpheus did, we do not know. But he probably did, being a Zion captain who had been pre-programmed with those codes, evidently in his heart. We explained this in Chapter XVIII describing Cypher’s dinner meeting with Agent Smith. Let’s read again what we said there.

**The access codes to the Zion Mainframe are the ultimate antidote to the Matrix. But what does Zion’s Mainframe have that frightens the agents? Symbolically, Zion’s Mainframe computer is infinite intelligence of the light of Christ, which gives life to all things...**

**Those codes represent the discoveries of the many dimensions of who we are. Those discoveries are plural because we are multi-dimensional individualizations of Infinite Spirit, the Light of Truth. This can only be revealed experientially and progressively by “Zion’s mainframe,” i.e., the heart’s inner knowing.**

The drama and crisis of this Matrix story makes it look like Zion is extremely vulnerable, but if we give it some thought, that is probably not really the case. Zion can be held back, submerged and ignored, but never defeated. Remember, *Zion is the pure Love of Christ that will never fail*. But our surviving crew in the spaceship, along with the agents, does not know this, so they feel they need to take action.

### THE HELICOPTER COMES INTO THE PICTURE

We next see a scene of looking up at the front of the tall headquarters building while a helicopter is seen in front of the building, rising in altitude. Then a second helicopter, mirroring it at the same level, coming in from the left side of the picture. When they touch, they both disappear into each other as if seeing them in two mirrors which are placed at right angles to each other. Yet, in the next scene, the helicopter is landing on top of the building.

Getting out are many heavily armed police, followed by Agent Green, who is next seen entering the room where the other two agents have Morpheus. Agent Green has come with some disturbing news. He announces, with a sober face, "*There could be a problem.*"

### THE MATRIX IS NOT REAL

Many of the clues in this movie are only briefly portrayed. This quick scene in front of the building, seeing two aircraft dissolving into each other, is one of those clues. The Matrix looks real, but is it so? Just as Trinity tried to warn Cypher, who was going to give himself up to the Matrix, when she said, "**Cypher, the Matrix isn't real!**" He did not agree, claiming the Matrix was more real than the Real World.

Why isn't the Matrix real? Because the Matrix is only our interpretation of the Real World, not the Real World itself. But we believe our interpretation of the Real World IS THE REAL WORLD, when, in reality, it is our own, uniquely designed Man-Made World created by the way we perceive it. Remember, as the Eastern philosophies so accurately teach, that the world is an illusion, not because it isn't real, but because it is totally different than it appears. Not only is this true of the inner world of our perception, but it is also true of the physical world outside of ourselves. Quantum physics has established the absolute but still almost incomprehensible reality of that statement. But Third Level teachings, which is seeing the illusions of our conclusions, reveal that even our experience of the world is much more subjective than we had ever imagined.

The waking up process is seeing the world as it really is, a manifestation of an infinite spiritual reality. In contrast, if the world is only physical, it is experienced as a potentially dangerous place to our vulnerable, fragile existence in which we are isolated inside an aging body covered with our skin. In this world, as it appears through our conditioning, we are being continually exposed to all kinds of accidental, random circumstances and events, being pushed and shoved by all kinds of forces of nature and our fellow human beings. Starting as a little child, we learned to comply with the demands of this ever-demanding environment, not only on the outside but on the inside as well.

Morpheus is held captive and he must be rescued. But in our allegory, why is Morpheus not the One? Because he represents the guide, our higher self, which has helped Neo, our conscious Awareness, to realize that he has the potential of destroying the Matrix. That was the first step of guiding Neo into having faith that he was the One. That is what our testimony of the preparatory gospel gave to us—that we have the potential to become gods ourselves, but not that we are gods already. For the second step, the Oracle had to help Neo lose that hope of becoming the One because that hope was keeping him "out of time." Being the One is not something one becomes. She convinced him that he could not be the One because he is waiting for something. She said, "**Sorry kid. You've got the gift, but it looks like you are waiting for something. Your next life, maybe. Who Knows?"**

### TANK PREPARES TO PULL THE PLUG ON MORPHEUS

In the Spaceship, as they look at Morpheus' silent body in his transition chair, Neo asks Tank, "*What are they doing to him?*"

Tank answers, "*Breaking into his mind. It is like hacking a computer program.*"

Neo asks in return, "*How much time?*"

*"It depends on the mind. But eventually it will crack, and the alpha pattern will change."*

Then Tank shows Neo on a computer screen how the program looks when it is compromised.

*"It will change from this to this and then he will tell them anything they want to know."*

*"What do they want?"*

*"The leader of every ship is given codes to Zion's mainframe computer. If an agent got the codes to get into the mainframe, they could destroy us. We can't let that happen."*

Tank looks seriously at Trinity and asks, "*Trinity, is Zion more important than me or you or*

*Morpheus?"*

Neo gets the drift of Tanks question and interrupts before she can answer, "Well, there has to be something we can do!"

Tank answers, "There is. We can pull the plug."

Trinity, horrified at the thought, demands, "You're going to kill him! Kill Morpheus!"

Tank replies, sadly, "We don't have any other choice!"

## CHOOSING THE LESSER EVIL

We might recall at this point that this movie can be used as an effective allegory for the First Level of Self Improvement or for Second Level of Metaphysical Empowerment, but we are using it for Third Level, the Integrative Process. On this level, we see Morpheus representing the function of the Holy Ghost in providing the center-piece of our lives, our inspired testimony. We see Tank as our innate protective guide we usually refer to as having the Spirit of Christ which is given to every man.

At this stage of our breaking the old ties of an exclusionary testimony of the Church, we begin to realize that our old LDS paradigm is not working for us so well any more. We just do not believe the same things we used to be sure about. In fact, we may be wondering if we even know what we believe. Have you had the feeling?

In that state, the spirit of survival within us may want to just cut loose and forget the whole thing. We may have the impulse to just stay away from Church and go on with our lives. This is like Tank saying, "**We can pull the plug.**"

Tank believes that if they don't pull the plug, the agents will be able to get the computer codes to Zion's mainframe and destroy what is left of Zion and all will be lost. This symbolizes the fear that if we keep trying to fix our old testimony, it will just keep unraveling and we won't have anything left.

## OUR LIFE IS MORE THAN OUR BELIEFS ABOUT LIFE

When I was in the state of just having lost my testimony back in the late Sixties, I was sharing my discoveries with a doctor friend who was already making some discoveries on his own. As he saw the possibility of "our firm foundation" collapsing, he said to me, rather desperately, "Max, if we lost all of our beliefs, we wouldn't have anything left."

Since I had already been discovering a wider approach to the divinity of life, I challenged him, insisting that even without our old beliefs, we would still have much of our life left. As he gave it some thought, the brilliant doctor said, "Oh, I guess you would still have death left." I pushed him further and he thoughtfully added, "Yeah, and I guess you would still have lying and greed." I kept prodding him and he kept coming up with one more negative after another. Finally, he ran out of things to mention, without ever referring to a single positive. So I smiled and said, "Wouldn't you still have "seeing" left, and how about "breathing," and "eating," and "walking," and "clothes." As I went on and on, he grinned and said, "I see what you mean. I was so stuck in fear that negatives were all I could think of. Yes, I can see what you mean. We would still have most of our life left."

This is symbolic of where Tank is in his decision to pull the plug on his greatest friend and hero as the lesser of two evils. It is like a captain of a sinking ship who is willing to throw all the cargo overboard to keep the ship from going down. The captain knows that if the ship were to sink, he would lose the cargo anyway. Tank reasons that if the agents were able to destroy Zion, there would be none of them left alive, including Morpheus.

## AGENT SMITH CALLS FOR IMMEDIATE, DRASTIC ACTION

Back at the headquarters building, Morpheus is in great agony and pain. Agent Smith, after having been informed by Agent Green about the problem of having lost Cypher, their undercover saboteur, says, disgustingly, "Never send a human to do a machine's job."

Agent Green warns, "If the insider has failed, they'll sever the connection as soon as possible, Unless..."

Agent Brown finishes the sentence for him, "they are dead."

Agent Green continues, "They are all dead in either case."

Agent Smith, realizing those in the spaceship could kill Morpheus by pulling his connecting plug, announces that the spaceship must be attacked and destroyed quickly, "We have no choice but

*to continue as planned. Deploy the sentinels immediately.”*

## THE ACCUSER-WITHIN BECOMES DESPERATE

In our story, the murderous role filled by Cypher is miraculously overcome by the healing of Tank. Allegorically, this often happens in our inner life when the alliance between our Accuser, the darker, negative side, and the compromising part of our awakened consciousness, our Judas, falls apart. This can happen if our abuses of the new-found liberty bring more pain and disruptions than the liberty and freedom is worth. But the dark forces in our fallen nature do not give up easily. Our inner Accuser can start moving into high gear, trying to justify throwing the baby out with the bathwater. This destructive inner voice wants us to just forget trying to please our critical, unenlightened family and friends, especially when they are claiming such superior judgment, spirituality and integrity.

As in our movie, as the agents face the hopelessness of trying to do things in a civilized manner, they choose to quickly destroy the spaceship now that they have been able to locate its location by Morpheus' and Trinity's use of her cell phone. “**They are all dead in either case...We have no choice but to continue as planned. Deploy the sentinels immediately.**”

## NEO DECIDES TO GO IN TO SAVE MORPHEUS

Back at the spaceship, as Tank is preparing to pull the plug, he sadly says goodbye to his beloved captain, a true friend and hero, “*I guess you are more than a leader, Morpheus. You are a father. We will miss you always.*”

As he reaches over to pull the plug, Neo calls out, “*Stop! I don't believe this is happening!*”

Tank, hesitating to act unilaterally, pleads, “*Neo, this has to be done!*”

“*Does it? I don't know. This just can't be coincidence. It just can't be!*”

Tank, perplexed, asks him, “*What are you talking about?*”

Neo answers, “*The Oracle. She told me this would happen. She told me that I would have to make a choice.*”

Trinity, with a look of hope on her face, “*What choice?*”

Neo doesn't answer her but immediately turns to pick up some equipment. As he walks away, we get a good look at the shambles the spaceship is in after the fight between Cypher and Dozer, and then between Tank and Cypher. As Neo moves away, Trinity asks him, “*What are you doing?*”

“*I'm going in!*”

Trinity interrupts, defiantly, “*No you're not!*”

“*I have to!*”

She implores him, “*Neo, Morpheus sacrificed himself so that we could get you out. There is no way you are going back in.*”

Neo emphatically responds, “*Morpheus did what he did because he believes I was something that I'm not.*”

Trinity, with alarm, asks, “*What?*”

“*I'm not the One, Trinity. The Oracle admitted that too.*”

“*No, you have to be!*”

“*Sorry, I'm not. I'm just another guy.*”

“*No, Neo. That is not true. It can't be true.*”

Neo challenges her statement by asking, bluntly, “*Why?*”

Tank interrupts by declaring, “*Neo, this is loco! They have Morpheus in a military controlled building. Even if you somehow got inside, those are agents holding him. Three of them. I want Morpheus back too, but what you are talking about is suicide.*”

Neo answers, “*I know that's what it looks like, but it's not. I can't explain why it is not. Morpheus believes something and he was ready to give his life for what he believes. I understand that now. That's why I have to go.*”

Tank demands, “*Why?*”

“*Because I believe in something.*”

Trinity interjects, hopefully, “*What?*”

*"I believe I can bring him back."*

As he starts getting ready, Trinity starts getting ready too. Neo, surprised, asks her, "What are you doing?"

*"I'm going with you!"*

*"No you're not!"*

Trinity, contradicting him with authority, "No? Let me tell you what I believe! I believe that Morpheus means more to me than he does to you. I believe if you are really serious about saving him, you are going to need my help. And since I am the ranking officer on this ship, if you don't like it, I believe you can go to hell! Because you aren't going anywhere else. Tank, load us up!"

## IS NEO BEING A FOOL?

A good question? Tank thinks he is. Trinity is not so sure, especially if she goes along with him. But if he fails, Morpheus' sacrifice will have been in vain. So is Neo bluffing when he tries to explain the unexplainable? As he tells his friends, "**I can't explain why it is not. Morpheus believes something and he was ready to give his life for what he believes. I understand that now. That's why I have to go ...because I believe in something. I believe I can bring him back.**"

Thanks to the Oracle, Neo has been prepared for this hour. He is totally relieved of the burden of trying to be the One, and he is willing to risk his life to save the one who believes he is. But it is not to just save Morpheus, for the entire cause of Zion is at stake. The Oracle made that clear when she told him, "**Morpheus believes in you, Neo. And no one; not you, not even me, can convince him otherwise. He believes it so blindly that he is going to sacrifice his life to save yours. You're going to have to make a choice. In one hand, you will have Morpheus' life. On the other hand, you will have your own. One of you is going to die. Which one will be up to you.**"

So how does Neo believe he can succeed when she made it so clear that if he made the choice to save Morpheus, he would die doing so? Evidently, Neo is taking her at her word, that although he would die in the process, he believes in her promise that he could get Morpheus back out alive. That is what he now believes and that is probably why he does not want Trinity to go with him. What is especially interesting is that the Oracle used some negative selling on him by insinuating that he was in no position to believe any of this prophecy business. Let's recall, it was only an hour or so before that he had heard her closing words: "**Oh, don't worry about it. The minute you step out of this room, you will remember you don't believe in any this fate crap. You are in control of your own life, remember?**"

But now, Neo does believe. As she predicted, Morpheus has actually put his life on the line to save his. Now he is making the choice she said he would have to make.

What does Neo going back into the Matrix represent in our transformation process? Using Morpheus as a symbol of our Holy Ghost revealed testimony, this action can represent a very significant aspect of how many of us have evolved in a new relationship to the gospel and the Church. Some travelers of the way have chosen to just forget the Church, seeing it only as a First Level structure of pride and self righteousness. They are pleased to be freed from its duties, disciplines and restraints. In doing so, they will have to learn their further lessons another way. That is their choice, as it was for me at first and for quite some time. But, as I have mentioned, a two hour miracle of increased understanding seven years later *decisively pulled me back*.

## WHAT PART OF OUR TESTIMONY CAN BE SAVED?

In the dying of our old way of seeing the narrowness of the gospel, there may come that time in our journey when the Spirit enables us to re-evaluate how we see "our firm foundation." It isn't that the foundation is suddenly healed and no longer has major deficiencies. The imperfections we have discovered are still there, but the Spirit sends a renewal of love and appreciation for the handiwork of God having given us this specific "strait and narrow path" we call the Church. In a way, just as Neo is ready to face the gauntlet, seekers may find themselves setting aside their reservations and, in their place, realize that with it all, God really does know what He is doing with us in our again being involved in the great work of the Church.

In a way, it is like that time when we found out that our whole reality about Santa Claus was not true, that our parents had knowingly fooled us for all those years. We each reacted to that shocking

discovery in different ways, but it was a major turning point in our lives. I was rather delighted in the fact that I had made the discovery that my father was the real Santa Claus. Yet some youngsters find the reality unbelievable for some time and simply refuse to open their eyes.

For example, I have a granddaughter who, at the age of eight, came to my daughter and asked, “*Are you Santa Claus?*” When my daughter said she was, my granddaughter defiantly yelled, “**NO!!!!**” and stomped away. Later, after thinking it over a bit, she came back and asked her mother if she had paid for all of those gifts out of her own money. All of us, as we recovered from the shock and gave the Santa story more thought, we could see how wonderful and loving the Santa myth was. So, even then, we were still able to play the game with younger children. Eventually, when we too became parents, we joyfully played the game with our little ones as well. So in a real sense, we still believe in Santa Claus, but without the illusion. Our “testimony” went from seeing it as the only truth to seeing it as a way to express love.

### **WILLING TO PUT THE NEW LIFE TO THE TEST**

Waking up to the wonders of an imperfect Church and an incomplete gospel can be an off and on process too. I know for me, as the Spirit gradually softened my heart, I was slowing finding myself appreciating even the “great and spacious building” part of the Church. I found myself marveling how the complex structure of the varied programs all fits together, providing fulfillment to each individual on the level that person is on. Many who have read my first two books and have gone through a period when they felt bored at Church, perhaps even had stopped going for some time, and then, later, found the Spirit drawing them back. As a consequence, Church participation would have now become a delightful choice, a sweet blessing, with no burden or worry.

So Neo’s going back in to save Morpheus is a beautiful symbol of this “going back in” process because there still is a part of the old self that has to die—our “spiritual” judgmental superiority, our impatience at hearing the gospel milk being rehashed time and time again, our simmering resentment for their laying on heavy guilt trips, and our continual need to compare what is going on with what we are convinced ought to be going on. These are the aspects of our conscious Awareness that will die as we see through the eyes of unity rather than separateness. Our Neo within begins to believe! As he declared, “**I believe in something...I believe I can bring him back...That’s why I have to go.**”

### **WHY DID TRINITY KNOW SHE HAD TO GO WITH HIM?**

Let’s remember, whereas Neo represents Awareness, Trinity represents Love. Up until now, she has grown in her belief that Neo is the One. She is finding herself in love with him, and, as the Oracle had assured her, the one she would fall in love with *would be the One*. But suddenly, Neo is going to his death and she can’t figure out how he can be the One and yet be dead as the Oracle had prophesied. That was Cypher’s unanswerable question as well. Perhaps she is thinking that the Oracle may have meant that he would be as good as dead, and this suicidal mission would fit that description. She realized that if they both went together, she might be able to help Neo so that all three of them could come back.

Trinity is rapidly moving from “*phileo*,” which is the Greek word for approval and adoration, but is always conditional and accompanied by loads of fear, to “*agape*,” which is divine understanding that everything is right on schedule just the way it is, which destroys fear and judgmentalness. When she sees Neo’s total commitment to their cause of Zion, she finds herself equally willing, no matter how much the risk, to join him in taking on the agents at their own game.

The love of the gospel we had felt with our old testimonies included fear and need. That is why it worked as a powerful motivator to the extent it did. But this growing new testimony is not based on who is right and who is wrong but is based upon the value of the Lord’s work through His Church, warts and all. This is the growth of true love, and as we see, it is the combination which brings about the transformation, a combination that requires both conscious Awareness and Agape-Love, and not either of them alone. She makes this clear in her commanding statement, “**Let me tell you what I believe! I believe that Morpheus [our inspired testimony] means more to me [the Heart] than he does to you [the Awareness]. I believe if you are really serious about saving him, you are going to need my help.**”

How right she is. Time after time, in the rescue mission, she saves Neo’s life, five in all, and, as we shall see, only once does he finally save hers.

## SUMMARY

This chapter represents a critical juncture in our journey through the Flaming Sword. It can look like the fault finding has won the day and we might as well go on our way without the dogmatism of the preparatory gospel. But just as Neo was set up by the Oracle, the still, small voice of the Spirit can draw us back to see how each level of the gospel is perfect for what it is designed to do. So in turn, as Neo and Trinity choose to risk it all to save their teacher, we can choose to stay close to our roots, working through the disdain, and, with love in our heart, supporting our intellectual willingness to experiment, we go for the victory we seek.

## Chapter XXVIII

### WHY THE ACCUSER IS AFRAID TO LOSE

These inner tormentors of our Matrix mind, symbolized by the agents, have found that they can win if they can just get us arguing with them. If we don't argue, the Accusers cannot come from their strength and will lose. That is something they cannot stand. In this chapter we will have demonstrated what they are willing to do to keep from losing.

#### AGENT SMITH JUSTIFIES THE MATRIX

Back where they have Morpheus, Agent Smith, killing time waiting for the serum to take effect, speaks to Morpheus in a relaxed, professional manner, "*I'd like to share a little revelation that I have had since my time here. It came to me when I tried to classify your species. I realized that you are not actually mammals. Every mammal on this planet instinctively develops a natural equilibrium with the environment. But you humans do not. You move to an area and you multiply and multiply until every natural resource is consumed. The only way you can survive is to spread to another area. There is another organism on this planet that follows the same pattern. Do you know what it is? It is a virus. Human beings are a disease, a cancer of this planet. You are a plague. We are the cure.*"

#### SEEING HOW PREJUDICE IS ALWAYS JUSTIFIED BY LOGIC

Let's remember, Agent Smith represents the devil-part of our mind, known as the Accuser. His power and influence as the negative over-voice in our consciousness is that he always appears so logical. Have you noticed? As we have mentioned, logic is, by its very nature, illogical. Why is that? Because it starts with an *assumption* and ends with a *conclusion*, i.e., if this, then that.

Agent Smith starts out by referring to his expertise in study and evaluation, with a nice dose of revelation. "**I'd like to share a little revelation that I have had since my time here. It came to me when I tried to classify your species.**"

So let's dissect his argument and see how erroneous his assumptions are. First he rejects our being mammals. "**I realized that you are not actually mammals.**" Before we examine his logical reasons, let's look up the definition of a mammal. The dictionary says, "**A class of vertebrate animals of more than 15,000 species, including humans, distinguished by self-regulating body temperature, hair, and, in the females, milk-producing breasts.**" The Greek root of the word mammal is mamma, which means breast.

#### AGENT SMITH, LIKE ALL ACCUSERS, POINTS ONE FINGER WHILE THREE POINT BACK AT HIMSELF.

Agent Smith's justification for his conclusion is that we don't act like true mammals. "**Every mammal on this planet instinctively develops a natural equilibrium with the environment. But you humans do not. You move to an area and you multiply and multiply until every natural**

**resource is consumed. The only way you can survive is to spread to another area.”**

The truth is that animals do not “*instinctively* develop a natural equilibrium.” Like every creature, they reproduce as long as there is enough food and space to do so. When they over-produce, they are reduced in number by the survival of only the fittest, a painful and ruthless process mother nature has of thinning the herd and improving the species. In contrast, humans use reason. Yes, many times they move to other places, but a more usual adaptation is that first they increase the productivity of where they are so that more people can survive in the same area. It is called irrigation, agriculture and urban development.

So Agent Smith starts with an assumption which is that we could not be mammals because we don’t act like true mammals. Of course, if that assumption were a fact, he might have a point, but as we have seen, it is an erroneous assumption. Therefore, his conclusion, though logical, must also be false.

So he defines us as a disease polluting this planet because we are like a virus. **“The only way you can survive is to spread to another area. There is another organism on this planet that follows the same pattern. Do you know what it is? It is a virus. Human beings are a disease, a cancer of this planet. You are a plague. We are the cure.”**

### **THE MATRIX IS THE REAL VIRUS**

So what is a virus? The dictionary says, **“Any of various submicroscopic pathogens [an agent that causes disease]...having the ability to replicate only inside a living cell.”** So Agent Smith, in his flawed logic, assumes that humans are viruses, which is a clever deception, since the Matrix is the ultimate virus. It can only survive within the Real World by drawing its energy from real beings.

When Morpheus had first taken Neo into the Construct, he showed him what the ruthless Matrix had actually done to the Real World. **“Welcome to the desert of the Real World...For the longest time I would not believe it...I came to realize the obviousness of the truth. What is the Matrix? Control! The Matrix is a computer-generated dream-world built to keep us under control in order to change a human being into this** [showing him an energy source, like a Coppertop Duracell battery].”

Yes, the Matrix, not mankind, is just like a virus. His logic is called the Great Lie. Propagandists know that if you tell a big enough lie often and long enough, it becomes the “self-evident truth.” And Morpheus, even in his delirium, is not buying Agent Smith’s story. He knows better. Long before, once he had finally discovered the real truth, he had dedicated his life to the purpose of finding the One who will destroy the Matrix.

### **LOADING UP TO FIGHT FIRE WITH FIRE—LOTS OF GUNS**

Back at the control center of the spaceship, Tank sees that his two surviving teammates are going on what might be a successful journey after all. So he transports Neo and Trinity into the Construct and asks for their requests, *“Okay, so what do you need besides a miracle?”*

Neo, standing with Trinity in the white emptiness of the Construct, places their order by saying, *“Lots of guns!”*

Instantly, great rows of loaded guns are rolled out to them, causing wind that blows their long coats. As they start arming themselves, Trinity reminds Neo of the sheer audacity of this venture, *“Neo, no one has ever done anything like this.”*

Neo answers confidently, *“That is why it is going to work!”*

### **PREPARING TO FIGHT THE MATRIX WITH THE MATRIX**

Actually, Neo has fallen into a trap which will cost him his life. Christ said for us not to resist evil, but Neo is going to do his level best to win over evil with the same weapons they use. The truth is that what we resist does persist, in one form or another. Earlier, during Neo’s training when Morpheus was trying to convince him that he was the One, he gave Neo a glimmer of hope that, eventually, he could prevail over the agents, that he would be so powerful that he wouldn’t even need to dodge bullets. But now that he is convinced he is not the One, he has no such illusions of being

more powerful than the agents. Let's read Morpheus' dire warning to Neo again:

We are survived by hiding from them and running from them. But they are the gatekeepers. They are guarding all the doors. Neo, I won't lie to you. Every single man or woman who stood their ground, everyone who has fought an agent has died...I have seen an agent punch through a concrete wall. Men have emptied entire clips at them and hit nothing but air.

It often appears that the devil has the easy ride, with most everything going his way. But now we are about to see that the opposite is really the truth. In other words, fulfilling the role of the Accuser is much less than fun. It is plain hell.

### AGENT SMITH DEMANDS THAT MORPHEUS HELP HIM GET FREE OR DIE

As Agent Smith begins to realize that Morpheus' brain is not downloading the Zion codes, he becomes desperate. He realizes those in the spaceship could pull the connection plug to Morpheus at any time and he would die before their yes. Agent Smith desperately asks the other agents, "*Why isn't the serum working?*"

Agent Brown thoughtfully responds, "*Perhaps we are asking the wrong questions.*"

As Agent Smith gives that idea some thought, he realizes that Agent Brown may have given him the needed clue. He decides to change his approach to demand that Morpheus help him escape from the painful Matrix or pay with his life. So he instructs his fellow agents, "*Leave him with me, now!*"

Both Agents are not pleased with their superior's command and hesitate, but when they see the determined look in his eyes, they exit the room.

For a moment, we are given a look at what is going on in the spaceship. Tank is all alone with the silent bodies of Trinity, Neo and Morpheus in their transition chairs. Tank speaks hopeful words to Morpheus' body, "*Hold on Morpheus. They are coming. They are coming!*"

Agent Smith, now alone with the semi-delirious Morpheus, takes off his dark glasses and his earpiece. He asks, "*Can you hear me, Morpheus? I'm going to be honest with you. I hate this place. This zoo. This reality. Whatever you want to call it. It is the smell, if there is such a thing. I feel saturated by it. I can taste your stink. Every time I do, I feel that I have somehow been infected by this repulsive business. I must get out of here. I must get free and in this mind is the key, my key. Once Zion is destroyed, there is no need for me to be here. Don't you understand! I need the codes. I have to get inside Zion. And you have to tell me how! You are going to tell me or you're going to die!*"

### THE MASTER OF SELF PITY

Just a few minutes before, Agent Smith was extolling the miracle of their creation. He felt victory was at last at hand. Now he is afraid his victory is going down in defeat. So he decides on another strategy, that of absolute honesty. "**I'm [now] going to be honest with you.**" His honest truth is that he doesn't love the Matrix. he hates it. "**I hate this place. This zoo. This reality. Whatever you want to call it.**"

The truth of the Matrix is that it is made out of darkness—darkness that appears as light. That darkness is held together by envy, strife, jealousy, fear, hate, exploitation, bigotry, confusion, intolerance and strife. Although the light shines in the darkness, the darkness is oblivious to it. The dampness and stagnation of negative feelings fills the earth with the smell of mildew at its least and rotting corpses at its worst. Yet our brains have a way of covering up unpleasant smells after awhile.

When I was in India and China during World War II, it seemed that every few feet I was faced with another strange and often unpleasant smell. But after a month in both countries, I noticed the bad smells were pretty well gone. Of course, they were still there but my brain had decided to ignore them. And so it is with the Matrix world. We grew up in it so we cannot recognize the magnitude of the smell. But poor old Agent Smith, since he is from another world, is not so fortunate. "**It is the smell, if there is such a thing. I feel saturated by it. I can taste your stink.**"

What does this represent? Remember, we are told that the natural man is an enemy to God. That is a very serious indictment, of course. But, ordinarily, the natural man feels he is anything but an

enemy to God. In other words, he has become oblivious to his own rottenness. So it is with our inner Accuser who creates the rottenness in the first place. Only after we break away and start walking more in the light at noonday, do we realize the magnitude of the B. O. of the natural man. Whereas Agent Smith is sucked into resisting it and being inflicted by it, he admits, “*Every time I [taste your stink], I feel that I have somehow been infected by this repulsive business.*”

#### AGENT SMITH’S ERRONEOUS BELIEF THAT ZION IS OF THE MIND

Naturally, Agent Smith, being totally cerebral, believes the secret code to Zion is in Morpheus’ mind. “**I must get out of here. I must get free and in this mind is the key, my key.**” Again, we, like the Accuser within us, tend to believe that our problems could be solved if we just had more knowledge of how to regain that “ideal state” of being totally nondisturbed.

Agent Smith is working from the wrong direction for needing the codes of Zion. He believes that if he knew all the secrets of how Zion works, then he could discover its weaknesses and, with his diabolical work, help it fall in on itself. Then, with Zion destroyed, he could finally get some rest for there would be no agency trying to get rid of him. So he is demanding that Morpheus help him or die, the ultimate threat of the dark forces. “**Once Zion is destroyed, there is no need for me to be here. Don’t you understand! I need the codes. I have to get inside Zion. And you have to tell me how! You are going to tell me or you’re going to die!**”

What he doesn’t realize is that Morpheus has already accepted death in order to save Neo, symbolizing the willingness of the old, exclusionary testimony to die that a full, all inclusive testimony, as the One, can take its place. That is the next part of our Movie, the rescue of Morpheus.

#### SUMMARY

In this chapter we find the other side of the story, that the role of the Accuser, the Adversary, is not the easier road, but the path of darkness, discouragement and bitterness. Even its logic is illogical because his complaining always starts with an assumption and ends with a conclusion. But when we fight back, as Christ told us not to do, and fight violence with violence, as Neo and Trinity have decided to do, we become a part of what we fight. Just as Agent Smith is asking for a compromise from Morpheus, the darkness in our life always wants us to join in the negativity that only allows it to thrive and fester rather than bring the reward of “justice” and revenge that it promises.

## Chapter XXIX

### THE FIRST OF THREE BATTLES TO RESCUE MORPHEUS

Before Morpheus is rescued, there are three battles—one in the lobby, one on the rooftop and one from the helicopter. As we will see, each can be symbolical of the continual breakthroughs available to us on each of the three levels. Notice that both Neo and Trinity are operating from a personally advanced level of awareness.

Actually, even though they are fighting for their lives and also for the life of Morpheus, they are both having a rather exciting time. What they are doing is tough, and at times scary, but also rather exciting. They are freely experiencing each phase of the adventure with a high level of inner confidence. Remember, even back in the Construct, Trinity marveled at the audacity of their adventure. “**Neo, no one has ever done anything like this.**” Neo had been able to answer, “**That is why it is going to work!**” The whole process of Third Level involves moving through and beyond

fear one step at a time, preparatory to reaching the Tree of Life which “casts out all fear.”

“Fear,” *when freely experienced*, has an interesting name. It is called a thrill! That is why we call amusement parks “thrill rides.” Notice, even though Neo has made careful preparations, they are both taking one moment at a time, with an amazing degree of confidence.

### THE THREE BATTLES REPRESENT ADVANCED WORK AT THREE DIFFERENT LEVELS OF TEACHINGS

In a graphic way, the rescue of Morpheus demonstrates the challenges we face as we continue through the Flaming Sword by doing “clean-up” work on the lower levels. As we have mentioned, moving to a higher level does not mean that there still isn’t unfinished work remaining on a lower level. Even though our increased understanding has brought us to a higher level of liberation, the conditioning from a lower level is removed only gradually, piece by piece.

Remember, as we proceed through the Third Level, the *déjà vu* experiences are reminders that we are still caught up in judging—experiencing some disdain for others who are still struggling with the ideals we think we have moved beyond. Passing through these obstacles to perfect Agape-Love is the process of deliverance. Oh yes, we would like the ultimate breakthrough to come in one fell swoop, and that is another ideal which will be discovered to be false. As we are often told, the joy is in the journey, not just in the destination.

### ALL TEACHINGS ARE ON THE FIRST THREE LEVELS

In our understanding that there are four distinct levels to the gospel, it might be remembered that only the first three levels have teachers and teachings connected with them. Almost unbelievably, the Fourth Level has no outer teachings, only inner, experiential teachings. Yet, each of the first three levels is preparatory to the one higher up. A higher level is greater only in that it allows greater freedom, ultimately in the total liberty in Christ. Even though we may have moved through a level, there are continuing opportunities for conflicts and struggles to be waged on earlier levels due to unresolved pockets of inner resistance.

**On the First Level**, we have the teachings about the right and wrong through self improvement. There is never a time when we cannot use and even may be required to make some self-improvements, making significant breakthroughs on this pragmatic level of everyday living.

**On the Second Level**, the teachings here are about how to win the struggle for spiritual empowerment. As we journey toward the Tree of Life, there will be those miraculous experiences of enlightenment which can hold us to or draw us back to the Tree of Knowledge with its temptations to replay the spiritual right and wrong game.

**The Third Level** teachings are about going from separateness to more union by discovering, often painfully, the illusions of our erroneous conclusions about *what is wrong with what is*. This is the area being shown by the battles to free Morpheus, the symbol of our need to work through some of our old ways of seeing, i.e., our *déjà vu* experiences that can alert us to our being set up for an opportunity to break out of another aspect of our old conditioning.

Since **the Fourth Level** is the new covenant of God’s promise to give us the fruit of the Tree of Life, the Fountains of Living Water, those truths are only taught by direct experiences from the Father, building on but also going beyond the principles and precepts taught to us by our teachers we have had on earlier levels. This Fourth Level, which also has its own opportunities for renewed conflict, is symbolized by the climax of the movie when Neo finally understands what it means to be the One. Probably these Fourth Level struggles are some of the issues that the Wachowski Brothers plan to portray in the two Matrix sequels they are now shooting in Australia.

### DISCOVERING WHAT MAKES A BOOK SECOND LEVEL INSTEAD OF THIRD LEVEL

Most of the beautiful and profound books that seem to be teaching the Fourth Level of perfect love are actually teaching on the Second Level, the level of spiritual ideals. Second Level teachings are still on the Tree of Knowledge. Thus, such books may talk about solving the experience of separateness and may reduce conflict but, because they are still teaching ideals of what ought to be different, they do not end conflicting feelings.

Remember, the way we discover whether material which may appear to be on Third or Fourth

Level is actually on First or Second Level is to see if the teachings are telling us HOW WE *OUGHT TO BE DIFFERENT THAN WE ARE*. Of course, there is nothing wrong with being different than we have been and finding ways to be different now and in the future. However, it is the *need to be* different or the *need to have things* different which such books emphasize that creates the struggle, conflict and resistance. *Need* creates each “ought to,” “got to” and “need to” be different.

Often the most spiritual books, using the language of “love” and “oneness” associated with Third Level teachings, can be loaded with spiritual *hooks*. A spiritual hook is a “got to,” “have to,” and “need to,” which we might call “spiritual ideals.” Comparing what is with the ideal of what it ought to be, especially in the spiritual area, is guaranteed to create burdens. That is the key to watch for. If the teachings have these “hooks,” then the material is still on the tree of knowledge. That doesn’t make these teachings bad, for they can still be useful. The most critical difficulty with the teachings of such uplifting ideals, however, is that they will never end conflict, i.e., the battle is never over. They talk and talk, but do not truly bring one into the pure Rest of the Lord as they usually promise.

### MOST LDS CHURCH BOOKS ARE FIRST LEVEL

Since the structuring portion of the Tree of Knowledge is on First Level, most LDS books are, appropriately, on that level. You will notice that most are filled with ideals, many of which even the authors cannot completely fulfill. President Spencer W. Kimball’s great book on *The Miracle of Forgiveness* has over ninety commandments for spiritual living. He admitted that even he, the President of the Church, was writing to himself as well as to others. Another such wonderful book was by our world famous trainer, Stephen R. Covey. He wrote a book some years ago called *The Divine Center*, with the subtitle, “*Why we need a life centered on God & Christ & how we attain it.*” In the book he acknowledged that he was often asked if he was able to do all of these things himself. His answer was honest and forthright, “*No, but I keep trying.*”

When we do find an LDS book on Second Level, like Stephen E. Robinson’s *Believing Christ*, it becomes a run away best seller because so many members are hungry for more than First Level Teachings. That is why my little book, *How To Pray And Stay Awake*, became such a best seller back in the Sixties because it was totally Second Level, teaching prayer on the Spiritual Level rather than just the functional level. But, at the same time, it was not Third Level for it was filled with ideals of what ought to be. That is the only kind of book I could write at the time because that is where I was, myself, struggling to be more, better and different than I was.

### THE BOOK, YE ARE GODS

Another example, especially for LDS, is the book by Annalee Skarin, who was a personal friend of mine in the early Fifties when she wrote her book, *Ye Are Gods*. When I was struggling to get onto the Spiritual Level, her book was a powerful mind-opener to me in understanding the dynamics of our scriptures. I didn’t know about the four levels in those days, but when I did, I could see that she was consistently positioned on the Second Level. Along with all of her powerful concepts of faith and love, she threw in one hook after another.

Significantly, one of her main points in *Ye Are Gods* had to do with the necessity of controlling our thoughts. I sincerely tried it for several years. Her well articulated concepts seemed right, but they had a problem. The more I tried to control my thoughts, the more my thoughts controlled me. Eventually, I found the answer is not in control, even trying to produce the ideal of a peaceful, fearless mind. As helpful as that might be, the solution is much simpler. It is gaining a better understanding of what our thoughts are really all about. Better understanding changes thoughts naturally, without force or control. Actually, it is seeing the joke we are playing on ourselves. When we do, the thoughts cease to support that particular aspect of the Matrix.

Annalee was an incredibly gifted member of the Church when I knew her. I loved her dedication to spiritual ideals. But as I began noticing that she was beginning to see herself as one of the special voices divinely called to save the world, I cautioned her to calm down a bit. When it was reported that she and her husband, after their excommunication, had been translated, I was interested in allowing her that possibility. Later, along with some of her closest friends, her ingenious pretense to being translated was uncovered. As I understand, she actually died in 1981, almost twenty years later. But what an incredible voice for Second Level Teachings! She was a blessing to me and I am grateful for the growth that she inspired in me at that time.

## THE BOOK, *THE COURSE IN MIRACLES*

Many members, feeling starved for more spiritual material, are pleasantly surprised to find that there are some beautiful books available in the religious, psychological or philosophical sections of any general book store. However, most of this exceptional, spiritual material falls in the Second Level category, especially when it comes through revelation, called "*channeling*." One example would be the beautiful and powerful work, *The Course In Miracles*. As I have read much of it and also talked with many who have studied the course and even the beautiful people teaching the program, I have found all kinds of spiritual hooks creating burdens for its students.

Interestingly, you will find my books on *A Blessing Hitherto Unknown* are not filled with hooks of how one ought to be different. Instead, they are filled with discoveries which, in and of themselves, can allow a person to experience life in a totally different way.

So, back to our story. Now that Neo and Trinity are armed to the teeth from the Construct, they are ready to take on the military stronghold one level at a time.

### NEO AND TRINITY WIN THE LOBBY BATTLE

As the battle in the lobby takes place, both Neo and Trinity are wearing dark glasses, boots and full length coats. For the first time, Trinity's coat, which is still made of shiny leather, goes all the way down to her ankles. Neo's full length coat is still made of cloth.

Neo enters first. We see Neo's boots and long black coat as he is coming through the revolving door into the guarded lobby. He sends his large, black bag through the x-ray machine, and steps through the metal detector, which beeps loudly. One of the five entry guards comes over and says, politely, "*Would you please remove any metallic items you are carrying, keys, loose change.*"

Neo opens his coat and shows an arsenal of weapons. The guard exclaims, "*Holy shit!*"

Then Neo dispatches the guard with two swift blows and opens fire on three of the other guards, killing them instantly. In the escalating confusion, the last remaining guard, hiding halfway behind a pillar, shouts into his radio, "*Backup! Send backup!*"

At that moment, Trinity has come in and is passing through the metal detector, which beeps, attracting the attention of the remaining guard. Trinity blows him away with her automatic rifle, saving Neo's life for the first time. She then picks up Neo's bag that has now come through the x-ray machine, throws her empty rifle away and goes over to join Neo as they walk toward the elevator. But just then, a heavily armed Swat Team of almost a dozen military police come rushing into the lobby. One of them, with his gun aimed at the intruders, bellows the command, "*Freeze!*"

Neo and Trinity instantly start dodging bullets while the guards' rapid-fire guns start tearing up the lobby's marble columns. Finally, Neo and Trinity start fighting back. A fierce, firefight breaks out, with the two of them doing loops, Kung Fu hits and firing their weapons until all the soldiers are dead. Trinity again picks up the bag and they go to the far end of the lobby to the Express Elevator, serving the 40<sup>th</sup> to the 86<sup>th</sup> floors. As we get a quick look back at the trashed lobby, there are no dead bodies, only broken marble-facing which continues to crumble. Neo pushes the Up button, the doors open, and they step inside.

### THE PROTRACTED DISPLAY OF VIOLENCE

When I saw The Matrix for the first time, it was in a full screen theater with very loud, surround-sound. I was particularly displeased with this scene. The crashing marble, the noise of the blazing guns and the ruthless Kung Fu hitting, spinning, twirling and turning of Neo and Trinity that seemed to go on endlessly appeared to me as an over-kill of violence. Later, seeing the movie on video, it is not as bad, perhaps even a little humorous. But what does this scene represent?

There are some interesting tips. Notice that no matter how directly the police fire point blank at Neo and Trinity, they never hit either one. Then in turn, as we look back at the practically destroyed lobby, there are no dead bodies lying all over the place. Why? Because all of these guards are not really human beings, but only digital programs of the Matrix. Neo and Trinity are in a dance, a fast moving game of moving ahead of the Matrix to neutralize the real but, at the same time, phantom enemy. When a guard is "killed," his program starts disintegrating and he disappears. All of this is a reminder that battling the Matrix, remembering that *there is no spoon*, is an inner battle of

perceptions, seeing the Man-Made World as a construct that, ultimately, is set up to fail.

### FIRST LEVEL HOUSE CLEANING

Let's remember, this is the first stage of the rescue effort. Neo and Trinity are breaking their way into a militarily controlled building. They are badly out-numbered and, for their plan to work, there must be no one left to block their move to the top of the building.

If we see Morpheus as our exclusionary testimony which has been sacrificed to set us free, and free we may have been for awhile, we may have found the Spirit drawing us back into activity in the Church. Yet, for awhile, the Church may seem like an almost alien country. So I see this initial battle in the lobby as representing our dealing with those outer conditions we still want to resist. Since our old exclusionary testimony has been weakened, it no longer provides the justification for enduring what may now seem more and more like child's play. Naturally, our inner Accuser does not want us to get our old loyalty back, no matter in what form. His critical view of the Church and the gospel is protected by many layers of logical objections to it being of value on one hand and faultless on the other.

However, as the Spirit nudges us to return and see the Church in a whole new way, we may still have to battle through those pesky remaining prejudices that make us uncomfortable. This violent scene certainly epitomized the inner struggle which many folks, including myself, have experienced as an attempt is made to feel again at home in a "we are the only ones who are right" Church and its milk level teachings.

Not everyone has this much trouble, of course, and there are many who decide to walk the other way and go on with their lives, i.e., not even to try to rescue Morpheus. But as for me, as I had become aware of the many inconsistencies in our history and concepts of the gospel, it was quite a struggle to move through my disdain so that I could regain the sense that I was a harmonious part of this marvelous Latter-day family. The continuing struggle with the surviving ideals on each of the levels was real, as well as the continuing victories were sweet releases.

### WORKING THROUGH THE FURTHER OBSTACLES ON FIRST LEVEL

Church is just one element, however. This struggle can also represent the continuing discoveries while coming from Third Level about our remaining unfinished obstacles to our integration on our whole Self-Improvement Level. Most of us continue to find that the conditioned self still has many different areas and degrees of First Level "needs," some hidden and others obvious.

We are talking about those reappearing, inner feelings of resistance when we are not getting our way—when we are dealing with aspects of our relationships or environment which we are still making important, thus anxious about. In a *career*, it may still be needing more success and financial security. In *social circles*, it may be needing more agreement, respect, influence or admiration. In *family*, it may be needing more harmony and love. In the *doctrines* of the preparatory gospel and the functioning of the Church organization, it may be needing a greater sense of feeling secure in God's Love and the trust and respect of those in authority. Yet, bottom line, any of these boils down to our basic problem, which is "not getting our own way." So it is easy to still blame what others are doing for our inner feelings of dissatisfaction.

The fight in the lobby was finally completed and they head for the elevators on their way to the roof. Now let's return to what is going on upstairs.

### AGENT SMITH GETS CAUGHT OFF GUARD

Because of the total destruction of the building's first line of "impregnable defenses" downstairs, Agent Brown, followed by Agent Green, rush into the room where Agent Smith has been fully involved in trying to reason with his captive. The two lieutenants are assuming that their superior officer must also know of the critical emergency. But when Agent Brown sees him closely crouched over Morpheus, while not wearing his dark glasses or hearing piece, he is shocked and asks, disapprovingly, "*What are you doing?*"

Agent Smith looks like a kid who has been caught with one hand in the cookie jar, and appears puzzled at this uninvited interruption. Agent Green turns to Agent Brown, and explains the obvious, "*He doesn't know.*"

Agent Smith, defiantly, demands, “*Know what?*”

At this moment, Neo and Trinity are moving up in the Express Elevator. Neo presses the emergency stop button, which brings the elevator to a halt at the 41<sup>st</sup> floor, which is nearly half way to the top. Trinity removes her coat, kneels down to open the bag and takes out a complex device. She arms the powerful explosive while Neo opens an escape door in the ceiling. She leaves her leather coat on the floor and joins Neo as they climb up on the roof of the elevator.

In the room upstairs, Agent Green looks at Morpheus and, referring to the major disruptions in the lobby, says with a mocking voice, “*I think they are trying to save you.*”

### **OUR INNER ACCUSER IS NOT AS SMART AND HE CLAIMS**

One of the things we discover about believing the lies of our inner Accuser is that they make it easier for us to find fault than they do to find solutions. Not only is that true with our inner challenges, it is also true with our outer challenges. When individuals are skeptical and negative about any proposed change, they are bound to be right at least part of the time, perhaps even as much as 90% of the time. But the beautiful thing about positive people is that they are open to possibilities, and even though many of their bright ideas don’t work as expected, when one does, that one can often be used over and over again. It is in this way that positive people become the real engineers of successful change. Negative people become the sad defenders of nothing but the status quo. Positive people learn to overrule the lies of the mind in a special way.

Agent Smith, with his basic indestructibility on his side, is vulnerable to the likes of Neo if he is truly the One. However, Morpheus knows that he, himself, is no match for an agent. But at the same time, he also knows that he has the ultimate weapon. He can let himself get killed and, thus, the enemy will fail in their effort to destroy Zion through him. In life, that is our ultimate weapon against the dark forces of blaming and shaming. But how do we do that? Simple enough—it is something called *yielding*. To do so, the Awareness, like Morpheus, can choose to just go quiet. It merely remembers that it really *doesn’t know what ought to be different* than things are in God’s infinite creation of *what is*. In a sense, that is also what Neo and Trinity are doing as they take a shortcut to the top of the building, remembering *there is no spoon*.

### **SUMMARY**

This chapter deals with the first of three symbolic battles in the successful rescue of Morpheus. Only the first three levels have teachings, since on the Fourth Level, the Tree of Life whose fruit is a gift from God, has no outer “how to” teachings. Most spiritual books are filled with hooks, ideals of “what ought to be,” therefore can be helpful but will not bring the completion that they promise. Third Level teachings, such as this series of books on A Blessing Hitherto Unknown, are Third Level because they are not “how to” books, but lessons of discovery. The battle in the lobby is a reminder that even though we are on Third Level, seeing the illusions of our conclusions, there are still pockets of First Level ideals we have not fully neutralized through increased understanding, which the lobby victory symbolizes.

## **Chapter XXX**

### **TAKING THE BATTLE TO THE SECOND, SPIRITUAL LEVEL**

The Spiritual Level has to do with miracles. As we began to experience personally the power of the Spirit in our lives, our world changes. The gospel changes. We can now draw and experience power and illumination beyond ourselves. But as we pass through this level to the Third Level by realizing that there is something beyond the Spiritual Level of grace, our relationship to miracles also

changes. Even so, there is also catch-up work involved on this level as is symbolized in the rescuing of Morpheus on a higher level of empowerment. This begins by Neo and Trinity taking a fast tract, short-cut to the roof.

### GOING FROM GROUND LEVEL TO THE ROOF

Neo, standing on top of the elevator with Trinity, attaches himself to the cable by snapping on a locking device that he has brought along. He fires the first shot at the cable's attachment to the elevator, which makes a jerk as the cable partially breaks away. Trinity moves closer to Neo as he takes hold of her and fires the second shot which separates the cable completely. Neo remembers the boy's council and quietly says to himself, "*There is no spoon!*"

The elevator starts a free fall while the loose cable rises rapidly, pulling them up the shaft. The elevator crashes down below with an incredible explosion which envelopes the whole lower floor of the building. Simultaneously, Neo and Trinity reach the top of the elevator shaft and walk out on the roof to face the military police stationed there.

Due to the magnitude of the explosion, the building's lights go out and the emergency sprinklers open up. Water starts filling the room where the agents are holding Morpheus. Agent Smith, dripping wet, yells angrily to his soaked lieutenants, "*Find them and destroy them!*"

### THROWING A WET BLANKET ON THE DEVIL'S PARTY

This little scene of going to the top, following the victory in the lobby, can represent those times when we have put some more of the First Level self improvement struggles to rest. When we do, there is often a little break. We continue to see more and more deeply that people are really "perfect," i.e., complete, being who they are, wonderfully fulfilling their unique roles of automatic programmed reactions—just FOR US, NOT TO US!

Otherwise, the inner tormentor can survive and grow stronger on our misery. The more we resent anything, the bigger the diabolical beer parties he gets to have in our chest. These are the parties that give us those heavy, discouraged feelings in our solar-plexus. He may even invite in some of his fiendish friends so they can also slurp beer and gorge themselves on steak, peanuts and pretzels, having a ball on the energy of our misery. Have you noticed the feeling? But when we see how funny the current batch of his lies really are, we can laugh at the joke he is getting us to play on ourselves. In doing so, like the sprinkler system going off, we have thrown a soaking, wet blanket all over the devil's beer party. We may be so amused at seeing the joke that we do not even need to send him back to hell where he belongs. Because of our laughter, he and his gang are all but gone and there is a welcomed peace. But, as with the agents, our inner devils are not going to like this, so don't be surprised if the calm may just be a lull before the next storm.

### TEMPORARY VICTORY ON THE BUILDING'S ROOF

Neo and Trinity go out on the roof of the building where a serious gun and Kung Fu battle takes place with the military police who arrived with Agent Green. The helicopter pilot shouts a radio distress alarm, "*I repeat! We are under attack!*"

While Neo is killing several of the guards, another guard behind him prepares to shoot Neo in the back, but is instantly killed by a knife thrown from across the roof by Trinity. Neo, becoming aware of Trinity's timely help as the guard falls, realizes Trinity has saved his life again.

When Agent Smith orders his lieutenants to find the invaders and destroy them, Agent Green presses on his ear piece to tune into the pilots SOS. Since all "humans" are creations of the A. I. Machines, an agent can see through any one's eyes or hear through anyone's ears. Agent Green, now knowing that the invaders are on the roof, infuses himself into the body of the pilot. Now again dressed in a well pressed, dry suit, he quietly steps out of the aircraft and silently walks up behind Neo. When Neo turns and sees he is now facing an agent, he immediately opens fire with both 45s. Agent Green moves faster than Neo's bullets by swaying back and forth. As Neo runs out of ammunition, he calls out desperately, "*Trinity, I need help.*"

Before she can arrive, Agent Green starts shooting at him. Neo finds that he too can move fast enough to dodge the bullets, but is finally grazed by one, which knocks him flat on his back. Agent

Green steps up to shoot Neo at point blank range, and declares, pathetically, “*Only human!*”

At this moment, Trinity has walked up behind Agent Green, places the barrel of her gun at his temple and declares, with emphasis, “*See if you can dodge this!*”

As soon as Agent Green’s body hits the ground, it becomes the dead pilot, and Agent Green is free to reinsert himself back in the building. Now, Neo and Trinity are on the roof alone. Trinity helps Neo up by taking his hand. As he gets up, realizing this part of their mission is complete, now takes off his long coat and dark glasses. Trinity, looking puzzled at Neo, asks, “*How did you do that?*”

“*What?*”

“*You moved like they do. I’ve never seen anyone move that fast.*”

Neo, with a frown on his face, answers, “*Wasn’t fast enough.*”

## SEEING THIS PART OF THE BATTLE ON THE SPIRITUAL LEVEL

The roof top is symbolical of revisiting the Spiritual Level of the preparatory Gospel. Here again, we may find even more serious obstacles to further inner integration, as is symbolized by there being an agent involved. So from the Third Level, we may still revisit Second Level pockets of spiritual “needs,” wanting or expecting miracles that do not come or still converting revelations or feelings into conclusions.

Our two champions, Neo and Trinity, are taking the difficulties of the journey head on. Although most of our allegorical interpretations are describing our inner conflicts, we may resent outer conflicts as well. We might compare the guards on the roof to our friends and relatives, and Agent Green to our local Church authorities. Just as in the days of Christ, Church leaders usually feel that their primary obligation is not the spiritual attainment of those in their charge, but to protect them from zealous, false teachers who would divide the flock. Their ultimate power, under the Law of Moses, was the death of a false teacher. Today, it is merely excommunication.

But let’s remember, Agent Green, himself, was not permanently eliminated by Trinity’s shot. We see, as Agent Green’s body is retransformed back into the pilot he took over, it was really the pilot that was killed, and Agent Green was merely released back to his normal position at Agent Smith’s side.

## “HOW DID YOU DO THAT?”

There is often an interesting development at this stage of the journey through the Flaming Sword. For the first time we see Neo dodging bullets just like Agent Green was doing. Trinity is so amazed that she wants to know more. “**You moved like they do. I’ve never seen anyone move that fast.**” What does this represent?

At this stage, Trinity represents the growing level of Agape-Love and Neo represents a growing level of Objective Consciousness. What we are being shown here is that our Love Consciousness begins to see the Awareness coming more alive and being empowered on a new level. Remember, neither can do it alone. Up to this time, in our individual growth, love has usually taken the lead, forging out in new ways of relating to friend and foe alike. Then, suddenly, a whole new level of understanding begins to break through on our mental outlook. Dodging bullets is like being able to handle opposition, even cruel unfairness, on the inner level with such agility that little of it hits home. These are the inner miracles of the growing awakening.

We usually think of miracles as outer events which defy the ordinary laws of nature. When individuals begin to function on the Second Level, the Spiritual Level of the gospel, their faith increases so that many of the gifts of the Spirit begin to be manifest. Healings, visions, prophecies, inspirations and even visitations may begin to occur. The long spiritual drought of the First Level, so typical of the great and spacious building, has finally come to an end. What thrilling times. But remember, this is still on the Tree of Knowledge, even though near it’s very top. One of the aspects of these spiritual outpourings is that we tend to equate these blessings as evidence of our spiritual growth. Now, from Third Level, these occasional spiritual blessings take on a new dimension. Using this movie as a metaphor of how we might occasionally revisit Second Level, this experience of Neo dodging bullets would represent experiencing miracles in a whole new way.

## HOW ABOUT EVERYTHING BEING A MIRACLE?

On the Third Level, miracles begin to mean something quite different than they do on Second Level. On Second Level, we probably became absolutely blown away, thrilled beyond measure when such blessings occurred. But as we move into Third Level, a change takes place. More and more, EVERYTHING IS A MIRACLE. When that happens, the greatest miracles are in our Awareness as we see God's incredible hand in EVERYTHING—even a seed, a tree, a flower, a mountain, the ocean, the rain, a door knob, a cloud, a baby, an old person, an apple, a car, a TV, a computer, and on and on. In that space, when the fiery darts of opposition and negativity come our way, the higher Awareness just simply moves out of the way. Another way to say it is that we find it easier to more calmly roll with the punches.

Interestingly, those on the First Level, especially those holding leadership positions, even though they talk about the gifts of the Spirit, are usually not comfortable with reports of these things going on by others. But those on the Second Level are thrilled at such reports and experiences. Yet, as we move to Third Level, realizing that miracles, whether they are visions, healings, or even visitations, in and of themselves, *prove nothing* other than they were experienced. Those on the Tree of Knowledge want to interpret these wonderful events as meaning or proving something. In other words, they quickly want to convert such events into conclusions as to what they mean. That is what is done on the Spiritual Level in almost every religion, for all religions can and most do have such things happen. And that is what makes them "know for sure" that they are right and everyone else is wrong. LDS are no exception.

So once we see the hand of God in all events and circumstances, then we are in a position to wage a different type of battle with the darkness within, which we now see allegorically demonstrated in Neo and Trinity taking to the air.

### SUMMARY

As we are processed through the Third Level, there are usually a number of "needs" to continue to deal with on the Second Level, the Level of spiritual gifts and miracles. Those experiences were so thrilling that we can be tempted, from time to time, to want to go back to that level of being needed. There is no time when we can't use a miracle or two, of course, but it is not in the miraculous that creates the stress, but in the *need for those blessings* that can be more clearly understood and removed through *an inner release*. When we can finally just let those things happen that we are free of the need and can watch those miracles peacefully join our seeing that everything is a miracle. Then there is not any "need," "humble pride" or "feelings of special worthiness" about being involved in miracles.

## Chapter XXXI

### WINNING THE BATTLE ON THE THIRD, INTEGRATIVE LEVEL

From their roof top position, Morpheus is being held captive over forty stories below in the heart of the building. Since the explosion knocked out electricity, even the elevators will not work. Besides, the building is being flooded by the fire-control system. The third and final battle of liberating Morpheus will require an entirely different approach. It is called winning the battle on the Third, Integrative Level.

TRINITY BECOMES A P2-12 PILOT

As they stand on the roof alone, with only a few of the dead soldier's still laying around, Neo notices the helicopter. He gets an idea for a bold experiment and asks, "Can you fly that thing?" "Not yet."

As she takes off her dark glasses and opens up her cellular phone to call the spaceship, Tank responds, "Operator."

"*Tank. I need a pilot program for a P2-12 Helicopter. Hurry!*"

Tank rapidly punches in data with his partially gloved hands and the eyelids of Trinity's nearby body flutter as she is quickly programmed with pilot skills. As the pilot training program is completed, she says to Neo as she starts walking quickly to the helicopter, "Let's go."

### THE NOT-KNOWING-MIND BECOMES THE KNOWING-MIND

This brief programming scene, in which Trinity's body on board the spaceship is quickly programmed with the complex skills of a pilot, demonstrates one of the miracles of having a not-knowing-mind. By Our being so left-brained specialists, we fall into the trap of believing that if our conscious mind doesn't know something, then "we" don't know that something. But when we consciously go to the not-knowing-state and stay in motion, suddenly skills and abilities can show up that can get a job done. It is the turning to our inner source which opens us up to a higher wisdom. We tend to close ourselves off to these flashes of insight when we keep trying to figure things out by our own thinking to solve the problems.

### MORPHEUS IS BROUGHT OUT BY HELICOPTER

Back where Morpheus is held, Agent Green, after reinstating himself after his fatal battle with Neo and Trinity, walks into Agent Smith's office, again soaking wet, just as the helicopter comes floating into view directly outside the large window. The room, with the lights off and the sprinklers running, is partially flooded. Agent Smith, seeing one of "his" P2-12 Helicopters hovering outside, can't believe what is happening and shouts an emphatic, "NO!!"

While Trinity holds the aircraft steady, Neo carefully opens up with the helicopter's rapid firing, 50 caliber, Gatling gun. As he starts shooting up the room, all three agents shoot back but without affect. Each of the agents, one by one, is blown away, but they quickly reform themselves in the adjoining room through the bodies of the guards standing there. Yet, the agents hold their new, reconstructed positions, cautiously staying out of reach of Neo's firepower of over a thousand rounds per minute. With the agents out of the room, Neo yells, "Morpheus! Get up!"

Morpheus, with great effort, breaks the chain holding his two cuffs. He rips off the censors and runs for the window. Agent Smith, realizing Morpheus is making his escape, comes back into the room and starts shooting at his fleeing captive, finally making a direct hit on his leg. As Neo, seeing that Morpheus is badly wounded, calls out to Trinity as he prepares to jump out after him, "He's not going to make it."

Being attached to the ship's lifeline, Neo springs toward the building to meet Morpheus half way. They meet together in a full, clinching embrace. But as they fall and the cord reaches its full length, the sudden jerk forces Neo's grasp on Morpheus to break loose. Neo is just barely able to grab one of Morpheus' wrists just above the handcuff. Neo, with a victorious smile on his face, proclaims the good news, "Gotcha!!!"

Morpheus looks gratefully at Neo with his precarious hold on him and then looks down at the street more than 40 floors below with some justifiable concern on his face. As they swing on the long cord, Trinity starts to gain altitude.

### FLYING OUTSIDE THE BUILDING TO RESCUE MORPHEUS

This is an interesting turn of events. Remembering that there are no accidents, it just didn't happen that a helicopter was handy. Agent Green and his guards had arrived by this aircraft to reveal to Agent Smith that their spy, Cypher, had been killed and that Morpheus' plug could be pulled at any minute. Also notice how Trinity is moving from "not knowing" to "knowing" how to pilot such a complex craft. But the most significant part of the allegory is that Neo and Trinity fly outside the building to get the job done.

Just as clothes are symbolic, the buildings in this movie also seem to be a part of the ingenious symbolism. The Bellview Apartments where Neo first met Morpheus, which was also the one they used to enter the Matrix to visit the Oracle and where Morpheus was captured, was an eight story walk up. They used the top floor. The Oracle's taller building had 26 floors, and her rooms were in the middle, on the Thirteenth. This military controlled building has over 80 floors, and the agents' office is on one of the middle floors. So, as we can see, the buildings get higher at each step. Interestingly, the final battle takes place underground in an old subway station. Then on the third floor of the Heart Hotel, Neo is killed. What can these buildings symbolize as we journey through the Flaming Sword?

### **UNDERSTANDING STRUCTURE**

Buildings represent structure, an important element of control in the Matrix. It can also be referred to as psychological scaffolding, an important element in our early childhood. Our inner life would not work anymore than our outer life would work without some form of rigidity, like a skeleton, requirements holding everything up and in place. Structure, in and of itself, is neither good nor bad. While it can be liberating, structuring can also be enslaving when it becomes the end in and of itself. That was the case with those in the great and spacious building in Lehi's vision where the inhabitants were enslaved by the very structure that had been attained, they had hoped, to set them free.

A knowledge of good and evil is structure, appropriately called the "law." As Lehi reminds us, "**Men are taught sufficiently to know good and evil.**" It is essential for the preparatory stages. But the shift from slavery to liberty must move from rigid structuring to flexible structuring, able to bend with the wind. Again, as Christ declared, "**The wind bloweth where it listeth...So is everyone that is born of the Spirit.**"

As seen from the different levels, the major battles in the movie occur at or near ground level or near the tops of the buildings. Trinity's flight in the movie's first scene was from the rooftops and her final escape at the phone booth was at ground level. In the Bellview Apartments, the wet wall was needed to go from the top to the bottom. Now in the skyscraper, the first two battles occur on the first floor lobby and the roof top. But to finally win, to rescue Morpheus, they go outside the building, flying free of the structure but not ignoring what is in the building.

### **THE MIRACLE AND DANGERS OF DETACHMENT, ESPECIALLY IN MARRIAGE**

Probably the scariest thing about enlightenment, moving beyond the tight structuring of the First Level, is experiencing disorientation, losing the tight guidelines we have been accustomed to. The old paradigms are wobbling. During this period, it is easy to lose one's *balance* on the one hand or *direction* on the other. When people do, they may temporarily crash, which is proof enough to First Level observers that the whole idea of enlightenment and liberation is a tool of the devil. But even crashing is usually not a life and death matter. Most discoveries and successes in any field are accompanied by frequent mistakes and failures. A major point of Third Level teachings is to increase the possibility of reducing the length of the learning curve.

Probably one of the most fertile arenas for continual discovery is in our personal relationship with our marriage partner. Marriage takes a loving relationship to a higher level of structure by rights and obligations of the marriage covenant. Like the woman who was surprised to see both her family cat and dog peacefully curled up together under the stove, then wishfully asking her husband with whom she often quarreled violently, "*They're natural enemies, so why can't we be like that.*" He smiled and replied, "*Just tie them together and see what happens.*"

In our day of more conscious human rights and more equality for women, divorce rates have skyrocketed. Even with our temple marriages, the divorce rate is alarming. And many of the marriages that do last are anything but truly enjoyable relationships much of the time. This is especially true if one of the pair begins to move into greater spiritual understanding. You may be going through that right now, yourself. Your partner may have felt obligated to dig in his or her heals in an attempt to protect the old, familiar ways.

### **A SPIRITUAL DIVORCE VS ACTUAL DIVORCE**

There is a way to increase the inner peace and joy one has in a marriage, which is to get a spiritual divorce. A spiritual divorce is possible when we see the foolishness of making the other person responsible for our own inner state or for making ourselves responsible for theirs. In this way, a marriage does not have to end to be freed from its bondage. Most any marriage is difficult when we stand on our rights and obligations. Yes, we can walk away from a marriage and possibly find more peace, but we may also be walking away from one of our greatest teaching schools.

Of course, outer conditions are another matter. But if we are blaming and complaining in a relationship, which is usually because of the way events make us feel, divorce will usually just lead to another marriage with the same problem. The most powerful opportunity to face our inner devils is to stay in a marriage, if possible, and see that the resistance we are receiving is, again, *not being done to us, but for us and will continue as long as it is useful for us*, i.e., as long as we keep “needing” to resist it.

So in this metaphor, Neo and Trinity move outside the confining structure of the building and deal with the situation by flying next to it. Symbolically, this is called spiritual detachment. In contrast to the other two battles, they are calmly dealing with matters with the tools at hand. No need for Kung Fu athletics or handheld weapons blazing away. Yet Neo is delivering more effective fire-power than ever before. That is what we can do when we emotionally detach from a situation and deal with it with Agape-Love, i.e., understanding. However, such detachment does not eliminate our vulnerability, as we see what happens next.

### THE RESCUES AFTER THE RESCUE

As Morpheus is caught by Neo, Agent Smith runs to the window and fires his pistol at the departing helicopter, hitting its engine in several critical places. As the helicopter starts losing power, Trinity is finally able to land the two men on top of a building, but the helicopter starts going down over the side toward the building next door.

Neo, in turn, seeing that he is still attached to the crashing aircraft, quickly wraps the cord around his waist to brace himself, but is quickly dragged over the rooftop all the way to its ledge. Trinity, knowing that Neo is hooked to the ship’s lifeline, shoots the bolt anchoring the cord so that Neo will not be pulled to his death. At the same time, she gabs hold of the free end of the cord with both hands and is immediately pulled free from the craft as it crashes into the side of the other building.

As the helicopter explodes in a huge fireball, Neo is left standing at the ledge, tightly holding the lifeline, which swings Trinity back into the side of the building below him. She smashes into the glass wall. Neo pulls her up to safety where they take a “*can you believe this*” looks at each other.

Tank, back in the spaceship, realizing that all three are now safe, whispers emphatically to himself, “*I know it! He is the One!*”

Morpheus, on top of the building with them, all clean and whole again, speaks to Trinity, “*Do you believe it now, Trinity?*”

Before she has time to answer, Neo interrupts him, saying, “*Morpheus, the Oracle...She told me...*”

Morpheus doesn’t let him finish, but says, “*I told you that she told you exactly what you needed to hear. That’s all! Neo, sooner or later you are going to realize, just as I did, there is a difference between knowing the path and walking the path.*”

Next we see Tank answering a call from Morpheus who is using Trinity’s cell phone, “*Operator.*”

Morpheus calls out, “*Tank.*”

“*God damn it. It is good to hear your voice, sir!*”

“*We need an exit.*”

Tank answers enthusiastically, “*I’ve got one ready. Subway station, State and Balboa.*”

### SEEING OUR OWN LIFE AS A MOVIE WE HELPED TO CREATE

So they get Morpheus out of the agent’s hands, albeit dangling from Neo’s life line, but then Agent Smith gets in a lucky shot that cripples the ship. You recall that during the time when Neo was firing the Gatling gun, preparatory to cutting the agents to shreds, the agents were all firing their

pistols but without effect. Now, Agent Smith fires several carefully aimed shots fatally crippling the helicopter so it has very little flight time left. Trinity struggles to gain altitude and is able to get her two men on the lifeline to a safe landing while she heads for what appears to be a certain death.

Wow! What a life! They made it through the lobby battle, handled the opposition on the roof with dispatch, got Morpheus out and safely on a rooftop, but now, it looks like Neo and Trinity are both going to pay with their lives. But Trinity quickly frees Neo's lifeline and takes a ride to safety provided by Neo's hanging onto the cord. Besides this episode adding to the excitement of the movie, what does it represent?

As we all know, life can be full of many surprises. In fact, there are times when one seemingly disaster or difficulty is piled on top of another. We all have those times when everything seems to be going wrong—financially, physically, emotionally, socially and, especially, spiritually. Again, it is Trinity, representing Agape-Love, that severs the ties of attachment and saves not only herself, but also Neo, representing Awareness.

I have already mentioned one of the mental processes I use, and that is, looking at the situation's worst possible scenario, I take time to remember that I don't know but what such an ultimate disaster would be eventually to *my greatest advantage*. In other words, the moment I go to the "not-knowing-mind," I have detached emotionally from the problem. Then, calm and collected, I am in a position to gather information, stay in motion and do whatever is in front of me to handle.

But I have another mental remembrance which is also helpful, particularly in times of greatest discouragement when it seems like nothing is going right. So what do I do? I recall the "*eternal point of view*" that when the Great Jehovah contemplated all things, He contemplated "me." And in that instant, I probably would have assisted in the plan for my evolving, from beginning to end. In other words, I suspect that I would certainly have helped to *create my own movie*. Since I have chosen to have that positive point of view, I simply trust that I am not stupid enough to have helped create a movie that DID NOT WORK! Nor would I have created a movie that would be boring. In other words, I certainly chose a challenging enough script to be sure I not only got my money's worth out of mortality, but also had plenty to keep me busy and growing. So with those trusting thoughts in mind, I look at the drama of my current situation, take a deep breath, smile at the dramatics and go to work.

### **WHY INSPIRATIONAL GUIDANCE IS SELDOM THE WHOLE TRUTH**

Even after Neo has had these truly miraculous experiences, even dodging bullets, he is still more prepared to believe the Oracle's instructions that he was not the One than to believe his own experiences that he is. But to his friends, the truth of his actually being the One is obvious. So Morpheus joyfully asks Trinity for her confirmation, "**Do you believe it now, Trinity?**"

But Neo interrupts him. After all, Neo thought he knew differently since he had contradictory information direct from none other than the Oracle, herself. But Morpheus will hear none of it. Even though he was not with Neo in the room with the Oracle, he understands the role she plays in the evolving of the various potentials. So he reminded Neo of a critical principle about revelation, "**I told you that she told you exactly what you needed to hear. That's all!**"

What an important lesson! In addition, it is a principle that spiritual seekers seem to have to learn over and over. That teaching principle is called "miss-direction." Another name for it is "a set-up." A wise teacher will use miss-direction whenever students believe they know more than they really know.

As I have mentioned, my teacher, back in the late Sixties and early Seventies, used miss-direction and set-ups frequently. Yet most of the time we students did not catch on, at least not for a long time. But will the Lord do anything like that? Of course! The Lord is the wisest teacher of all. The preparatory gospel, for example, is loaded with set-ups. Literalists are particularly gullible when it comes to recognizing when they are being set-up.

Notice the scripture we used for *Book I, Looking Beyond the Mark*, Jacob 4:14.

**The Jews...sought for things they could not understand. Wherefore...God hath... delivered unto them many things which they cannot understand, because they desired it. And because they desired it God hath done it, THAT THEY MAY STUMBLE."**

Did God do such cruel things to Israel because he despised them? No, of course not. It was because their mission was so special in His sight that if they wouldn't learn the easy way, then they would have to learn the hard way. Set-ups can be useful on all three teaching levels. But for those

seekers on the Second Level, the Spiritual Level, when direct revelation now starts coming much easier, tend to want the Lord *to tell them everything that they should do*. For awhile, it may seem like He does. Then suddenly, they begin to notice that things are going from bad to worse. So on the Third Level, we begin to realize an awesome truth—that truth is simply this—***we are not to trust the Lord for fixed “knowledge.”***

That simple but critical truth is the meaning behind the warning to not partake, or even touch, the Tree of Knowledge of Good and Evil. The Tree of Knowledge was designed to be bitter. Then what are we to trust the Lord for? It is for the gift of hope and perfect Agape-Love. The Tree of Life is sweet. But don't we get knowledge from the Tree of Life? Yes, but love makes all such knowledge only *tentative*, for, in the long run, all knowledge is set up to fail along with everything else, except Agape-Love. As Paul testified, that not only will prophecies fail, but knowledge shall also pass away.

## KNOWING THE PATH AND WALKING THE PATH

**Morpheus' next point is also a difficult one to learn. He said,** “Neo, sooner or later you are going to realize, just as I did, there is a difference between knowing the path and walking the path.”

As we have mentioned, because our Western culture is very left brain, we put so much emphasis and value on intellectual achievement that we tend to believe that to know about something is practically the same as having that something. So if we know about and believe in spiritual attainment, then we might conclude that we must certainly possess such an attainment. As foolish as that sounds, it is common to members of every religion.

Let's read again what President Benson read to the Church from the 84<sup>th</sup> Section of the Doctrine and Covenants after promising *a blessing hitherto unknown*.

**They [the saints] shall remain under this condemnation until they repent and remember the new covenant... which I have given them, NOT ONLY TO SAY, BUT TO DO according to that which I have written.** (D&C 84:55-57)

Most members will agree, “*Yes, of course, we must walk our talk!*” And in some ways we do, but in many subtle ways we do not. So since those on the Tree of Knowledge cannot completely walk their talk, it is easy to try to cover that up by just keep *talking and talking*. Have you noticed? Yes, we Mormon's are great talkers. In religious circles, it is called preaching to the choir. Lesson after lesson, talk after talk, article after article, we talk about righteousness, repentance, obedience, etc. because such talk is supposed to show that we, too, are at least TRYING. In other words, the old saying that “those who *can*, DO and those who *can't*, TEACH,” is more appropriate than we have imagined.

We all tend to trust a doctor better who is not afraid to acknowledge that he does not know when, in reality, he does not know. Perhaps that is where we might start, even though we have tons of scriptures and personal revelations to support our claims that we do know. We just don't know! A great historian once observed that the one lesson we should learn from history is that *people do not know what they think they know*. Realizing that time-proven reality, that we really don't know what we think we know, is the essence of surrender. It is the key to the not-knowing-mind. It is only then that we can truly yield!

## AGENT SMITH ORDERS A SENTINEL ATTACK ON THE SPACESHIP

In the next scene, Agent Smith is arriving on the roof and seeing the abandoned lifeline used in the successful escape, he lets out an angry curse, “*Damn it!*”

Agent Green reports that their tracing the cell phone calls to the spaceship has been successful in locating its exact location. “*The search is completed.*”

Agent Brown adds, to drive home the point, “*We have their position.*”

As the two lieutenants start to leave, Agent Green speaks with a little reprimand in his voice, insisting that his superior not play any more games, saying quietly but emphatically, “*Order the strike!*”

As the two leave, Agent Smith, of course, agrees. Realizing the devastating power of their fleet of Squidic Sentinel Machines, he speaks to himself with angry determination, “*They are not out yet!*”

## THEY ARE NOT OUT YET!

Let's remember, when Agent Smith refers to his enemies as not yet being out, he is talking about his great digitally contrived reality of the Matrix. Although, as Trinity told Cypher, "**The Matrix isn't real**," it is the only reality most inhabitants of the Matrix know. As we have seen, inside the Matrix, it seems very real, and at the same time, very dangerous. So what does it mean to "get out?" As the movie shows, even using an exit to get to the spaceship can be hazardous. But even when they do, the spaceship seems also to be extremely vulnerable as well.

But what Neo is soon to learn after he discovers what it means to be the One, is that he has been "out" all the time even though he did not know it. That is the secret to entering into *the Rest of the Lord from this time henceforth until we rest with Him in Heaven*. But it is going to take a few more painful defeats before Neo can make this critical discovery. Until then, he will continue to believe that he is fighting for his life.

## SUMMARY

In this third, and final battle to release Morpheus, Neo and Trinity move outside the giant structure of the building, symbolizing that on the Third Level there is a principle of *detachment involved in direct involvement*. When we go *beyond need*, while still choosing to reach out, results can come from an entirely new level. Yet, even when a higher guidance comes into play, and there is a temptation to turn revelations into conclusions, we stay in the not-knowing-mind to take each moment as they come, as both Neo and Trinity did in the crashing of their helicopter. As Neo was told, there is a great difference between "knowing" the path and "walking" the path.

## Chapter XXXII

### NEO BATTLES TO HIS DEATH

We have now come to the climax of the Armageddon, yet it is like the eye of a hurricane, everything at the moment is peaceful. Morpheus has been rescued, Cypher has been liquidated, and the trio, healthy and strong, are on their way home. Allegorically, at this final phase of moving through the flaming sword, it looks like our transformed testimony has been recovered, the Accuser has been held at bay, and getting out seems unobstructed.

Yet our major barrier to Oneness has yet to be pierced. That deep, underlying subliminal "need" — that need to still be something worth while, to make at least some kind of difference, to fulfill some aspect of one's destiny — has probably yet to die. At this point, the breakthrough, as it is for Neo, may not be far away.

#### NEO IS LEFT TO FIGHT AGENT SMITH ALONE

As these victorious three enter the dirty subway station, there is an old homeless man lying quietly in a far corner on a dirty mattress, drinking from a bottle enclosed in a paper sack. The phone in the single booth is ringing. Neo, having pioneered the rescue effort, asks Morpheus to go first. As Morpheus dissolves and the receiver drops, the amazing event startles the old man who can't believe what he has just seen. Neo replaces the receiver back on its hook to await the next call.

Now that Neo and Trinity are alone, she speaks hesitantly, "*Neo, I want to tell you something, but I am afraid of what it could mean if I do.*"

As the phone starts to ring again, Trinity continues, wistfully looking at Neo, "*Everything the Oracle told me has come true...everything but this.*"

A noisy express train roars through the station. Since the agents can see through the eyes of anyone the Matrix is producing, Agent Smith has seen what the old man just saw, and, instantly, takes over his body lying on the mattress. Just as Trinity steps into the booth, Agent Smith steps

forward and fires at the phone booth. As Trinity transports, a bullet hits the booth, shattering the glass and smashing the receiver Trinity was holding, thus eliminating the exit phone for any use by Neo.

### **“EVERYTHING HAS COME TRUE BUT THIS”**

Before they had left the rooftop, Morpheus had asked Trinity about whether she now knew that Neo is the One, “**Do you believe it now, Trinity?**” But Neo had interrupted Trinity before she had time to answer. So as soon as she is alone with Neo in the subway station, she attempts to answer Morpheus’ question, but with a little hesitancy. Her problem is that she has also been set-up by the Oracle to fear that she would find her true love only after he has been killed. She has never understood what that meant, but, even so, she has been afraid to tell Neo what she will later tell his dead body in the spaceship. She will say, “**The Oracle told me that I would fall in love with a dead man. And that he would be the One.**”

What does this represent? Let’s remember, Trinity is Neo’s other half, his heart. Only united and unified, can he be the One, thus Trinity, in this sense, would also be the same One. This is the real meaning of the symbolism of the *Eternal Marriage Covenant* — the mind and heart eternally unified into one great whole. But at this point, Trinity still has some element of fear left. She is afraid to trust Neo with all of her own truth. In other words, she is still part Phileo-Love, which is conditional love, and not yet totally, unconditional Agape-Love. “**Neo, I want to tell you something, but I am afraid of what it could mean if I do.**”

What might it mean to Neo? It might confirm the fact that he was not going to get out of this rescue effort alive, just as the Oracle had promised him. Trinity did not want to take away his hope that he could make it back without getting killed in the process. Remember how clear the Oracle had made the prophecy to Neo. “**You’re going to have to make a choice. On one hand, you will have Morpheus’ life. On the other hand, you will have your own. One of you is going to die. Which one will be up to you? I’m sorry, kiddo, I really am. You have a good soul, and I hate giving good people bad news.**”

The Oracle had set-up both Trinity and Neo to see his death as inevitable. Trinity was promised that she would find true love, but would lose what she loved to death. Neo, in turn, would save a life, but lose his own in the process.

### **NEO FACES AGENT SMITH ALONE**

In the spaceship, as Trinity opens her eyes, sensing the danger of what she just left behind, cries with alarm, “*Neo!*”

Tank shouts, “*What in the hell has happened!*”

Trinity answers urgently, “*An agent! You have got to send me back!*”

Tank, realizing the transition phone has been put out of commission, answers emphatically, “*I can’t!*”

Back in the subway station, Agent Smith, seeing that he now has Neo alone, announces with confident sarcasm, “*Mr. Anderson!*”

Neo turns to take a brief look at the stairway up to the street as a possible escape, but instead of running, he pauses and turns to face Agent Smith. Trinity, talking to Neo’s body, pleads desperately, “*Run, Neo, run!*” When she realizes his locator beacon shows that he is not moving, she asks Morpheus, “*What is he doing?*”

Morpheus smiles and confidently answers, “*He is beginning to believe!*”

### **NEO DECIDES NOT TO RUN, BUT TO STAND AND FIGHT BACK**

Neo has only once fought an agent, and that was when both he and agent Green were dodging bullets. But when Neo had finally been grazed and fell, Trinity saved him. Now he is alone with none other than Agent Smith. He can run but chooses to stay and fight. As Morpheus tells bewildered Trinity when she asks him what Neo was doing, he answers her, “**He is beginning to believe!**”

Yet, as in the saying, “*A little knowledge is a dangerous thing.*” Neo knows he has the skills of a warrior. But the truth is that when we start fighting the devil on his own turf, he always wins. That is

why the exit declaration of sending the devil back to hell is so powerful because it allows us to take charge with no further thing to say. In fact, as most sales training manuals teach on how best to close a sale, they say that after the closing challenge has been made, *the next one who talks gives in*.

As we watch their amazing battle, Neo does very well at first. Both of them are hitting with blows that would break every bone in an ordinary person's body. But Agent Smith still has the advantage. That is the lesson. Whenever we try to out-smart the Accuser by arguing with his lies, like Neo battling Agent Smith one on one, we may win some of the battles, but we will lose the war.

## NEO USES THE TRAIN TO WIN HIS FIRST BATTLE WITH AGENT SMITH

As Neo and Agent Smith face off, dashing for each other, they are flying through the air, firing their guns and dodging each other's bullets. When they meet in mid air and drop to the floor, Agent Smith says: "*Your gun is empty.*"

Neo responds with a sneer, "*So is yours.*"

Both stand and throw their guns away. A brutal Kung Fu fight follows, with Neo getting the worst of it. When there is a pause, we see that one of the lenses on Agent Smith's dark glasses is partially broken. As he removes his glasses all together, he says with a sneer, "*I am going to enjoy watching you die, Mr. Anderson!*"

The battle continues, with Agent Smith hitting Neo's head with his head. Neo gives back as he takes, but is finally thrown clear to the end of the station. He is bleeding at the mouth.

In the spaceship, Trinity is watching in horror as Neo's body is bleeding at the mouth, realizing he is getting the worst of it by far. She tears a piece of cloth and is wiping away the blood, crying out, "*He's killing him.*"

As Neo gets up, he waves his fingers as an invitation to Agent Smith to come and get it. But Neo receives still more painful punishment, finally being thrown through the subway wall. Then Agent Smith drags Neo by an ankle and throws him across the tracks. As the sound of a coming train is heard, Agent Smith jumps down on the tracks where Neo has fallen and sneers, "*Do you hear that, Mr. Anderson. That is the sound of inevitability! It is the sound of your death, Mr. Anderson. Goodbye.*"

Neo, speaking through clenched teeth of real pain, retorts, "*My name is Neo!*"

Then Neo propels both of them up to the ceiling, and, as they come down, Neo jumps up on the platform as Agent Smith is run over by the train. Neo walks back and forth, as the express train is speeding through the station. Since Neo is now in the station alone, he turns and starts walking up the exit stairs. But suddenly the train comes to a grinding halt. The doors open and out walks Agent Smith, clean and fresh, again wearing his dark glasses, ready to do further battle. This time, Neo starts running up the stairs, determined to get away. Back at the spaceship, Trinity asks Tank, "*What happened?*"

Tank, as an internal battle station alarm begins to sound, answers, "*I lost him.*"

## “MY NAME IS NEO!”

We notice that Agent Smith always addresses Neo with the polite title of mister and then uses only his sir name. He did the same thing when he first met Neo for interrogation. The next time they were to meet was less than half an hour before this scene when he saw Neo looking over the sights of the helicopter's rapid firing, machine gun. That time the guard's body Agent Smith was using got killed. Now they meet again in the subway station. As Neo momentarily gets the best of him, Agent Smith declares with a serious frown, "*I am going to enjoy watching you die, Mr. Anderson!*" Finally, as he holds Neo between the tracks as a speeding express train approaches, he says convincingly, "*Do you hear that, Mr. Anderson. That is the sound of inevitability! It is the sound of your death, Mr. Anderson. Goodbye.*"

As desperate as his condition is, possibly as his last words, he forces out a strong contradiction, "**My name is Neo!**" We might wonder why his name being Neo and not Anderson is so important?

Well, just like *there is no spoon*, there is no real Thomas A. Anderson. That identity is a construct made by the mind, a very real part of the Man-Made World each of us has created for our sense of separateness. That is the work of the natural mind which is an enemy, i.e., a divisive state of

being, to God and will be forever until a transformation takes place by being born anew, as a spiritual resurrection, by the Spirit. That is really what the name Neo means — that which is *new*. He had used it, probably not really knowing its deeper meaning, as a hacker in the computer underworld. It must have been his way of staking out a claim of being a revolutionary, a new challenge for the establishment.

### NEO NEEDS ONE MORE CRITICAL LESSON

Remember, we observed that when Neo and Trinity first left the Construct to rescue Morpheus, they had unknowingly walked into this trap of fighting the Matrix with the Matrix. To a large extent, they did it with guns. And it worked, up to a point. That is the interesting thing about resisting evil. It not only appears to be the only real alternative, but it does seem to work to a degree. In this scene we see that the guns of neither one is able to stop the other, so they casually throw them away and start heavy body to body combat. Obviously, Neo is doing better in his ability to go head-to-head with an agent, but it is still not nearly enough. What does this mean?

It could well mean that if we don't learn the easy way, we will have to learn the hard way. As we discover more and more of the illusions of our conclusions, we pass through one obstacle to aliveness after another. Awakening is removing the obstacles to greater awareness so that we can discover what has been there all along. In a way, it is like uncovering a treasure. We do not create nor even earn the treasure. What we do, instead, is to simple remove the debris that hides the treasure-beyond-price from our view.

As life begins to be so much simpler and open, with difficulties seen more as opportunities, we are getting closer to that time when we see the ultimate illusion—*there is no spoon*. How about, *there are no agents*? Or as we might put it into plain English, there are no devils except those we create out of our own need to judge between good and evil. But that realization usually dies hard. In fact, to make that discovery, Neo is going to make the final sacrifice. He must give up his life to find it.

### GETTING BEAT-UP ENOUGH SO THAT WE LEARN TO RUN

This is Neo's final battle of trying to beat the Matrix with the Matrix, trying to beat the agents at their own game. It looks like he could have almost made it, but Agent Smith knows better as he refers to the sound of the oncoming train, "**That is the sound of inevitability!**"

As longs as we hold the Matrix to be self evident, that it really is real, it is not going to be beaten. We are back to the simple advice, "**Resist not evil!**" Neo had previously experienced running when Morpheus was captured and they left him behind. He had not liked the results. But now, being totally on his own, Neo has to learn for himself that when we fight fire with fire, it is easy to get burned.

When circumstances set us up so the exit device is not available, we may feel we have no alternative but to take on the Accuser with our own logic. But the devils have all the advantages and when we beat them one way, they come at us from another. Remember, we are in their world and they know their way around far better than we.

### BOTH NEO AND THE SPACESHIP UNDER FULL ATTACK

As the spaceship attack alarm goes off, Morpheus and Trinity rush up a ladder to the control deck, take their seats, and watch on their video screen as a powerful fleet of Squidic Sentinels approaches. Trinity asks, "*How long?*"

*"Five, maybe six minutes."*

He picks up the intercom to call Tank on the deck below, "*Tank; charge the EMP.*"

Trinity, speaks with alarm, "*You can't use that until Neo is out!*"

Morpheus, with patient confidence, "*I know, Trinity. Don't worry. He is going to make it.*"

At that moment, Neo is running for his life from the subway station. First of all, he needs a cell phone so he can talk to the spaceship. Running through a busy street, he grabs a bystander's phone. As he continues running at full speed, he calls, desperately, "*Mr. Wizard, get me the hell out of here!*"

*"Got a patch on an old exit. Wabash and Lake."*

As Neo sees all three agents coming from different directions, brutally brushing people aside,

he realizes that he is surrounded, exclaiming, “*Oh shit!*”

As he ends up at a dead-end between buildings, he calls, “*Help! I need a little help!*”

“*The door!*”

As Neo, crashing through a back door as bullets fly, continues running desperately while guided step by step by Tank. He goes into an apartment building, then out on the fire escape, and jumps five stories to a trash bin below, with two of the agents right behind him.

Meanwhile, back at the ship, the invasion is now in full speed. The squidic machines are using their lasers to start penetrating the ship. Morpheus and Trinity have rejoined Tank on the main deck where it is safer. Morpheus is watching the button which will turn on the EMP shield to neutralize the enemy, but he doesn’t dare use it.

## FINALLY, EVEN RUNNING DOESN’T WORK

The ultimate lesson behind all lessons is that all things are set up to fail except the one ultimate reality, which comes only from the Oneness of it all, the One Life that creates all things in and of itself. After Neo gives one-on-one fighting a full try and loses, then he tries running like “a bat out of hell,” as the saying goes, but that is going to fail as well. Neo is being set-up to give his last full measure.

As we watch this desperate race, let’s remember that it stands as totally opposite to what Neo is able to experience a few minutes later after his death. But this time, everything is very real to Neo. The crowds, the rushing agents, the bullets, the dead-ends, the jumping, and on and on. He goes through one narrow escape after another, each time being saved by direction over the cell phone by Tank.

## AGENT SMITH SHOOTS NEO TO DEATH

Neo runs past the Heart Hotel that we saw at the beginning of the movie where Trinity had her first escape. Agent Smith, standing directly under the old hotel sign, is listening through his earphone to the phone conversation between Neo and the spaceship. He knows where Neo is headed as soon as Tank reveals the location of the exit phone, “*The fire escape at the end of the alley. Room 303.*”

As Neo reaches the alley, he climbs up the fire escape of the hotel. With bullets hitting all around, he goes into the building’s third floor, dashing through the halls, looking for Room 303.

At the spaceship, a new alarm sounds which signals a greater degree of penetration. Tank exclaims as the situation is now catastrophic, “*They’re inside!*”

As Neo races down a hallway, he comes to room 303 and crashes through the door. But there, standing in front of him, is Agent Smith with his dark glasses on again. He quickly fires point blank at Neo’s body with his heavy pistol. Neo is hit in the lower chest. When he sees that he is finally hit, he looks down at the wound and his fingers touch the blood. Yet, looking surprised, he is still standing. Agent Smith fires again, cascading Neo through the open door to slam against the wall on the other side of the hall. As Agent Smith fires round after round at Neo’s chest, he crumples to the floor and his eyes slowly close.

Back at the spaceship, Neo’s body was jerking, but suddenly goes quiet. The signal on the heartbeat monitor goes flat, showing that Neo is no longer alive. As Morpheus realizes that Neo is dead, he is totally mystified and exclaims in utter disbelief, “*It can’t be!*”

Meanwhile, the Squidic Machines are literally cutting the ship apart with their powerful lasers. Large pieces of the ship are falling down on the crew. Trinity leans over Neo’s body, protecting him from the falling beams. The situation is now next to hopeless.

Back in the Heart Hotel, as Agent Smith sees the lifeless body of Neo lying on the floor, casually instructs Agent Brown, “*Check him.*”

As Agent Brown touches Neo’s neck, he reports, “*He’s gone.*”

Agent Smith, with victory at last, says conclusively, “*Goodbye, Mr. Anderson.*”

## ROOM 303

It may well be a coincidence that the creators of the movie had the final scenes take place in the third room of the third floor of the old Heart Hotel, the same room Trinity was attacked by the police

at the beginning of the movie. But the choice fits in rather remarkably with our interpretation of their movie, that it is best understood on the Third Level of the gospel. If we see it only on the First Level, the symbolism would be limited to empowering the mind to accomplish great things. If we see it only on the Second Level, its symbolism would be limited to empowerment on the metaphysical level of mind over matter, along with overcoming other spiritual limitations. But seeing the symbolism on the Third Level, we have used it to tackle one barrier after another in the process of integration, bringing our divisive parts back into the unity of wholeness. This final culmination takes place on the third floor of this building where the old Neo, still partially chained to the old limitations, becomes the new Neo, able to comprehend the Real World and see the transparency of the Man-Made World of the Matrix.

### THE MEANING OF DEATH

So Neo has tried them all — guns, martial arts, aircraft and running. In the end, his enemy still wins, even getting to the exit phone just before he does. Why? Because the Matrix is their world. Neo had to discover for himself that in that world there was no way he could ultimately win. Now, from all indications, it is over!

But what we see played out before us is the greatest joke of all. What joke is that? This biggest lie of the Matrix is that existence is always teetering on the brink of disaster, called death. When loved ones are lost, especially when they are children, the heart breaks in sorrow and regret. The wall of death seems so impervious, so forever. But, if our faith is true, what really happens at death? *We go home*, that is what happens! But instead of rejoicing and celebrating, we look at premature death and see only loss, when in reality, there is only gain. The individual's sojourn here, valuable and as essential as this travel into darkness certainly may be, is complete.

### IT IS LIFE THAT IS SACRED, NOT MORTALITY

The answer is simple. It is because we believe *mortal life is sacred*. Yes, Life with a capital "L" is sacred, but not mere mortal life. Mortality is part of the Fall. Mortality is designed to be fickle, unfair, precarious and terminal. That doesn't mean we do not honor mortality and do our best to solve its challenges, but not to worship it. Life does not end at death any more than life ended when we left the spirit world to come here. Instead, in both cases, it blossoms into expanded experiences. Nor am I saying that consequences do not pass with us through the veil, for they certainly do, but the Master Creator has worked out His infinite designs to adequately nurture each of His children. Hidden deep within each of the souls of His children is the essence that eventually becomes the One, when "**every knee shall bow and every tongue confess.**"

### ARMAGEDDON COMES TO AN END

When Neo is hit the first time, point blank, he touches the wound and sees blood on his hands. At that moment, if there was any hope that the Matrix wasn't real, it evaporated in the realization that he had just been mortally wounded. Things are not much better in the spaceship where their only defense cannot be used for it would block Neo's return to the ship. So Neo has not made it and the Nebuchadnezzar is in the last stages of being destroyed. What does all this represent?

The old saying about dying hard is certainly true of our conditioning. Also like the old saying, *things sometimes have to get worse before they can get better*. We give up our life only when we realize there is nothing to save. The old life, like an old, worn out garment, is discarded, no longer useful in the affairs of life. One way or another, we come to a place where we really let it all go. As in the Biblical last great battle, it ends when there is, literally, little left. All things must fail to make way for the only thing that is really true.

Both Neo and Trinity were set up by the Oracle to face their ultimate fears. In the face of her dire prophecies, they still ventured ahead. With Neo's death, the violence is suddenly ready to end. That will be brought to bear by Trinity through her love, which is the story of Part V.

### SUMMARY

This chapter brings us to the allegorical end of the Flaming Sword, following the Iron Rod through the mists of darkness. We have gone from Neo's rebirth and regeneration to his death, symbolizing his giving up his life so that he might find it. He had to get his fill of fighting the devil in his own turf and then find that even running is not the answer. All of this demonstrates that sooner

or later, we finally discover that the “not-knowing-mind,” disorienting as it might be, is a very high state of consciousness. Yet, before deliverance, there comes a time when it appears nothing is left. Just as Neo being dead and the spaceship being destroyed, we are now taken to the ultimate miracle, which comes from Trinity, the transformed Agape-Love, rather than Neo, the transformed Awareness.

# PART V

# LIBERATION

# IN

# TRANSFORMATION

**Having Given Up His Life,  
He Finds It.**

## Chapter XXXIII

### NEO DISCOVERS THE REAL WORLD IS MADE OF LIGHT

Let's remember, Neo's transition can have a very different symbolical meaning on the two lower levels of truth than we are using it for Third Level Teachings. *First Level* sees Neo as finally overcoming all limitations and now experiencing real freedom to truly create what the *mind* can

perceive and believe. *Second Level* sees it as Neo opening the doors to unlimited spiritual power to create whatever the *heart* can desire and believe. In a sense, both are still in the magic of creating miracles to reshape the Matrix into an ideal state. Yes, I believe this movie can help empower them in that effort. At the same time, all I can say is good luck! They will need it.

From *Third Level Teachings*, we are dealing with the end of conflict, struggle and resistance, not by subduing the enemy, but by the clarity of a totally different point of view about the world in which we live. This is what I believe we are being shown allegorically in the last part of this movie.

### TRINITY'S FAITH AND LOVE BRINGS NEO BACK TO LIFE

**Now we come to the turning point! Trinity, while massive parts of the collapsing ship are crashing all around her, whispers to Neo's lifeless body, "Neo, I'm not afraid anymore. The Oracle told me that I would fall in love with a dead man. And that he would be the One. So you see, you can't be dead. You can't be! Because I love you! Do you hear me? I love you!"**

As Trinity kisses Neo's body, he begins to breath. She sees his monitor showing life-signs, so she commands him, "Now, get up!"

#### "I'M NOT AFRAID ANYMORE"

Let's keep in mind what is happening up to now from Trinity's point of view. The men in her life cannot help her. Morpheus is not only bewildered, he is horrified. Tank also realizes that it may be too late to use the EMP to save the ship. Neo, their greatest hope, has been eliminated. Trinity, in turn, is trying to protect Neo's body with her own from the falling beams. Then in this critical moment of helpless desperation, she is able to declare, "**Neo, I'm not afraid anymore.**"

This is the turning point! What changed Trinity? Simply, she suddenly "got it!" She saw through what the Oracle had told her. She quickly explains her discovery to Neo's lifeless body. "**The Oracle told me that I would fall in love with a dead man. And that he would be the One.**" She had suddenly realized that those two statements are contradictions in terms. To be the One is to be a Christ-man, an infinite and eternal expression of the Oneness, where there is no such thing as death. So if Neo is the One and she has fallen in love with him, there is no way he could be a dead man? But he is dead, isn't he? Yes and no! The Neo with whom she thought she had fallen in love was not yet the One and her need for the "incomplete Neo" had to be surrendered by herself just as Neo had to give up his life. That partial, transitional Neo had failed and been killed in the process. Once she could release her attachment of "need" for that relationship, she was suddenly empowered to accept a totally supportive relationship with Neo, the One.

As she explains further regarding the contradiction, "**So you see, you can't be dead. You can't be! Because I love you! Do you hear me? I love you!**" Her love was not only real, it was transformed. No longer was that love Phileo-Love but it was now Agape-Love, going beyond the feelings of need, which *eliminates the fear of loss*. She expresses that bonding with a kiss, which brings breath back into the lungs of Neo's body. Now, having accepted the new reality, she takes charge. "**Now, get up!**"

### TRINITY IS THE HEART, NOT THE MIND

As we mentally consider the meaning of these events, we do so with our minds. Yet, the Matrix of our mind believes that if we can just figure something out, like how Trinity discovered this great idea, then we too have all we need to do the same victory. Right? Sorry, but no!

We have all heard the scripture, "**This people draw near me with their mouth and with their lips do honor me** [the speaking, conscious side of the brain, the left side], **BUT HAVE REMOVED THEIR HEART FAR FROM ME** [the sensing, subconscious part of the brain, the right side], **and their fear toward me is taught by the precept of men** [the thoughts of the mind]."<sup>13)</sup> (*Isaiah 29:13*)

Most of us have minds that believe we know that in our hearts we do love God, yet we *still live in the fear of loss*. So what Trinity has suddenly discovered seems so logical that we might conclude, with our brilliant, deductive minds, that now we can do the same. That is Tree of Knowledge logic

and we can't have both trees at the same time. Let's remember, the pure love of Christ, the fruit of the Tree of Life, is a gift that is bestowed, not a conclusion that is attained or a struggle that is achieved.

Just as Trinity had to reach the ultimate end of hope, with her loved one dead and her Zion home being destroyed around her, something also had to break within her heart. As with us, that something is not perceptual, rational, or learned, otherwise it could be taught to us by others.

### **NEO WAKES UP FROM HIS MATRIX DREAM**

In the Matrix, while the agents are walking away, Neo, lying on the hall floor, opens his eyes and immediately rises to his feet, a living being. We get a quick look at Morpheus in the spaceship. He is startled and cannot figure out what is happening.

Agent Smith, who is now far down the hall with his two lieutenants, turns to see Neo standing. They can't believe it either. So all three, simultaneously, start shooting again, emptying their pistols. Neo calmly puts one hand up. The bullets race through the air but then stop in their flight as they float just in front of him. Neo takes hold of one of the bullets, looks at it and drops it to the floor. All the other bullets suddenly clatter to the floor around it.

Back in the spaceship, Morpheus, in spite of the carnage and destruction going on around him, exclaims with renewed confidence, "Ha! He is the One!"

### **THERE ARE NO BULLETS**

As Neo stands up and sees the agents firing their powerful weapons at him, he puts up his hand and the bullets come to a halt in mid-air in front of him. He knows he is no longer of their world. He does not need to dodge them or even return them, but merely to hold them in place until their own gravity drops them to the floor. This Neo is in a different world. In this new world, those bullets are only information that he can choose to see as he might choose.

This represents the shift that takes place when we have not just believed in the Oneness, but actually have experienced it. In that Oneness, there is no darkness except those shadows which are there for a valuable purpose. In this stage, we realize that we, being created by, in and through the Spirit, are also Source, not effect. As Source, we know that nothing exists without there being a purpose, a part of the infinite design. That experience may or may not be accompanied with incredible feelings at the moment, for this awareness is but *a point of view*. As Neo calmly holds his hand up with the authority of his intention, so the true initiate accepts inner dominion of what is. That is the experience that Neo has next.

### **NEO FLIES INTO AGENT SMITH AND EXPLODES HIM WITH HIS DIVINE LIGHT**

Suddenly, Neo looks down the hall and sees everything in front of him, including the building, hallway and the three agents, only for what they all are, mere digital, energized communication. Nothing is hard, real, genuine "stuff," as it appears, but only information that makes it look *real*.

Then, just as suddenly, the view changes back to ordinary reality as Agent Smith angrily rushes up and starts trying to hit Neo. Neo casually deflects the blows with a single arm held up lightly. Neo turns half way around with the ease of not being hit. Finally, Neo raises his leg and kicks Agent Smith, sending him sprawling down to the end of the hall where the other two agents are standing. As Agent Smith, now missing his dark glasses, rises to his feet in utter bewilderment, Neo makes a startling decision. He decides to go in! After running a few steps, he flies through the air and totally disappears into the body of Agent Smith.

As Neo journeys around throughout his killer's body, Agent Smith shows incredible shock, pain and fright. As the two other agents watch in horror, brilliant light begins to break through from inside Agent Smith, who suddenly explodes in a burst of radiant white light. Agent Green and Agent Brown duck as glowing pieces of Agent Smith are blown past them. Then for a blinding moment, Neo appears in the hall in glowing pure white, as the inner Christ he has become. As we see the brilliant glow, it is reflected on the startled faces of the lieutenants and gradually dims. Then, the real, live Neo is standing there, takes a deep breath. As he looks at the remaining two

agents, they look at each other and run for their lives.

Although this action has probably taken only a minute, conditions at the spaceship have finally reached the catastrophic stage. As the squidic sentinels are just about to implode the ship, Trinity screams for Neo to come home by shouting his name, "NEO!!!"

In the Matrix, Neo suddenly senses the urgency and rushes back down the hall to the open door of Room 303. He rushes across the room to where the transition phone is ringing.

### NEO FIGHTS DARKNESS WITH LIGHT

In past failures to subdue the enemy, Neo had used guns, Kung Fu and running, now he used an entirely different approach. He did not resist. He did not fight. Instead, HE DOVE INSIDE THE ACCUSER WITH HIMSELF! Inside of Agent Smith, he faced the darkness throughout his body and converted it to the light that he was, so much so that Agent Smith exploded into oblivion, leaving Neo standing, radiant and whole. What does this represent on the Third Level?

First of all, it does not represent a one and only experience. The fruit from the Tree of Life is not just a one-time meal. It is daily food to nurture us as we grow to fuller and fuller maturity of consciously becoming that Tree. Of course, there are still agents around who will fight another day. The difference is that now the Neo part of us has discovered the secret, i.e., we destroy darkness with Light. But just as darkness comes in many shades, so Light has many shades of white. Let's read again how John the Beloved explains the difference, and please take time to read it carefully several times.

**In the beginning was the Word** [expressed thought which is Truth, Light, Spirit, Agape-Love] **and the Word was with God** [Infinite Source] **and the Word was God** [Infinite Source]. **The same was in the beginning with God.** All things were made [sourced] **BY Him; and without Him was NOT ANYTHING MADE THAT WAS MADE** [including each of us]. **IN HIM WAS LIFE, AND THE LIFE WAS THE LIGHT OF MEN. AND THE LIGHT SHINETH IN DARKNESS; AND THE DARKNESS COMPREHENDED IT NOT** [misconceiving the Matrix as real, by design]. (John 1:1-5)

**This then is the message which we have heard of Him, and declare unto you, THAT GOD IS LIGHT** [contemplated, vibratory energy], **AND IN HIM IS NO DARKNESS** [fear] **AT ALL. If we say that we have fellowship with Him and walk in darkness, WE LIE, AND DO NOT THE TRUTH.**

**BUT IF WE WALK IN THE LIGHT, AS HE IS IN THE LIGHT,** we have **fellowship one with another, and the blood** [the Agape-Love] **of Jesus Christ His Son cleanseth** [releases] **us from all SIN** [misconceptions]. (I John 1:5-7)

### WALKING IN THE LIGHT AS HE IS IN THE LIGHT

What does it mean to walk in the Light and He is in the Light? It is to walk in His Agape-Love of union in Oneness. But there is a trap if we see this only from the view of Tree of Knowledge. The conditioned, well grounded tendency is to interpret transformation to mean walking in the *feelings* of His Phileo-Love. But since feelings, no matter how wonderful, will change, the ideal of those perfect feelings are never consistently fulfilled. Since Agape-Love is not a feeling, but a point of view, IT IS TO REMEMBER that we are *right on course, right on schedule*, So how do we continue to walk in that enlightened awareness?

First, we watch our feelings. Our feelings, the language of the right brain, are like the tip of the iceberg. When they surface as negative emotions, there is a saboteur, an agent, involved. If we fight the liar, we lose. If we accept his presence with fascination rather than fear, then we can destroy his energy with *understanding*. But the arrogance of the conscious mind thinks it knows exactly why we are experiencing negative emotions. The mind believes we hurt because we are being victimized, causing us to feel either anger if others are to blame, or guilt if we are to blame. That blaming is the trap of automatically resisting that which we don't like about *what is*. So we have a *déjà vu* all over again, but now we can deal with it in a moment rather than in hours or days.

Upsets, as we all know, are deep, negative feelings. We feel them consciously, but their source is in the subconscious. We call the right brain our subconscious because the "sub" identifies that although it is conscious, it senses rather than talks, making it below or outside the "thinking" level of

the conscious mind. But when we are upset, notice how fast the conscious mind, the left brain, finds something to blame as causing those feelings. In doing so, it believes its reasoning is correct, of course, and that if the conditions were just different, then we believe that we would feel different. Although that may be true, the change is but a mirage, hiding the real reason for our upset. The real reason is that the unpleasant circumstances have activated an old, unresolved subconscious trauma, like a pre-programmed automatic, stimulus response trigger, and we are reacting to this present situation as if it were the old one. *That is what an upset really is.*

As soon as we remember our reasons for the upset is that we are believing one of the five lies of the mind, we can choose to release the connection. Then, almost miraculously it seems, the fire in the upset with the present conditions starts to go out. Yes, we may still dislike the circumstances, but the *upset is gone*. Then, with more detachment about those circumstances, we are able to deal with the situation more objectively rather than subjectively. As we have mentioned before, instead of returning or holding the negative energy, we can destroy it with the light of Agape-Love understanding, as represented by Trinity.

### FIVE HELPFUL STEPS FOR GOING WITH THE FLOW

If our release does not diminish the anger or guilt, there are five powerful steps that we can consciously choose to use which will join our Neo and Trinity aspects of the self together.

1. **GRATITUDE.** Since we are encouraged to be thankful for ALL THINGS, let's look at our feelings of the upset. We can experiment with the principle that our painful feelings *are not for the reason we think* but, somehow or other, are from an old, unresolved hurt in our subconscious Matrix that is crying out to be healed.
2. **OUR WAKE-UP CALL.** Since the feelings are here, we can choose to more fully accept them as a gift from our inner truth to assist us in our healing. When we do that, the feelings change from seeing ourselves as being a victim to seeing the painful or angry feelings as a well placed wake-up call by our real teacher, the Father.
3. **FREE TO EXPERIENCE.** Since we now realize that we are being given a gift of reacting to unfavorable circumstances, we might as well be a grateful receiver of the gift by experiencing those hurtful feelings *freely*. Obviously, those feelings are usually not killing us, unpleasant as they may be. So instead of resisting them, which we notice makes them worse, we can relax a bit, calm down and just experience them **FREELY**, even though we certainly do not like them. If we can and really do, we are then and only then ready to go to Step 4.
4. **CHOOSING TO INCREASE THE FEELINGS.** Now, strange as this may sound, try as best you can to greatly increase those hurtful feelings. These feelings may be physical or emotional, but after you have really become free to have the feelings, then allow yourself to embrace them by expanding them. That may sound foolish, even dangerous, but if we are really free to experience what is, even though we don't have to like those conditions, we can do our best to increase the feelings without doing any damage.
5. **WATCH THE RESULTS.** Surprisingly, the painful feelings, instead of increasing, will usually diminish. Why is that? Well, by the same principle that what we give energy to by resisting, does persist, what we welcome and enhance will diminish. That is the rule of the universe because when we are free to experience unpleasant circumstances and welcome the accompanying feelings as a gift, we are safely stepping out of the Vicious Cycle and its False Feelings of Emergency and moving into the Living Cycle of truth. In essence, we are doing what Neo did in penetrating Agent Smith. We are overcoming darkness with Light.

### SUMMARY

Now we see how Trinity's set-up created by the Oracle provided her with a believable contradiction that she could fully believe and fear. When everything she thought she needed is lost, she is suddenly allowed to "GET IT." In other words, as soon as circumstances brought her to the "not-knowing-mind" of a "broken heart and contrite spirit," her inner, higher self could let her see the real truth. Then she could become actively Neo's true life, pulling him into the fullness of the Real

World she had suddenly found herself. Then Neo could see the truth, that everything is Light, and walking in that Light, there was nothing to fight, but there was darkness to penetrate. And as he will learn in the sequels to come, that is not a one-time process but a daily miracle of taking on the darkness for what it is, a gift from Infinite Source for us to walk in the Light as the Infinite Christ is in the Light.

## Chapter XXXIV

### BEING IN THE ONENESS

Neo and Trinity have suddenly become conscious of a whole new world. Not that the Matrix is not still there. Not that there are difficulties that can still enslave the mind, but they have entered the reality that there really is nothing to fear when we see the world from this point of view.

#### NEO RETURNS TO THE ARMS OF TRINITY

At the same instant that Neo transports, Morpheus throws the red switch, which activates the EMP. The sentinel squidic machines suddenly collapse and go dead around them. As Neo's body becomes conscious, he opens his eyes to see Trinity looking lovingly at him. He raises his head to bring his lips to hers in bonding affection. At the same time, the spaceship immediately returns to peace and normalcy.

#### THE MIND AND THE HEART BECOME ONE

Back in what is left of the spaceship, Neo opens his eyes to see his sweetheart's glowing face before him. Instinctively, he returns the kiss she had given him only minutes before. Obviously, it represents the joining of the mind and heart, but what else does it represent? It symbolizes his absence of fear for her, which he must have had up until then, as she now has the absence of fear for him. In this sublime moment of connectedness, he feels no separateness, no division, only union.

We want to also keep in mind that integration is not totally a right brain miracle. The left brain, our conscious mind, has many habits of looking at things subjectively, i.e., being a victim. We call this "stinking thinking" because it is the rotten smell of being in the Matrix that Agent Smith objected to so vigorously. It even made him sick. So how do we send our thinking to the laundry so that it continues to come out clean and fresh? The answer to that question is the symbolic meaning of our garments being washed white in the blood of the Lamb. But how can red blood make garments white? The blood of the Lamb is the perfect Agape-Love he sheds/bestows on ALL who are His true followers, thus they enter into *His Rest* from that time on until they rest with Him in heaven.

#### EXPERIENCING THE FULLNESS OF HIS GLORY BRINGS US TO A STATE OF TRUE REST

As is symbolized by the different type of clothes worn by members of the crew, our "garments" represent the thoughts we clothe ourselves in as we look at the circumstances of life. That view can go through a permanent shift through being given the experience of finally *comprehending* our involvement in *the fullness of God's glory*.

**Therefore they were called after this holy order, and were sanctified and their garments were washed white through the blood of the Lamb** [the gift of His perfect love which is SHED into the hearts of the children of men]. **Now they, after being sanctified by the Holy Ghost** [the testimony of ALL truth, not just part of the truth], **having their garments made white, being pure and spotless before God, could not look upon sin** [missing the mark, like missing the point, misconceiving] **save it were with abhorrence; and there were many, exceedingly great many, who were made pure and ENTERED THE REST OF THE LORD THEIR GOD.** (Alma 13:11-12)

The word "sin" comes from the Greek and means to "miss the mark." In English, we would say

that it is “missing the point” of what our life on earth is all about. All anger and guilt, fear and pride, need and regret come from the natural man’s compulsion to miss the true point of mortal existence. We miss the point of life when we believe the Tree of Knowledge is the most accurate explanation of what life on earth is supposed to be. Partaking of the precious fruit of the Tree of Life gives a totally different view. It is GIFT from Christ because we cannot give it to ourselves. The Rest that Lehi described came from an incredible experience. He said, simply, “*I beheld His glory.*” The Doctrine and Covenants also defines the Rest as the FULLNESS OF HIS GLORY.

I used to wonder what kind of an experience that would be that would make such a change in a person’s life that all fear would be cast out. Such blessings began to be given to me some fifteen years ago. What I experienced is that *the fullness of His glory is what each of us is*. As I mentioned, the name often given for such an experiences “cosmic consciousness” because we experience that which has no limit, i.e., cosmic. From that point of view, we get a totally different view of why we are here. In other words, since we understand the infinite and eternal point of view, we have little reason to miss the mark.

### COSMIC CONSCIOUS EXPERIENCES

One of the most beautiful descriptions of this sense of union is the report I quoted in Chapter XVIII in *Book II, Finding the Mark*, by a noted psychiatrist, Dr. Richard Bucke.

**There came upon me a sense of exultation, of immense joyousness accompanied or immediately followed by an intellectual illumination impossible to describe. Among other things, I did not merely come to believe, but I saw that the universe is not composed of dead matter, but is, on the contrary, a living Presence. I became conscious in myself of eternal life. It was not a conviction that I would have eternal life, but a consciousness that I possessed eternal life then.**

**I saw that without any peradventure, all things work together for the good of each and all; that the foundation principle of the world, of all the worlds, is what we call love, and that the happiness of each and all is in the long run absolutely certain.** (Williams James, *The Varieties of Religious Experience*, New American Library, 1958, pp. 306-307)

### OTHER COSMIC CONSCIOUS EXPERIENCES

I call such an experience “cosmic consciousness” also for another reason. It is because the awakening includes a *sense of being one with all things*. Dr. Hugh Nibley of the BYU, who has studied world-wide religions and cultures probably deeper than any other LDS scholar has stated that this type of experience is universal and “*is not peculiarly Christian or Jewish, it is not the unique property of any one nation, race, society or church.*” (Hugh Nibley, *The World and the Prophets*, Salt Lake City, Deseret, 1954, pp. 89-90)

The great laureate, Alfred Lord Tennyson, had the privilege, beginning in his youth, of entering this level of consciousness almost at will. Here is his description:

**A kind of waking trance—this for lack of a better word—I have frequently had, since my boyhood, when I have been all alone. This has come upon me through repeating my own name to myself silently, till all at once, as it were out of the intensity of the consciousness of individuality, individuality itself seems to dissolve and fade away into boundless being, and this is not a confused state but the clearest, the surest of the surest, utterly beyond words — where death was an almost laughable impossibility — the loss of personality (if so it were) seeming no extinction, but the only true life. I am ashamed of my feeble description. Have I not said the state is utterly beyond words?** (William James, *Varieties of Religious Experience*, New York; New American Library, 1958, pp. 295)

Psychological researchers studying hundreds of individuals who have had such experiences consistently report a very positive, life enhancing shift in how their lives are lived thereafter. It certainly has been for me. A detailed description of my own experiences will be included in *Book IV, Perfection In Christ*.

Dr. Frances Vaughan, another scientist, makes this observation—

**In the usual sense of self, we set up a boundary line between what is “me” and what is “not me.” This means that a certain sense of separateness and incompleteness is inherent in the everyday sense of self. It also means that we create defense mechanisms to protect our**

**precious self-image. When a person transcends the ego through that experience of intimate connectedness with the world, then frequently that person is no longer concerned with protecting the ego, and the preoccupation with approval and so forth fall away.** (Frances Vaughan, *The Inward Arc — Healing and Wholeness in Psychotherapy and Spirituality*, Boston, Shambhala, 1985, pp. 185-194)

His fellow researcher, Dr. James Fadiman, reports that when people find out through such a vivid experience that they are composed not only of their unique thoughts and feelings, but that they also share a nature common to every other *person* and to every other *thing* in the universe, then the whole personal drama, the defenses and needs that arise out of being separate beings become much less important. (James Fadiman, *The Transpersonal Stance, Beyond Ego*, pp. 177-178)

### SUMMARY

In the fulfillment of the regeneration of Neo and Trinity, we can remember all the other ways they tried to deal with the fear of loss the Matrix threatened. As we reminded the reader in the Preface, this book, this movie or anything else you might learn cannot actually give you the fruit of the Tree of Life. That fruit is a personal gift that is bestowed to all who are true followers of the infinite Christ. We follow Him by being thankful for everything in our lives, including the fact that we have not yet had a cosmic conscious experience, if that is the case. As we will discuss in the remaining chapters, having such an experience does not end the journey, it merely allows us to accelerate the journey toward ever more love, joy and peace, called being in the Rest of the Lord from this time henceforth until we rest with Him in heaven.

## Chapter XXXV

### HOW IT IS GOING TO BEGIN

In the Real World, there are no accidents, offenses, exploitation, abuses, competition, failure or slavery since those are only concepts of the mind in which we misinterpret the world. There are cruel and painful facts, yes, there is hunger and starvation, blistering heat and freezing cold, birth and death, sickness and deformation, but when these are understood to be part of the infinitely wise, master plan that was contemplated even before the beginning, everything changes. Viewed from the Matrix, seeing it as real, these manifestations of darkness seem beyond understanding in a universe supposedly created by an all powerful, infinitely loving God.

#### NEO, THE ONLY ONE WHO CAN, GOES TO WORK ON THE MATRIX

The screen goes black. We hear a telephone ringing. The screen becomes filled with digital numbers. Letters are typed about a message received. Then a message is typed: "Trace program running," showing that the agents are still trying to find those of whom they are still afraid. As the telephone stops ringing, Neo's voice is heard, speaking to the agents as the one who will destroy them, "*I know you are out there. I can feel you now. I know that you are afraid. You are afraid of us. You are afraid of change. I don't know the future. I didn't come here to tell you how this is going to end.*"

While he is talking, in the midst of all the digital lines showing on the screen, there is a printed message, "SYSTEM FAILURE"

Neo's over-voice continues, "*I came here to tell you how it is going to begin. I am going to hang up this phone and begin to show this people what you don't want them to see. I am going to show them a world without you; a world without rules and controls, without borders or boundaries. A world where anything is possible. Where we go from there is a choice I leave to you.*"

The scene opens up on a busy street. Neo is in a phone booth where he has been talking. He hangs up the phone and slowly steps out of the booth. Wearing his long, cloth coat, he looks with interest at the Matrix world with all the busy activity on the street. He puts on his dark glasses, again looks calmly around and then up toward the sky. From high in the sky, we see him leap up like superman and sail away past us. Yes, he is the One!

## A WORLD WITHOUT RULES AND CONTROLS

As I mentioned earlier, each of the four levels are designed to appear complete within themselves. On the Tree of Knowledge, whether it is on the Temporal Level or Spiritual Level, each has its “got to,” “have to” and “need to” laws, rules and controls. To even suggest that there is something beyond rules and controls is incomprehensible at best and terrifying at worst. Yet, that is exactly why the Tree of Life is protected by the Third Level, symbolized by the Flaming Sword or the Iron Rod.

This is also why, as one experiences the full Liberty in Christ, the Fourth Level, the other three levels are not ignored. As it turns out, no one level, including the Fourth Level, will work alone, all by itself. However, when one is able to come from the Fourth Level, involvement in the other levels—in the pragmatic ever-day world, in the miraculous world of the Spirit, in the integrative process of seeing clearer and clearer the unity of all things, and in the cosmic realization that each of us is and has always been the One—life itself, with all of its opportunities for challenges and intensive commitment is taken in stride. It is called the Rest because the war is over, the “need” to make a difference, to be important or useful has matured into a joy in choosing to make a difference just for the joy of doing.

As Neo announces, ***I am going to show them a world without you; a world without rules and controls, without borders or boundaries. A world where anything is possible.*** Does that sound like paradise? Or is that another name for anarchy? The reason it need not be anarchy is that there are still rules and controls, but they are not exterior but on the inside, in the heart.

## THE RULES AND CONTROLS ARE NOW IN THE HEART

The discipline and structure that comes from the everyday choices of a meek and lowly heart, rather than needs which come from being incomplete, is the key to entering into the Rest and is how the New Covenant is described to be.

**But this shall be the [new] covenant that I will make with the house of Israel. After these days, saith the Lord, I WILL PUT MY LAW IN THEIR INWARD PARTS, AND WRITE IT IN THEIR HEARTS, AND WILL BE THEIR GOD, AND THEY SHALL BE MY PEOPLE.** (Jeremiah 31:33)

This heavenly gift of living with the inner guide of true righteousness must have been what made the city of Enoch heaven on earth. There have been other times, such as the several hundred years among the Nephites after the visitation of Christ.

**And there were no contentions and disputations among them, and every man did deal justly one with another. And they had all things common among them; therefore there were not rich and poor, bond and free, but they were all made free, and partakers of the heavenly gift.** (4 Nephi, 13)

Mankind has tried to legislate “righteousness” for thousands of years and continues to fail. Yet, man-made laws have provided the basis of civilization. The transition from a society controlled by outer laws to one controlled by inner laws is a delicate one. That is why liberation, at the present time in which we live, is an *individual blessing* rather than a *collective one*. But we can see where the Lord is heading, as was promised by President Benson when he said that not only could a blessing hitherto unknown be poured out on individual children of Zion, but on *the whole Church*.

## TRUE RIGHTEOUSNESS COMES FROM FREE CHOICE, NOT FROM NEED

The transition from the slavery of the Matrix to the Liberty in Christ can be disorientating, to say the least. Just as in Lehi’s vision, the first group to reach the Tree of Life was offended by the criticism of others, so “they wandered off and fell into forbidden paths.” Yet, one would hope, like the prodigal son, they ”came to themselves,” picked themselves up and returned to the Tree considerably humbler but wiser for their detour.

In Paul’s writings, we find him often warning and pleading with those who were experiencing the glory of grace to hold the line on taking advantage of their new found freedom. Here are his strong words of declaration:

**All things are lawful unto me, but all things are not expedient. All things are lawful for me, but I will not be brought under the power of any.** (1 Corinthians 6:12)

When Paul said “all things,” I believe that is exactly what he meant. For him the law was dead, just like Nephi found it to be when a direct channel with the inner Christ developed. Living by that which, moment by moment, was expedient, meaning appropriate, is what choice is all about. True righteousness does not exist when we obey the law out of fear of loss or need for gain. Actually, that is more like horse trading. Paul summed up the true meaning of liberty with the following council:

**If there be any...commandment, it is briefly comprehended in this saying, namely, *Thou shalt love thy neighbor as thyself*. Love worketh no ill to his neighbor, therefore love is the fulfilling of the law.** (Romans 13:9-10)

### SUMMARY

Just as the Matrix is the agent’s world, so it is with our inner Man-Made world which we have built and structured by the rigidity of fixed ideals of what was good and what was evil. That world has its demons, as we all know, but those devils are afraid. Neo, representing our higher Awareness, knows they are afraid for their days are numbered. They work with the outer rules through anger when we don’t get our way and guilt when we feel we are not pleasing others. So our Awareness is in the process of liberating our inner personalities from the fear of the rules, controls, borders and boundaries to the joy of incredible possibilities, structured and directed by an inner wisdom that is a reflection of having, as Paul declared, the “mind of Christ.”

## Chapter XXXVI

### HOW IS IT GOING TO END?

On the Tree of Knowledge, we thought we knew how everything was supposed to end. We had prophecies of the future and descriptions of the heavenly rewards of the righteous and punishment of the unrighteous. But as Paul declared,

**When that which is perfect is come, then that which is in part shall be done away.**

**For we know in part, and we prophesy in part.**

**Charity [pure Agape-Love] never faileth; but whether there be prophecies, they shall fail; whether there be tongues, they shall cease; whether there be knowledge, it shall vanish away.** (1 Corinthians 13:10, 9, & 8)

So as Neo addresses the enslaving power of the Matrix, he acknowledges his own “not-knowing-mind.” **“You are afraid of change. I don’t know the future. I didn’t come here to tell you how this is going to end.”**

So what do we do with all of that knowledge about how things will end? First, we can see that prophecies can be understood allegorically rather than literally. That is what we can do with the promises and warnings of the Second Coming which doesn’t come as it is so often proclaimed. We recognize, instead of coming outwardly as a literal event, it has come inwardly into the hearts of many of every generation. We can do the same with how we see the coming of the great last battle, Armageddon, as we have in this book, by seeing it fulfilled symbolically as a part of our personal being tried by fire prior to receiving the Second Comforter.

### WHAT ABOUT THE THREE DEGREES OF GLORY?

I am sometimes asked the question—“Since you believe everyone, eventually, will be saved and glorified in the loving arms of Christ, what do you believe about the Three Degrees of Glory?”

Good question! I certainly see a wonderful message in the information we have been provided about the kingdom of God being in three glories.

In writing about the Three Degrees in *Book II, Finding the Mark*, Chapter XVI, I proposed the possibility that Joseph and Sidney were given this incredible vision for the Church to enhance our preparatory gospel so that we would strive even harder to qualify for the top kingdom in the Celestial

Glory. If so, it has worked beautifully in doing just that! But zeal and being meek and lowly do not necessarily go together. Let's recall that just a few months after the saints were given that incredible revelation, February, 1832, the Church, including ALL its members and leaders, was put under condemnation for VANITY AND UNBELIEF, in September of the same year, which condemnation remains to this day.

So was that particular revelation a special set-up for modern Israel or was it eternal truth? I think it was both. It not only dangled a magnificent carrot out to the saints, but it also explained how all the members of God's infinite family do not end up in the same level of glory—as most Christians had supposed. In other words, not only do we all end up at different and unique levels, but it would seem that in God's infinite kingdom, as in any kingdom, there are a multitude of different functions and purposes for which each of us is created, outside of time, with a specific purpose to be fulfilled.

### **COMPARING MEMBERS OF THE CHURCH TO THE PARTS OF THE HUMAN BODY**

To explain how God's kingdom must include many different categories, we might remember what Paul said about the diverse members of *the body of Christ*. Although it is a lengthy quotation, please read it carefully.

Now there are *diversities of gifts*, but the same Spirit. And there are *differences of administration*, but the same Lord...

But all these worketh that one and the selfsame Spirit, dividing to every man severally as He will. For as the body is one, and hath many members, and all the members of that one body, being many, are one body, SO ALSO IS CHRIST...

If the foot shall say, Because I am not the hand, I am not of the body; is it therefore not of the body? And if the ear shall say, Because I am not the eye, I am not of the body; is it therefore not of the body?

If the whole body were an eye, where [would be] the hearing? If the whole were hearing, where [would be] the smelling. But now hath God set the members every one of them in the body, as it hath PLEASED HIM. And if they were all one member, where [would be] the body? But now are they many members, yet but one body. And the eye cannot say unto the hand, I have no need of thee; nor again the head to the feet, I have no need of you...

And those members of the body which we think to be less honorable, upon these we bestow more abundant honor... That there should be no schism in the body; but that the members should have the same care [love] one for another...

And God hath set some in the Church, first apostles, secondarily prophets, thirdly teachers, after that miracles, then gifts of healings, helps, governments, diversities of tongues. Are all apostles? Are all prophets? Are all teachers? Are all workers of miracles? (I Corinthians 12:4-30)

### **WHAT ABOUT THE INFINITE AND ETERNAL BODY OF THE FATHER?**

Paul is describing the diverse members of the Church, but what about God's infinite body which includes all the individuals in creation. In the 88th Section of the *Doctrine and Covenants*, we are informed that Christ, Himself, by being totally One with His infinite Spirit which fills the immensity of space, is personally present in all the physical universe, for HE is in the stars, sun, earth and those living upon it. (D&C 88:6-13) And HE is “**in all things, and is through all things, and is round about all things; and all things are by Him, and of Him, even God, forever and ever.**” (D&C 88:41) The 93rd Section reveals that “**the elements are the tabernacle of God; yea, man is the tabernacle of God.**” (D&C 93:35)

We all have to face the fact that, even though we can intellectually try to accept such a reality, it is still beyond our comprehension, just as is the endless space of our physical universe. Yet, as Elder Neal Maxwell says, “**If we will accept the concept of an infinite God who lives outside of time, in which all things, past, present and future, ARE HAPPENING SIMULTANEOUSLY, even though we certainly may not understand how. THE OMNISCIENCE OF GOD may be seen somewhat more clearly.**” (Ensign, February 1979, as quoted in Book II, Looking Beyond the Mark, pp. 172-173)

### **COMPARING GOD'S INFINITE BEING TO OUR OWN BODY**

We tend to take our own bodies for granted, of course, but the more science discovers, the more marvelous, even incomprehensible, our bodies begin to be. In my book, *The Hidden Key to Inner Peace*, I include some of the amazing information given by Dr. Paul Brand in his two volume study of the body, titled “*Fearfully & Wonderfully Made*” and “*In His Image*. ” Each of our bodies are made up of 50 to 100 trillion cells (a trillion is 1,000 billions), while each individual cell is as marvelous and complex as a city like Salt Lake.

In turn, each cell is made up of an infinitely marvelous and incredible network of atoms. So how large is your body as compared to an atom? Scientists tell us that our body is relatively as large to an atom *as our Milky Way Galaxy is to us*. Just think, that if you were the size of an atom and were looking at your present body, it would appear to you as being the size of our Milky Way galaxy. Our galaxy is so immense that light traveling at 186,000 miles in a mere second takes 100,000 years to go from one side to the other. In other words, we are approximately half way in size between the galaxy and an atom. The fractions are identical! So, from that point of view, God would be as much at home with His infinite, universal body as He is with His finite and glorified resurrected body.

### THE THREE CATEGORIES OF CELLS IN OUR BODY

Now, if you are wondering when we would get around to the Three Degrees of Glory, we are now ready to show some interesting parallels. In your mother’s womb, your body started out as a single fertilized cell. After a lot of dividing into perfect duplicates of the original cell, the cells suddenly mutated into three very different type of cells in three layers.

#### 1. Ectoderm Cells—

One third of your cells, those on the outside, suddenly began to reproduce themselves as *ectoderm cells*, which eventually mutate into our nerve cells, making up the brain and sense organs, such as the eyes, ears, tongue and skin.

#### 2. Mesoderm Cells—

Those cells in the in-between-level of your growing fetus become *mesoderm cells*. These evolve into connective tissues like the muscles, bones, and circulatory system, including the heart.

#### 3. Endoderm Cells—

The cells in the very middle become *endoderm type* of cells which become the digestive tract, liver and other internal organs.

Eventually, these three types of cells continued to mutate into about a thousand different types of cells, each perfectly designed to function in its given complex task of making our gigantic body work as a single cell. When we think of ourselves being compared to the relative size of a galaxy, made up of so many intricately coordinating bodies, like giant universes, we might be able to understand something about Infinite and Eternal God.

We are told that “**all things have their likeness, and all things are created and made to bear record of me, both things which are temporal, and things which are spiritual... all things bear record of me.**” (Moses 6:63)

So we might reasonably ask, is our body in the likeness of the infinite, universal body that our Heavenly Father through His Infinite Spirit is creating by and of itself? If so, would God need to create everyone into identical God-Beings? I don’t think so. Simply speaking, wouldn’t there be required at least as complete a division of labor in the universal body of God as there is in our physical bodies? God could have created of Himself one billion individuals identical to Jesus Christ, but what would be the purpose? One thing is for sure, God does create variety, for that is what we find everywhere we look.

### THREE MAJOR DISTINCTIONS OF THE CELLS IN THE BODY

So in our body, we still have three major types of cells.

#### 1. Nerve Cells—

We have the nerve cells which came from the ectoderm. These not only make up the brain, eyes, ears, etc., but they penetrate throughout the body. Some individual nerve cells are as long as the body. These are the communicators, the organizers, and the directors.

#### 2. Muscle Cells—

We have the muscle cells from the mesoderm. These are the movers and shakers, necessary for performance, like talking, running, moving, etc. In addition to the major muscles that

move the arms, legs and neck, there are muscle organs like the heart, which include the circulatory system, along with the lymphatic system. They contract and release in order to pump, squeeze, push, shove and squirt to perform all of our outer and inner functions of motion.

### **3. Tissue Cells—**

We have the tissue cells out of the endoderm. These are the quiet workers, like the intestines, liver, pancreas, continually performing their miracles of exotic chemistry.

So are the three major divisions of cells in the human body indicative of the three major divisions in God's infinite body? Very possibly. When the great Jehovah was contemplating all things, it seems that He would realize that He did not need all of any one thing, but myriads of perfectly designed individualities eventually to perform, in perfect joy, peace and happiness, their specific functions making up the infinite kingdom of God. Each would be scheduled to be prepared in a perfect way to produce, ultimately, a joyful function in its created capacity to which it was designed.

## **CELESTIAL, TERRESTRIAL AND TELESTIAL**

### **1. Celestial—**

We can see those on the Celestial level would be administrators, directors and organizers, functioning like nerve cells. This is the special role of Elohim to administer the governing function in the creation drama. Those in the Celestial Kingdom would function in specific and glorious presence of Elohim, Himself.

### **2. Terrestrial—**

We can see those on the Terrestrial level, like the muscle cells that responds to instructions from the brain, would perform the action function to carry out the directions from the administrative, Elohim level. As we are shown in the creation story, His is the specific role of Jehovah in the creation, to carry out the directions of Elohim. Therefore, those in the Terrestrial Kingdom would enjoy the specific presence of Jehovah-Christ and follow His lead.

### **3. Telestial—**

Those on the Telestial level, which need to be the vast majority, get to have the joy of doing the work, itself, like the tissues that make up the organs in our body. This is the specific role of Michael, who represented all of us in the creation drama, following instructions with Jehovah from Elohim. It is also the specific role of the Holy Spirit which those in the Telestial Kingdom would consciously enjoy and follow. If that would seem like a put-down, let's remember that each member of the Godhead is the fullness of God, even being the One God, infinite and eternal.

When one begins to look at the three great divisions of heaven, where all are in the conscious presence of the Infinite Spirit of God, the purpose of having Three Degrees of Glory are seen in a new and wonderful light. Just as a liver cell never aspires to become a brain cell, neither would a Telestial being choose to get tangled up in the work of Celestial beings.

## **WHAT THIS VIEW MEANS TO ME**

So what does this view of the Three Degrees of Glory do for me? First of all, I stop comparing myself to anyone else. I stop asking God why He did not make me different than I am, why He made me with my particular set of weaknesses and strengths? Like Paul declared, "**O man, who art thou that repliest against God? Shall the thing formed say to Him that formed it, Why hast Thou made me thus? Hath not the potter power over the clay, of the same lump to make one vessel unto honor and another unto dishonor?**" (Romans 9:20-21)

Isaiah was given the same sentiments by the Lord. "**Woe unto him that striveth with His Maker! Let the potsherd strive with the potsherds of the earth. Shall the clay say to him that fashioneth it, What makest thou? or thy work, He hath no hands?**" (Isaiah 45:9)

All of this helps me to follow the advice of the Psalmist who said, "**Make a joyful noise unto the Lord, all ye lands. Serve the Lord with gladness: come before His presence with singing. KNOW THOU THAT THE LORD IS GOD, IT IS HE THAT HATH MADE US, AND NOT WE OURSELVES.**" (Psalm 100:1-3)

When one gets to have the “five minutes gazing into heaven” experience and discovers that he or she is *heaven*, like the branch discovering that it is the vine, an entirely new view of existence comes into being. One sees more and more completely that everything is in perfect order, right on schedule, just the way it is and the way it is not. This *knowing* is called “*entering into the Rest*” from that very moment, for *all fear is cast out*. One recognizes that it is all about *Oneness*, called the pure and perfect love of Christ. No longer is it about competition and winning over losing, but about each of us being the wholeness of life, even from our specific divine center of our unique individuality.

### **SO DO WE NEED TO KNOW WHERE WE WILL END?**

Even though one has no idea of where in the infinite body of God one will eventually find his or her ultimate function, we are assured that it will be an existence of *eternal love, joy and peace*. To be placed a little higher in function than for what one has been perfectly designed would be a burden and a little lower in function would be deprivation. So when I surrender to the loving care of the infinite Self we all are, the “I Am that I am,” I don’t really wonder where it is going to be, for wherever it is, it will be a fullness of love, joy and peace for which I was created, designed, processed and perfected.

So, now, with these thoughts in mind, you might go back and reread the 76th Section and see what a different meaning it may have for you. We are warned that the revelation had to do with the true mysteries of godliness.

**Great is His wisdom, marvelous are His ways, and the extent of His doings none can find out. His purposes fail not, neither are there any who can stay His hand. From eternity to eternity He is the same, and His years never fail...**

**And to them will I reveal all mysteries, yea, all the hidden mysteries of my kingdom from days of old, and for ages to come, will I make known unto them the good pleasure of my will concerning all things pertaining to my [infinite and eternal] kingdom...**

**For by my Spirit will I enlighten them, and by my power will I make known unto them the secrets of my will—yea, even those things which eye has not seen, nor ear heard, nor yet entered into the heart of [the natural] man. (D&C 76:2-12)**

At any rate, it is no wonder that this is pretty deep material for those who understand only the preparatory gospel as found on the Tree of Knowledge, with its rewards and punishments so loudly declared in this acknowledged mystery of the Vision. The good thing about all of this deeper insight is that you really don’t have to believe it nor even understand it. After all, *understanding* is the booby-prize. *Experiencing* it so that one can *comprehend* it is the prize of far greater value, and that is not in our hands. Only God can give us that.

### **SUMMARY**

As Paul taught, when that which is perfect, meaning complete, is come, the imperfect part fades away. Thus one gives up the Tree of Knowledge, with all of its needs and fears, to live by the fruit of the Tree of Life, Christ’s greatest gift. Consciously, in the confidence of His loving arms, one no longer worries about where it all will end, for one realizes that as every knee will eventually bow, so every child of God will be welcomed back to the Father’s home to participate in the evolving and expanding infinite and eternal kingdom of God. Then one will see that each and everyone of all three kingdoms is truly heaven, fully enjoying the presence and power of God.

## **Chapter XXXVII**

### **WHERE DO YOU GO FROM HERE?**

As I wrote in the Preface, my challenge in writing a book about “*entering into the Rest of the Lord from this time henceforth until ye shall rest with Him in heaven*” was that I wanted to provide a helping hand that would be more than an intellectual study of the subject. Actually, I believe *Book II, Finding the Mark* and my set of five one hour audio tapes on *Moroni Seven* cover much of scriptural journey. So when I began to better appreciate this motion picture, *The Matrix*, I decided to see if it would experientially prepare the reader to breakdown more of the barriers in a process of

enlightenment that went *beyond knowledge* to a deeper state of knowing. Now, this book is the result of that decision.

Only you can be the judge of whether this effort has been effective in preparing you for such experiences.

### **USE THESE BOOKS AND TAPES FOR ONGOING STUDY**

To continue to support yourself in that evolving process, may I suggest that you now go back and re-read *Book II, Finding the Mark*, from start to finish. And then please don't leave it on the shelf. Have it around handy so that when you have a few minutes, you can pick it up and read a chapter or two, chosen at random. Even though I wrote the book, I do that myself. I re-read it every few months because it seems to be one of the most effective means I have of enhancing the spiritual power of the scriptures in my life. *Book I, Looking Beyond the Mark, Second Edition*, is also worth revisiting.

Some have asked if any of my books are on tape? Yes, as of now, Julie Sherwood has created a beautiful, enthusiastic reading of Book II on six 90 minute tapes. I maintain an inventory of them so they are also available. Gradually, we will have all my books on tape and available on my web site.

See if you can obtain a video copy of *The Matrix* so that you can watch it every once in awhile. Watch it with others and by yourself. It is a different experience both ways. Other times, when re-reading this book, fast-forward your VCR to the part of the movie being discussed and allow yourself to get in touch with the inner workings of your mind and heart symbolized by the drama. Through each experience, remind yourself that the final lesson that Neo discovered was not how to fight or run, but how to yield, to yield to whom and what he already is.

### **WHAT IS GIVEN TO ABIDE IN US?**

As you again experience *Book II* and *The Matrix*, your understanding will continue to implode. Just to give you a little example of how your view changes, at the end of Chapter XX in *Book II*, I quote from the *Book of Moses* about the promise given to Adam about what would become a part of him as he experienced spiritual transformation. It is the most inclusive description of "comprehending all things" that I have found.

**Therefore it is given TO ABIDE IN YOU, the record of heaven; the comforter; the peaceable things of immortal glory; the truth of all things; that which quickeneth all things, which maketh alive all things; that which knoweth all things, and hath all power according to wisdom, mercy, truth, justice and judgment.** {Moses 6:61}

When I was a seeker, even before I reached the Second Level, I would ponder and marvel at what one's life would be like to have all of that abiding in one's mind and heart. These powerful words became glorious ideals of what I believed spiritual attainment would be like. I was determined to prepare myself through spiritual discipline to reach and fulfill what I thought those glorious promises were describing. Yes, there were times when I had brief moments in which I felt I was tasting just a bit of what those promises were all about, but those brief tastes would leave, frustrating by reminding me of my inability to have continually what I believed Christ wanted all of us to receive.

Now, after experiencing all Four Levels, that struggle toward those ideals has evaporated into a totally different appreciation for what the Lord was describing to Adam. Yes, on occasion, I have been in that state of cosmic consciousness when I was literally comprehending my total Oneness with what is, was and will be. Sometimes I was out of my body and sometimes I was not. But those experiences did not last very long. Nor did I need them to. Because of my many years of working up through the other three levels, I was not tempted to make these experiences of bliss into a spiritual fix that I would like to have on a continual or even frequent basis. I allowed myself to remember during the state of bliss that I would soon be leaving this glorious space, but I would be able to draw on what I was comprehending for my everyday life. In other words, I used those experiences as the basis of a continual new point of view.

So let me show how those promises given to Adam of what is to abide in us is presently experienced in my life on frequent occasions. Notice, I said frequent. When that realization sweeps through me from time to time, it takes my breath away and I allow myself to remember that I, like everyone else, is the One.

### **WHAT IS TO ABIDE IN YOU IS A TRANSFORMED "POINT OF VIEW"**

**Therefore it is given TO ABIDE IN YOU—**

**The Record of Heaven**—is to see that everything is, has been and will be exactly as perceived by the great Jehovah and then ordered into existence.

**The First Comforter**—Is to experience the baptism of fire and the Holy Ghost, which was to taste the glory of His love while still coming from separateness while on the Tree of Knowledge.

**The Second Comforter**—is to experience the Oneness of *the fullness of His glory*, resulting in being bestowed the pure love of Christ as symbolized by the Tree of Life

**The Peaceable Things of Immortal Glory**—is the understanding that nothing is screwed up, that God knows exactly what He is doing with all of us, and that it is all going to work out in the end for the glorious good of each one of us.

**The Truth of All Things**—is that, since truth is perception, that every person's perception is not only their truth, but is THE truth.

**That Which Quickeneth All Things**—is the experience that everything is made of vibratory energy we call light and that vibratory energy is contemplated or sent forth by the Infinite Christ, thus is the energy by which everything is.

**That Which Maketh Alive All Things**—is seeing that all things are made through the light of Christ, by the light of Christ and in the light of Christ by His perfect intention and design.

**That Which Knoweth All Things**—is seeing that since everything exists, moment by moment, through the Infinite Source, there is not anything knowable that is not already known from the beginning to the end.

**That Which Hath All Power According to Wisdom, Mercy, Truth, Justice And Judgment**,—is the sum total of the infinite intelligence of the complete design, *from beginning to end of that which has no beginning nor end*.

### **REMEMBER, IT IS NOT ABOUT FEELINGS**

Paul wrote that the fellowship of the mystery of Christ is like having the *mind of Christ*.

What is the mind of Christ? It is seeing the world that he planned, contemplated and ordered into existence, exactly the way it is and the way it is not, *as perfect*. His love, joy and peace with what is, would then, it seems to me, be *His eternal point of view*. There will be times when the personal experience of this may be accompanied with the most glorious feelings you will ever have, but feelings will always change.

The slavery of the Matrix is our identification as being our feelings, needing “good” feelings and despising “bad” feelings. Wonderful feelings, of course, are great but enslaving if they are worshipped. As Neo’s story reveals, the journey through the Flaming Sword is not so much about learning as it is about discovery, not so much about overcoming as it is about yielding. Hopefully, each time you watch The Matrix or listen to my set of five tapes on discussing Alma Five and Moroni Seven, you will discover the mystery of yielding on deeper and deeper levels.

### **BOOK IV, PERFECTION IN CHRIST, HOW THE SAVIOR MIGHT TRANSFORM HIS CHURCH**

Now I am about ready to begin the last book in this series of A Blessing Hitherto Unknown. It will be titled, *Book IV, Perfection in Christ*. This concluding book will deal with a possible way the Church, as a whole, might finally fulfill its great latter-day mission in amazing power and effectiveness. Although Books I, II, and III deal with how a blessing hitherto unknown can be poured out upon the children of Zion as individuals, this book, I suppose, will deal with how that *blessing hitherto unknown* will be poured out upon the Church as a whole.

In fact, these first three books are really designed to encourage the reader to be open to what the Lord has revealed through the scriptures about His plans for the Church when it is taken out from under the condemnation and is ready to function in its true glory, *even the glory of Zion*, in preparation for the full Second Coming of Christ in our hearts.

How will that great change come about? Well, the Lord has made it clear that it will not be so much about what we hear or read, for as we have seen, it is not to be received from man. Instead, we are assured that it is the Father, Himself, who will miraculously change our hearts so that we can enter the Rest as an organization of the holy priesthood.

**So as a conclusion to this book, I would like to leave you with a gift.** One of our readers, Faye

Turner of Pinesdale, Montana, shared an awakening experience she had some years ago which helped her welcome the information she has found so far in the *A Blessing Hitherto Unknown Series*. She started out as a hungry, struggling seeker. Her constant prayer was: to be *One with Christ, for this was her greatest desire;*

**To be One with Jesus Christ  
is the only thing I truly want.**

Waking in the night . . .  
lying there silent on my pillow . . .  
heart aching for want of this.

Suddenly, from deep inside,  
I know.

*"The divine me, the real me,  
is already One with Christ.*

*To be One with Him is to recognize it,  
to acknowledge that it is so,  
that it has always been so,  
and that it will always be."*

In an instant, all my YEARNING  
IS SIMPLY KNOWING.  
It is total, whole, and complete.

Lying there . . .  
this amazing spark of realization within me;  
enlarging, expanding, extending to an immensity!

I can no longer remain lying down.

Upward!  
. . . Throbbing and burning,  
flinging my whole self open.

Accepting!

. . . The aching want is replaced with consuming love!

Suddenly on my knees,  
pouring my heart out without words,  
acknowledging my Oneness,  
experiencing it.

It is so!

O the joy,  
the exquisite joy of this